

Travels in Egypt and Nubia .  
By Frederick Lewis Norden,...  
translated from the original...  
and enlarged with [...]

Norden, Frederik Ludvig (1708-1742). Travels in Egypt and Nubia . By Frederick Lewis Norden,... translated from the original... and enlarged with observations from ancient and modern authors that have written on the antiquities of Egypt, by Dr Peter Templeman.... 1757.

**1/** Les contenus accessibles sur le site Gallica sont pour la plupart des reproductions numériques d'oeuvres tombées dans le domaine public provenant des collections de la BnF. Leur réutilisation s'inscrit dans le cadre de la loi n°78-753 du 17 juillet 1978 :

- La réutilisation non commerciale de ces contenus est libre et gratuite dans le respect de la législation en vigueur et notamment du maintien de la mention de source.
- La réutilisation commerciale de ces contenus est payante et fait l'objet d'une licence. Est entendue par réutilisation commerciale la revente de contenus sous forme de produits élaborés ou de fourniture de service.

[CLIQUER ICI POUR ACCÉDER AUX TARIFS ET À LA LICENCE](#)

**2/** Les contenus de Gallica sont la propriété de la BnF au sens de l'article L.2112-1 du code général de la propriété des personnes publiques.

**3/** Quelques contenus sont soumis à un régime de réutilisation particulier. Il s'agit :

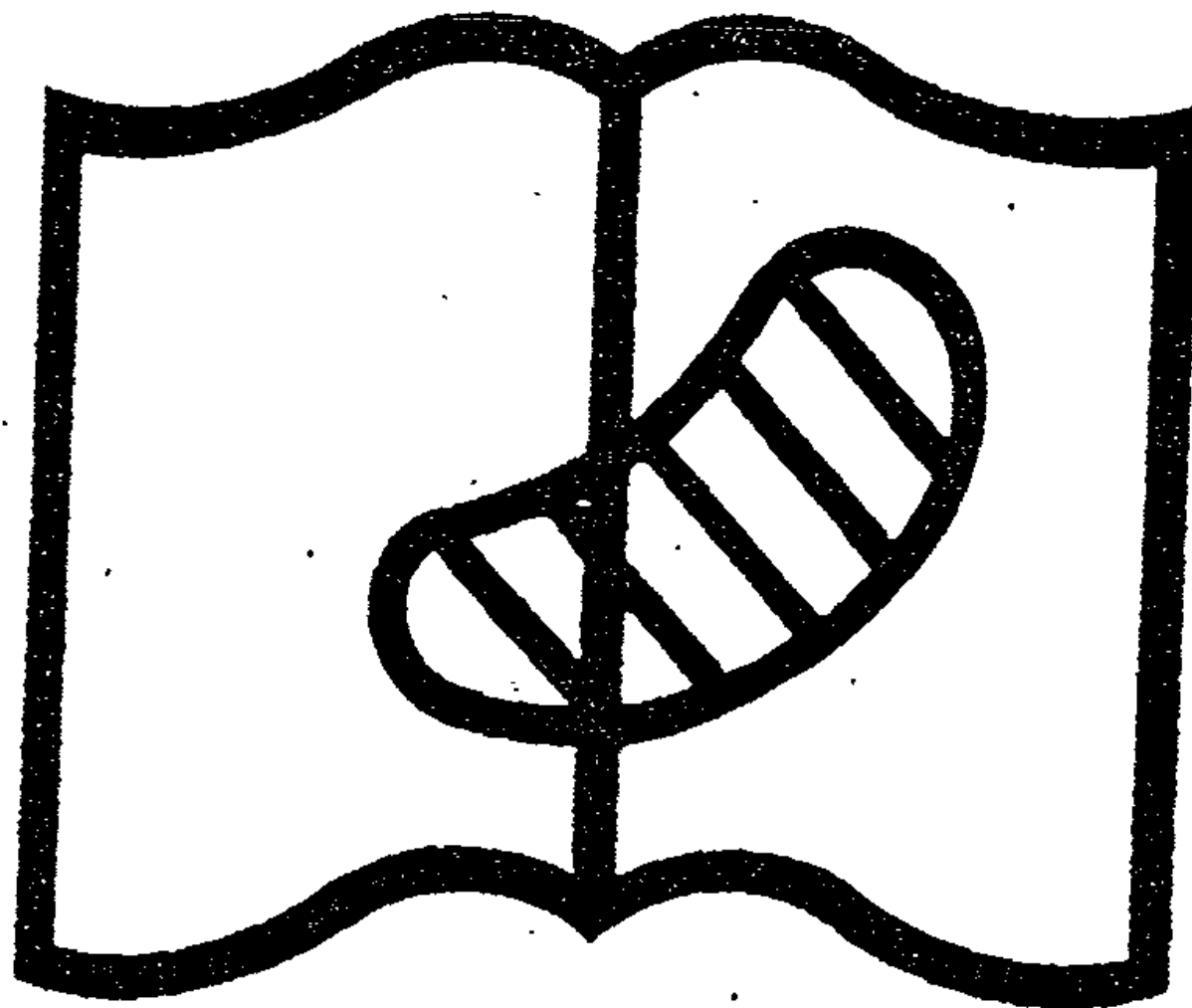
- des reproductions de documents protégés par un droit d'auteur appartenant à un tiers. Ces documents ne peuvent être réutilisés, sauf dans le cadre de la copie privée, sans l'autorisation préalable du titulaire des droits.
- des reproductions de documents conservés dans les bibliothèques ou autres institutions partenaires. Ceux-ci sont signalés par la mention Source gallica.BnF.fr / Bibliothèque municipale de ... (ou autre partenaire). L'utilisateur est invité à s'informer auprès de ces bibliothèques de leurs conditions de réutilisation.

**4/** Gallica constitue une base de données, dont la BnF est le producteur, protégée au sens des articles L341-1 et suivants du code de la propriété intellectuelle.

**5/** Les présentes conditions d'utilisation des contenus de Gallica sont régies par la loi française. En cas de réutilisation prévue dans un autre pays, il appartient à chaque utilisateur de vérifier la conformité de son projet avec le droit de ce pays.

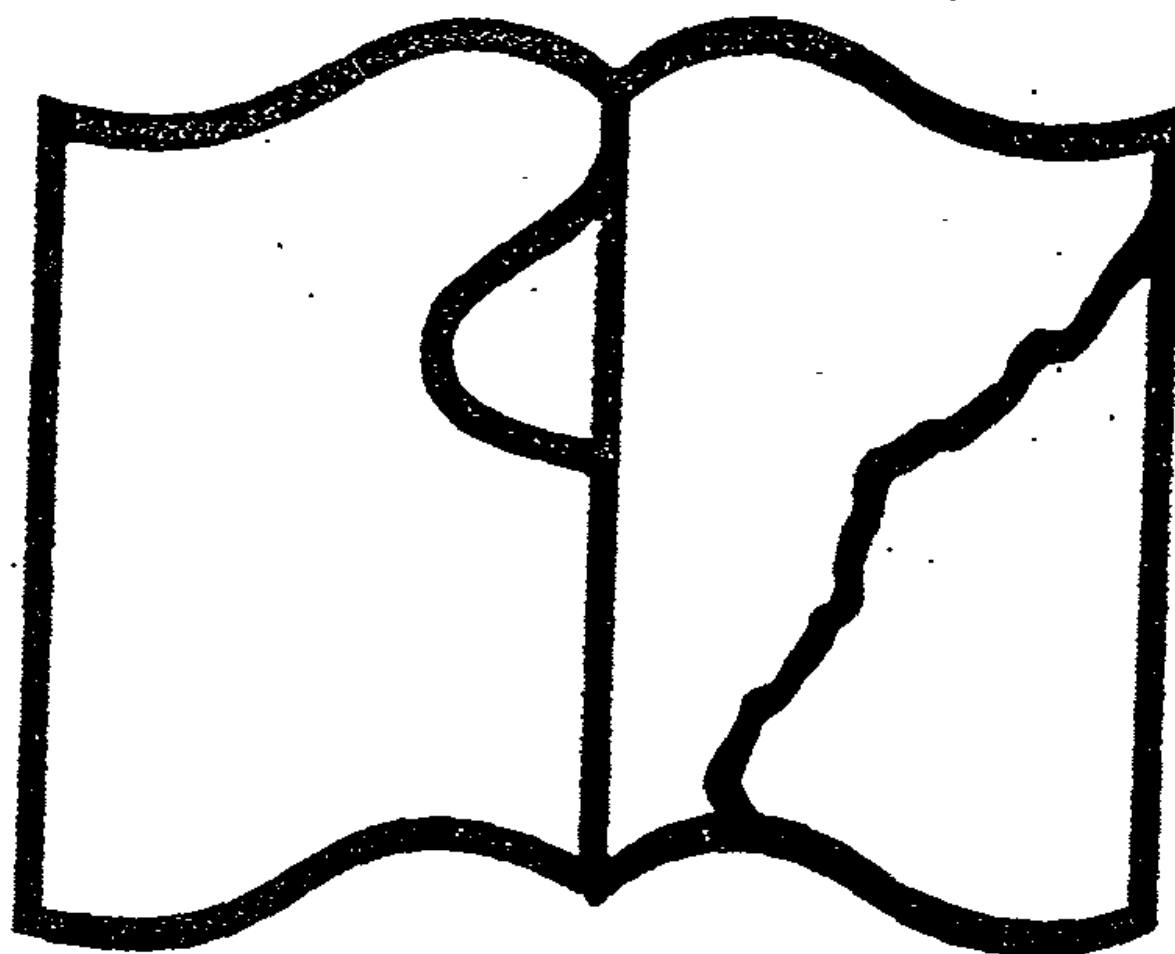
**6/** L'utilisateur s'engage à respecter les présentes conditions d'utilisation ainsi que la législation en vigueur, notamment en matière de propriété intellectuelle. En cas de non respect de ces dispositions, il est notamment passible d'une amende prévue par la loi du 17 juillet 1978.

**7/** Pour obtenir un document de Gallica en haute définition, contacter [utilisationcommerciale@bnf.fr](mailto:utilisationcommerciale@bnf.fr).



Original illisible

NF Z 43-120-10



Texte détérioré — reliure défectueuse

NF Z 43-120-11

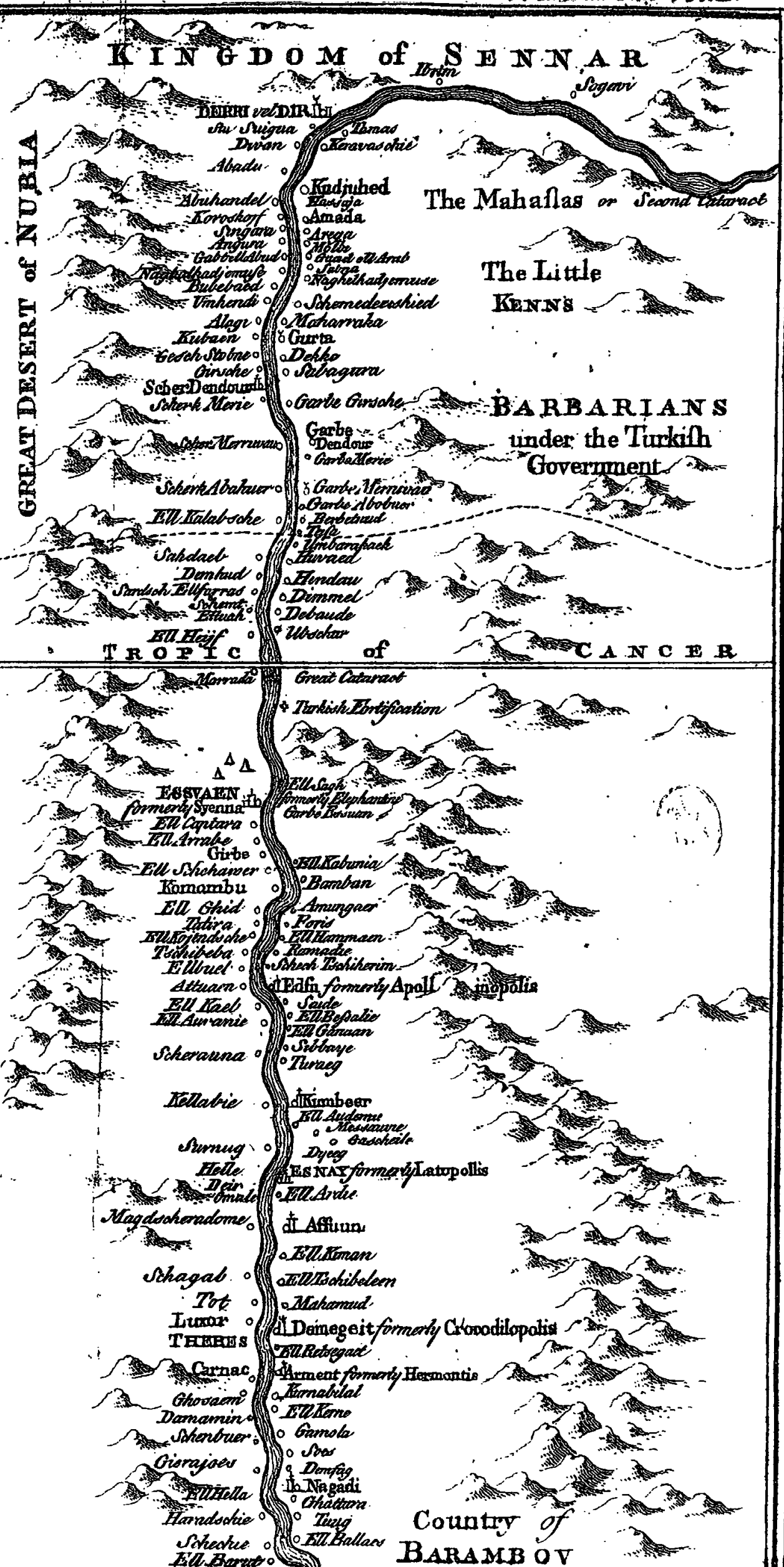
"VALABLE POUR TOUT OU PARTIE  
DU DOCUMENT REPRODUIT".

Ob  
10  
A

A. 1532.  
+B-

(3)







TRAVELS  
IN  
EGYPT  
AND  
NUBIA.

BY

FREDERICK LEWIS NORDEN. F. R. S.  
Captain of the DANISH NAVY.

Translated from the ORIGINAL

*Published by command of his Majesty  
the King of Denmark:*



AND

Enlarged with observations from ancient and modern  
authors, that have written on the antiquities  
of Egypt,

By DR. PETER TEMPLEMAN.

LONDON,  
Printed for LOCKYER DAVIS and CHARLES REYMERS,  
in Holborn; Printers to the ROYAL SOCIETY.  
MDCCLVII.

T O T H E  
K I N G.

S I R,

A WORK undertaken by the orders of an illustrious king for the advancement of learning and knowledge, and published under the direction of a Royal Society of Sciences, that owes its birth to the glorious pattern which was given to the rest of Europe by one of your Majesty's predecessors in the Throne, lays a kind of claim to your Royal protection; under which the arts and sciences have been so much advanced, that *Our Royal Society*, which set the example to all others, still remains unequalled by any.

THE translator of this work has a further reason for presuming to throw himself at your Majesty's feet; his view has been to improve on the original, and he is certain that he cannot make a more auspicious beginning than by addressing it to your sacred Majesty.

IN reading the following account of a country, that was once the model to other nations, but is now sunk, through tyranny, into the greatest ignorance and brutality; one cannot but reflect with transport on our own happiness in this country, under the reign of a wise, just, and beneficent Prince; whose paternal affection towards his people extends itself to the securing the blessings they enjoy to the latest posterity.

THAT your majesty may long live to reap the fruits of your unwearied care and assiduity for the welfare of this kingdom, is the ardent prayer of

*Your* MAJESTY'S

*most humble and*

*most dutiful subject,*

PETER TEMPLEMAN.

## ADVERTISEMENT.

THE credit of Mr. NORDEN's relations, and the reception his work has met with, were judged inducements sufficient to accommodate, at a less expensive rate, those to whom the purchase of *two volumes in folio* might be disagreeable.

CONCERNING the present edition, lest the reader should be led to consider it in the light of an *abridgement*, it may not be improper to say, that it contains not only the whole of the author's observations, but those additional ones also, with which the editor thought it necessary to illustrate the *folio edition*.

A manifest inferiority, however, must be acknowledged to lie in the want of the numerous inimitable *designs*, which the original stands enriched withal: To supply this deficiency, nothing more could be done than to engrave, upon a *smaller scale*, as many of the most remarkable ones, as could be comprised within the compass of our present plan.

THAT the reader may be made acquainted with every particular, concerning the publication of these travels, the two following prefaces are inserted; tho' the contents of them are, in a great measure, relative to the respective editions to which they were originally prefixed.





## T R A N S L A T E R ' S

PREFACE to the *Folio Edition*.

THE merit of these Travels by Mr. NORDEN is already too well established to need any recommendation from me, and is the reason that no pains nor cost have been spared to render the English edition as pompous as the original. The beautiful simplicity of the *designs*, and the exactness with which they were drawn on the spot, are, I believe, superior to any thing of the kind that has ever been published.

THE curious may here find the school of the Grecian architecture, and the learned will see a kind of comment on the descriptions that the ancients have given of the Egyptian edifices.

IN the several charts of the Nile, the reader is delighted with landships of the country on each side, *here* sees level lawns, and *there* frightful precipices; is one while charmed with groves of palm trees, at another time struck with admiration of the numerous cities that border on the river, with crescents towering to the sky. Ruins, monuments, magnificent buildings, cataracts, deserts, haunts of wild beasts or men as savage as they, every thing that can attract the eye, or affect the imagination, is exposed to the view. In short, the reader seems to accompany the author in his



voyage, and to share all his pleasures without undergoing the fatigue and dangers.

THE style of the author is plain and narrative, without any affected ornaments of expression; and I have endeavoured to observe the same simplicity in the translation.

THERE is no greater excellence, and yet, nothing more uncommon, than to adapt the style to the nature of the subject; and I am of opinion, that there is not more bombast and fustian in poetry than in prose: we have had ~~creations~~ of ~~physick~~ drest up in all the flowers of rhetorick, and the admirers of such authors have called them *Ciceronian*, tho' they do great injustice by such imputation to CICEERO, who did not write epistles in the style that he wrote orations and *set speeches*; for *such* the greatest part of his philosophical works should be considered.

THE several little stories that are interspersed, which may seem to ordinary readers to be trifling, are perhaps the best method of painting the manners of a people, and I am sure it is the most natural and satisfactory. We here see that they still retain the character which CÆSAR gave of the inhabitants of *Alexandria* in particular, "That he knew them to be deceitful, meaning one thing and pretending another." And one cannot but be sensibly affected, that a people once so glorious, who transmitted forms of government, laws, religion, arts, and sciences to the rest of mankind, should at present be sunk in the grossest ignorance and barbarity.

As to the additions by the translator, they are chiefly taken from the most valuable authors amongst the ancients and moderns, who have written any thing relating to the country and antiquities of Egypt. These extracts might have been more large and numerous, but would then perhaps have diverted the attention of the reader too much from the principal author.

SOME errors have escaped the Gentlemen of the Royal Society of Sciences at Copenhagen, who were entrusted with the revisal and publication of these Travels: All which having been carefully corrected, as far as it was possible for me to do, will, I hope, give the translation an additional merit.

WHEN the first volume of this work made its appearance, some years since, many among the learned and curious of this nation expressed their desire that the public should be furnished with an *English* edition of it: but the expence of engraving so large a number of plates, and the improbability, to say the least, of getting them executed any thing comparable to the originals, were reasons sufficient to deter from so arduous an undertaking those to whom it was strongly recommended. The method that appeared eligible to the proprietors of the present edition, perhaps the only method that could prudently be fixed upon to bring out an edition truly valuable, was to attempt the purchase of the original plates: and, the interest they were favoured with proving superior to that of others of their profession in foreign countries, who also applied, they succeeded.

THE advantage of being in possession of the original plates, beyond any thing that was to be expected from imitations, the judicious reader will easily conceive upon perusing the preface, written by the Gentlemen of the Royal Society of Sciences at Copenhagen. And I may add, that, as the number of copies, taken off for the French edition, was extremely inconsiderable, and the most careful regard has been paid to the choice of such a paper as has not failed to do justice to the engravings, I do not doubt but, upon a comparison, the impressions of the *English* edition will be found even to have a preference to those of the *French*.

It is proper to mention, that the *Arabic* names on the plates are frequently erroneous, for the author ingenuously owns that he did not understand that language.

guage. It was almost impossible to make the necessary alterations, and I am persuaded the generality of readers will think an incorrectness in that article of no great importance. Nor has any alteration been made with regard to the *French* references and explanations: as an attempt to erase and re-engrave such a quantity of writing must unavoidably have injured many of the plates, it was thought more adviseable that they should remain in their original state. I have taken care however to supply the *English* reader with a translation of them, in the table prefixed to each volume.

# P R E F A C E

T O

The *FRENCH* EDITION in folio.

**T**H E Egyptians boast of being one of the most ancient people of the universe. Few nations in effect can dispute with them this prerogative. Their pretensions, in this respect, are founded on a multitude of monuments, that have the stamp of the remotest antiquity; titles, which are so much the more respectable, as the authors of all ages have spoken of them with admiration.

A COUNTRY rendered famous by so many wonders of antiquity, could not fail to attract the attention of the curious, and become one of the favourite objects of their study. These latter times especially, have produced a number of travellers and learned men of different nations of Europe, whose relations and researches have much more contributed to make us acquainted with Egypt, and to clear up its antiquities, than all the works published before on this subject.

BUT notwithstanding this assistance, we were still very far from being perfectly informed of every thing that is important and singular in Egypt. Persons of taste and learning, whose curiosity wanted much of being fully satisfied, found divers faults in all the descriptions of this country, not excepting the most modern. They judged, that certain articles were not  
1 treated

treated with sufficient exactness and fidelity, that several others had been totally omitted, or that at least, if they were touched on, it had been done very superficially; insomuch that they could by no means consider those relations as finished, and in all points worthy of credit.

THE work of the late Mr. NORDEN, which we now offer the public, appears to us to supply in part, what the preceding descriptions of Egypt had left deficient. Several illustrious persons, and learned men of the first class, in foreign countries, have judged of it as we have done; and their approbation has not a little contributed to the pleasure we enjoyed in seeing ourselves intrusted with the care of publishing this new voyage to Egypt.

BEFORE we enter into any detail on the subject of the work itself, and of what has relation to it, we think ourselves obliged to inform the publick of the principal circumstances of the author's life. We are indebted for this account to Mr. de ROEMELING, commander of the naval forces of the king, an intimate friend of our author, and we have been favoured with several explanations by Mr. NORDEN, brother of the person we are now going to speak of.

FREDERICK LEWIS NORDEN was born at Gluckstadt, the 22d of October, 1708. His father, GEORGE NORDEN, lieutenant colonel of artillery, married CATHARINE HENRICHSEN, a native, as well as himself, of the town of Rensbourg, by whom he had five sons. As he proposed to bring them all up to the profession of arms, he took a particular care to prepare them for it betimes, and made them learn the modern languages, history, geography, drawing and the mathematicks. The third, and the youngest of his sons died early in life, when they were officers of the artillery. The eldest died captain of the artillery in 1733. The second and the fourth survived. The one, not long since a captain of foot, has quitted the service,

service, and the other is the traveller, that has distinguished himself so advantageously by the work we publish.

BEING designed for the sea service, he entered, in 1722, into the corps of Cadets ; an establishment in which some choice young men are educated at the expence of the king, and instructed in all the arts and sciences, which contribute to form good sea-officers.

Mr. NORDEN made, in such a school, all the progress, that could be expected from so fine a genius, especially in the mathematics, in the art of building vessels, and in *drawing*. The study of *drawing* in particular, made his principal amusement, and he took to it in such a manner as to discover already an uncommon talent. Nature, in *his* taste, was the best original he could follow. He constantly imitated her, and took a pleasure in representing her in every object that offered itself to his sight ; not confining himself to copy the works of another, any further than was necessary to catch the taste, and to appropriate to himself the manner of the great masters.

DEATH deprived him of his father in 1728, but his fortune did not suffer by it. The late Mr. de LERCHE, knight of the order of the elephant, grand master of the ceremonies, discovered his happy dispositions, and judged them worthy to be encouraged and employed. The late king CHRISTIAN vi<sup>th</sup>, of glorious memory, having put into the hands of this nobleman a collection of charts and topographical plans, in order to get a part of them retouched, and others amended, he gave this task to the young NORDEN, and had reason to be satisfied with the care and skill that he had shewn in them. But a work of this kind serving only to draw him off from the employments belonging to his condition, he obtained, by the intercession of his protector, the liberty of being dispensed from it, to enter into a career more conformable to his genius, and more proper to perfect him in the  
pro-

profession he had embraced. Mr. de LERCHE, having presented him to the king towards the end of the year 1732, his majesty resolved that he should travel, and bestowed on him a pension with that view. He was named, moreover, second lieutenant. The admiralty prescribed to him to apply himself in his voyages to the art of building vessels, and in particular to what concerns the construction of gallies and rowing-vessels, which are made use of principally in the Mediterranean.

HE set out, a little time after, for Holland, where the assistances that this country offered in all those kinds which he had proposed to himself to cultivate, engaged him to prolong his continuance. He contracted an intimacy there with several admirers of antiquities and of the polite arts, with whom he has ever since kept up a friendly correspondence, and communication of knowledge. He did not fail likewise there to make an acquaintance with several distinguished artists, of whom we shall name only JOHN de REYTER, a skilful designer and engraver; who, charmed with his ardour to be instructed, took a particular pleasure in teaching him to engrave with *aqua fortis*.

At length he quitted Holland in the year 1734, to go to Marseilles. After having carefully informed himself there, in every thing that could have a relation to the principal design of his voyage, he embarked for Leghorn, where he redoubled his application for executing the task that had been imposed on him. He there got models made of different kinds of rowing-vessels, which are still to be seen in the chamber of models at the old Holm <sup>a</sup>.

HE spent near three years in Italy, where, in the midst of all the pleasures that are enjoyed in this country, he relished only that of perfecting his taste, and

---

<sup>a</sup> A place within the city of Copenhagen, where are the yards and arsenals of the admiralty.



of enlarging his knowledge. The intimacies that he formed there with abundance of persons of distinction, were so much the more pleasing to him, as he owed them solely to his own personal merit; and the access that was granted him to the cabinets of antiquities, of medals, and of works of painting and sculpture, especially at Rome and at Florence, was a new assistance, of which he did not fail to take the advantage. His acknowledged talents gained him the distinction of being made an associate to the academy of *drawing* at Florence.

It was in this city that he had received from the late king, in the year 1737, an order to go into Egypt; a period of his life, upon which we shall speak more at large, when we come to give an account of the work now offered to the public, and of the circumstances that have given rise to it. It will be sufficient to mention here, that Mr. NORDEN returned from Egypt in 1738, after having spent there near a year; that he landed at Leghorn, having in his passage gone ashore at Messina; and that after having made a tour to Venice, where he stayed but a little time, he returned by land into his own country, to make a report of the success of his voyages.

DURING his absence the king had advanced him a degree. When the count of Dannefskiold-Samsøe, who was at the head of the affairs of the marine, presented him to his majesty; his majesty was pleased to name him captain lieutenant, and a little time after he was made captain of the royal navy, and named a member of the commission established for the building of vessels.

He had no sooner taken possession of this new employ, but the war broke out between England and Spain. In this conjuncture, the count of Dannefskiold-Samsøe, who is always intent upon the glory and prosperity of the state, proposed to the king to permit divers officers of his navy, to go and serve in quality of  
volun-



volunteers in the fleets of the powers at war, whilst their own country enjoyed the sweets of peace. He associated, with the approbation of his majesty, Mr. NORDEN to his nephew the count ULRIC ADOLPHUS of Dannefskiold-Samsøe, at that time captain of a man of war, to make together some expeditions aboard the English squadrons. We still regret the loss of this young noblemen, whom death ravished from us in the flower of his age, at the time, when, being arrived at the degree of rear-admiral <sup>b</sup>, he was going gloriously to fulfil the great expectations that had been conceived of him.

THE count of Dannefskiold and Mr. NORDEN set out with Mr. de ROEMELING, and arrived at London in February 1740. Mr. NORDEN was received there with so much the more favour amongst all, as his reputation of being a well informed traveller, and of great abilities, had gone before him; several of the most distinguished persons of the court, and the Prince of Wales himself, who was desirous to see the *designs* of his work upon Egypt, shewed him as much kindness, as the men of learning did esteem, in a country, where merit and knowledge obtain the greatest titles.

THE following summer, our three countrymen went aboard the fleet commanded by Sir JOHN NORRIS. They had reason to be satisfied with the civilities that the admiral shewed them, and with the gracious reception of the Duke of Cumberland, who went aboard the admiral with an intention of making the expedition as a volunteer. It is well known that the expedition projected did not take place.

THE fleet being returned back into the ports of England, the count of Dannefskiold, Mr. de ROEMELING and Mr. NORDEN set out again, in the month of October 1740, under the command of Sir CHALONER OGLE, who was to go to America, to reinforce

---

<sup>b</sup> Schout-by-nacht.

admiral VERNON. The design was to besiege Carthage. Mr. NORDEN could have given us a very good account of that enterprize. He had even begun it and had drawn several sketches. But other employments made him afterwards lay aside this design. The expedition being ended, our volunteers returned back into England in the autumn of 1741.

AT his return to London, Mr. NORDEN was received there more agreeably than ever. His acquaintance with the English made him adopt their solid taste, and the advantages he had got from his expeditions gave a new lustre to his merit. He passed the winter and a part of the year following at London, and was admitted there a member of the Royal Society.

It was about this time, that his health began to decline considerably. His great application to labour very soon exhausted a body already much worn by the fatigues of war and of sea, and whose weak and delicate constitution was not corresponding to the active ardour of his mind. He found himself attacked with a consumption, and was in danger of his life. In hopes that the change of climate would contribute to recover him, he proposed to himself in the summer of 1742 to make a tour in France, and to visit, with the count of Dannefskiold, the coasts and ports of that kingdom.

BEFORE they made this progress, they were willing to see Paris, and to make some stay there. This pleasure was disturbed by a new attack of the same disorder, as Mr. NORDEN had just recovered from at London. At length death deprived us of him at Paris, on the 22d of September 1742, and interrupted the course of a life, which promised to be still extremely useful. The sincere regret of several persons of distinction in foreign countries followed him to the tomb, and his country will always place him in the number of those distinguished men, who have done it honour.

SUCH have been the principal events of the life of our author. We shall now make our readers acquainted with the work that they have before them, and in order to inform them better of what imports them to know, we shall begin with giving a more particular account of the voyage into Egypt, which is the subject of it.

It was by the orders of the late king CHRISTIAN vi<sup>th</sup>, of glorious memory, that this voyage was undertaken. This prince, founder of our society, and whose memory will be inviolably sacred to it, had joined to the love he bore his people, and to a constant application to make his kingdom flourish, a particular taste for arts and learning, which he took a pleasure in encouraging by a royal liberality. With the design of enriching the learned world by new discoveries concerning Egypt, and of making advantage of an exact knowledge of this country, in order to give a greater extent to the navigation of the Danish nation, his Majesty was desirous of having a circumstantial account of a country, so distant and so famous, but an account made by an intelligent man, and whose fidelity could not be questioned. No one was more capable than Mr. NORDEN to satisfy all the views of the king.

HE was then in the flower of his age, lively, discreet, of great abilities, and of a courage that no danger nor fatigue disheartened, together with this of a fine taste, and, which might be depended upon, a skilful observer, a great *designer*, and a good mathematician. There was still more than this; a strong desire in him of examining, upon the spot, the wonders of Egypt, had preceded the orders of his master.

BEING at Florence, he had found an opportunity of contracting an acquaintance with the baron de STOSCH, so well known for his learning, and fine cabinet of entaglios, medals, and other antiquities. The conformity of their tastes very soon united them into  
a closer

a closer intimacy. The conversation that they had every day together, turned commonly on polite literature, and principally on history and antiquities. Mr. de Stosch, full of admiration for those of Egypt, often regretted the uncertainty and defectiveness of the accounts of that country, as well ancient as modern. Our traveller entered easily into the notions of his friend. Insensibly he let himself be carried away with a desire of seeing the borders of the Nile. The glory he found in informing the publick of so many interesting singularities, made all the difficulties vanish from his sight, which he must surmount in order to arrive thither.

In this disposition he received at Florence the orders of the court. He obeyed them with zeal, and with eagerness made the preparations for his voyage, guided by the knowledge of Mr. de Stosch, and by the relations of ocular witnesses, that he met with at Leghorn.

He embarked there in 1737 for Alexandria, where he landed in the month of June, after a voyage of thirty days.

He saw all that was the most curious at Alexandria and in the adjacent parts, and pursued his rout to Cairo, where he arrived the 7th of July. Being obliged by a great sickness, joined with other circumstances, to make a stay there of more than four months, he did not fail to examine every thing, whether in the town, or in the neighbourhood, and to go and see the pyramids, situated at some distance from that capital.

At length on the 17th of November embarking on the Nile to continue his voyage, he traversed the Upper Egypt in going up the river, saw in his passage Girge, the capital of that country, and landed at Esfuaen or Syene, where he got himself conveyed to the first cataract of the Nile. He afterwards attempted to coast along the borders of the river, resolving to

to go to the second cataract, but they reached only to Derri in Nubia, where insurmountable obstacles hindered him from advancing any farther.

He began to return back to Cairo the 6th of January 1738, continuing to sail upon the Nile, and landed the 21st of February. In going down the river, he did not neglect to give a greater exactness and extensiveness to the observations he had made in going up, and to add some new ones. He made some likewise in repassing through the Lower Egypt, principally at Cairo and at Alexandria, from whence he set out towards the end of May to return into Europe, furnished with good memoirs upon every thing that had appeared to him interesting and worthy of attention, in the countries he had travelled through.

THESE memoirs were composed of observations written on loose sheets of paper, the greatest part of which concerned the Lower Egypt, and of a continued and circumstantial journal of the voyage of the author, from the 17th of November 1737, when he embarked at Cairo to penetrate into the Upper-Egypt, till his return the 21st of February 1738.

BUT that which extremely enhanced the value of his papers, was an ample collection of *designs* and sketches, made on the spot, to which were joined the necessary explications and remarks. The author had every where noted the dimensions, drawn views, and taken plans. We have called him an exact *designer*. Besides that, his knowledge in architecture enabled him to represent justly those magnificent monuments of Egypt; and lastly, the study he had made of the mathematicks furnished him with the means of drawing with success, and upon observations of the utmost exactness, the great chart of the Nile, which he has given. It takes up twenty nine plates, and we dare assert, that it surpasses all of the kind that have hitherto appeared.

WHEN he was returned into his own country, all  
 4 these



these assistances enabled him to give the king an exact and circumstantial account of the researches he had made in his travels, and to enter into the most particular details, in order to clear up those points, which he thought the worthiest of engaging the attention of that prince. His designs especially gave him the opportunity of placing before the eyes of the king the most remarkable objects, and as they made him recollect the minutest circumstances, the descriptions, that he added to them, transported one almost upon the spot.

His majesty expressed to him his satisfaction in the most gracious terms, and was desirous that he should draw up immediately an account of his voyage, in order that it might be published for the instruction of the curious and learned.

Mr. NORDEN did not delay to execute a command that did him so much honour. He had established with the baron de STOSCH, ever since their separation in 1737, a correspondence by letters, of which the antiquities of Egypt were the only subject. The reader will not be displeased to find at the end of this preface a specimen of them, taken from the first tome of the *Nouvelles littéraires* of Florence. Besides this correspondence, which he continued to keep up, he consulted also several intelligent persons of his own country, and took the utmost pains to render the work, which he had in hand, interesting and instructive.

He first reviewed and retouched the designs. Afterwards he began to dispose and to translate from the Danish language, into French, his observations on the Lower Egypt, and the remarks which he had made for the explanation of the designs relative to that country, and to compose an account of it in form, which referred to the *designs*, and corrected the relations that had hitherto been given.

THE functions attached to his condition, and the assiduity with which he gave himself up to them, must naturally retard the progress of the work.

No sooner had he put in order the description of Alexandria, and of the Pyramids, than his voyage to England, and the expeditions which we have mentioned, occasioned him to defer this work to a more peaceable time. He took with him indeed a part of his papers, thinking he should find, from time to time, an hour of leisure to continue his work. But he was obliged to leave the whole at London, excepting his journal, which he translated from the Danish language into French. It was however during his first expedition that he wrote his remarks on the *Pyramidographia* of Mr. JOHN GREAVES, which we have inserted in the first volume.

MARTIN FOLKES esquire, whose death the republic of letters will long regret, and to whom Mr. NORDEN addressed those remarks, had seen some parts of his work, and had spoke of them with praise to several people of taste. Our author at his return to England, was soon sensible of the effects of Mr. FOLKES's recommendation. He was, as we have already mentioned, admitted member of the illustrious society, of which that gentleman was then president.

ON this occasion he thought proper to give the publick an idea of some ruins and colossal statues at Thebes in Egypt, in an English dissertation, dedicated to the Royal Society, entitled, *Drawings of some ruins and colossal statues at Thebes in Egypt, with an account of the same in a letter to the Royal Society*, MDCCXLI. This essay (which is properly nothing but a piece of his journal, that you have in the second volume <sup>c</sup>) with the four plates, which belong to it, gained him new applauses, and reanimated the desire that the publick had shewn of seeing the work compleated. His premature death deprived him of the enjoyment of a glory he could not have failed to acquire from thence.

---

<sup>c</sup> See page 63—69. vol. 2<sup>d</sup> this edit.

THOUGH he died far distant from his country, yet his memoirs upon Egypt have been preserved to us. When he saw his end approach, he took care to put all the loose papers that might have any relation to his voyage to Egypt, into safe and faithful hands. The count of Danneskiold, a professed patron of the author during his life, shewed himself zealous for his glory after his decease, and testified a great respect for the precious trust that had been committed to him. He informed the king of it, and his Majesty ordered that a finishing hand should be put to the work, and that the designs should be engraven by the famous MARK TUSCHER of Nurenberg.

THIS ingenious man had joined to engraving and painting a taste of polite literature and of the elegant works of antiquity, a knowledge also of the mathematics, and above all a great skill in architecture, which gave him a visible superiority over common artists. Besides that he was almost the only person capable of acquitting himself with success of the task that was required, he had been for several years connected in friendship with the author. This friendship, the ties of which had been formed in Italy, was renewed at London, where the voyage of Egypt was the ordinary subject of their conversations. The *Sieur TUSCHER* had seized the ideas of his friend, and the *designs* of the voyage into Egypt were almost as familiar to him, as to the author himself. Insomuch that he had, to oblige Mr. NORDEN, engraven the two first plates of the essay printed at London, in 1741.

ONE single circumstance opposed so suitable a choice. The *Sieur TUSCHER*, though very skilful in the art of engraving, had proposed to himself to quit the graving tool, and to confine himself intirely to the pencil, which he had always preferred to it. He consented, however, to take upon him a work, which would contribute to illustrate the memory of his friend, and came for that purpose to Copenhagen; where, having been



designed to be a professor of the Royal academy of painting, of sculpture, and architecture, he would have seen his reputation increase, which was already so well established, if death had not taken him off in the midst of his career.

AT his arrival at Copenhagen, the *designs* were put into his hands, that he might set about the engraving of them, and he worked at it with ardour, animated by the tender friendship and esteem he had for the deceased.

THE work was in this condition, when the king FREDERICK v<sup>th</sup>, our present glorious monarch, a little after his accession to the throne, gave orders to our society to take on them the care of putting it in a condition to be published. We were still deploring the death of our august founder. The love that his son bore towards the sciences discovered itself immediately, and the polite arts in Denmark perceived, that tho' the country had changed its king, yet the same protector continued to them,

THE engraving of the plates required the least part of our attention. The work of the Sieur TUSCHER continually advanced. At his death all the plates were engraven, excepting the last, which represents the view of Derri, and which we were obliged to commit to other hands. He had even already drawn the portraiture of the author and adorned the plate with a medal, which he had contrived for doing honour to the memory of his friend. But the infirmities which preceded his death, did not permit him to finish himself the engraving of them,

THE memoirs required more application to be digested and prepared for the press. It was necessary to collect together with care the scattered shreds of the work, to dispose them in a manner the most suitable to the plan, to translate into French what was still only in the Danish language, to retouch the style, where it was negligent, and lastly to act in the best manner

manner we could for carrying the whole to that point of perfection, which the circumstances permitted it to arrive at.

WHEN we examined things minutely, we saw too well the difference there would be between the articles reviewed and finished by the author, and those to which he had not been able to give the finishing hand. How strong soever the temptation might be to supply the vacuities of his account, and to clear up any obscurities, by the assistances that other writers, ancient and modern, might furnish, some solid reasons prohibited us from taking this measure.

WE had declared in express terms, in the proposals of the subscription, that we would follow exactly the journals of the author in the condition that he had left them, and it appears, that the deceased himself was desirous of preserving his work free from any mixture of others notions, by a kind of act of his last will, which he has left written with his own hand upon one of his loose papers, and which we have never lost sight of in the arrangement of his *memoirs*. These are his expressions: "If these papers fall into any other hands, they must not expect to find in them a compleat description of the places that I have seen. They are only memorandums written upon the spot, and which contain nothing but the course of my voyage, the accidents that have happened to me in it, and the remarks that I have been able to make. If I relate any particular that is little interesting, it should be considered, that it may be of service to inform those persons who may have the same voyage to make. The whole is written with a good intention, and without any embellishment. Truth alone is my guide. I willingly permit any censure upon the style; it has need of correction. But I earnestly entreat that no other alteration be made. I do not desire that my observations should be esteemed beyond their due value. I have done my best. I have not wrote a syllable that  
I am

I am not thoroughly convinced of. I would not avail myself of the proverb, *That travellers have a privilege of lying*. The reader may believe me upon my word, and rely on the authenticity of my *designs*."

DETERMINED by these considerations, we have made it an inviolable law to ourselves, to give the memoirs of the author in their utmost purity, without adding any thing to them of our own, and without making any alteration in them, except with regard to the style and the arrangement of the articles.

OUR scrupulous attention not to deviate from this principle will appear by an evident instance. In the remarks of the author upon the *Pyramidographia* of Mr. JOHN GREAVES, which make a part of the first volume, mention is made, (p. 133.) of the sepulchre of OSYMANDIAS, and of the circle of gold that CAMBYSES took from it. Mr. NORDEN, after having given his sentiment of it, adds, that the reader may see, in his *designs*, the place where the circle might have been fixed. He had, without doubt, in view the 112th plate<sup>d</sup>, which represents the ruins of the palace of MEMNON, and where we see in effect a figure drawn upon the ground, which resembles very much the print of a circle. Yet in the account given by our author, which relates to that plate, we find not a single word referring to that subject. Nothing would have been more easy than to have supplied it of ourselves. But rather than give any addition to the author, we have left this slight omission to his account, contenting ourselves with giving notice of it to the reader in this place.

WE cannot conclude this preface without applauding the testimonies that so many persons, both at home and in foreign countries, have given of their

---

<sup>d</sup> It is the third of the essay printed at London, in 1741, and the only one that was engraven by the hand of our author. See plate vi. of this edition.

esteem for learning, and the polite arts, by favouring the publication of a work, which may not be unuseful to their advancement. The English nation in particular needed not to give this fresh instance of the respects they had shewn to the author, to recall to our minds on this occasion, that it is owing to their generous way of thinking, and to their exquisite taste, that the learned world has already acquired the knowledge of a great part of the most beautiful monuments of antiquity. Fired with an ardour that does honour to learning and to those that cultivate it, we on our part have had no other view, in directing the impression of the author's collections, but the interest of the publick, and the satisfaction of having omitted no care to fulfill intirely our engagements. We hope that it will be acknowledged on the perusal of this work, and that, in favour of our exactness in all the essential points, some indulgence will be shewn for a delay which divers accumulated circumstances, and too long to be mentioned in particular, have rendered unavoidable.

*An extract from the Nouvelles Littéraires, published  
at Florence, in the year 1740.*

*Translated from the ITALIAN.*

Numb. XXX.

*Florence, July 22, 1740.*

THE baron de STROCH, eminent for so many rare accomplishments, has communicated to us four letters, which he received from captain NORDEN, a Danish gentleman, well versed in drawing and mechanics, and of a refined taste in the polite arts; whom, in regard to his great abilities and singular merit, his majesty the king of Denmark commanded, some years since, to undertake a voyage to Egypt, to make observations, and to take drawings of the most remarkable monuments of antiquity, in order that an exact description of them might be given, and worthy of credit. These letters afford informations of a very curious nature, some of which appear to be criticisms upon MAILLET's description, of whom we must in consequence say, that he was neither a diligent, nor an exact observer. We shall give these letters, translated from their originals in French, for the subject of this and the ensuing paper. The first letter, written from captain NORDEN to the baron de S. dated *Grand Cairo*, July 28, 1737, contains as follows: "In Alexandria I had the pleasure to be employed in examining the valuable remains of antiquity, which are there to be found. They are sufficiently known to you, from the many descriptions, which have already been given of them; but assure yourself that they far surpass every thing that has been said on the subject. If I remember

ber right, you have MAILLET's description; but he is an author, whose relations are idle tales. I know not well how to pardon him, for having so enormously maimed the beautiful column of POMPEY. From the design which he gives of it, one would be induced to think it of no value; whereas in viewing the column itself, you observe in it the finest proportion that can be imagined. I have made an exact *design* of it, which I shall one day have the pleasure of shewing you. What he says of the basis, that it is much ruined, and that the whole column rests upon a single stone, is a notorious falsity. It is on one side only, that the Arabs have damaged it: the three other sides are almost entire, and extremely well sustain the great weight of this magnificent mass. I have also given *designs* of the four sides of the obelisk, commonly called CLEOPATRA's, and are already described by PLINY, with the other, which is actually upon the ground, and which, as well as the first, was of old placed in the temple of CÆSAR. The hieroglyphics upon the two contiguous sides, are very beautiful; but the others have greatly suffered from wind and damps: I have therefore represented them exactly as they are. You shall see all this, and judge whether Mr. MAILLET was capable of giving a just idea of these fine monuments. The worst of it is, that he does the same with regard to the rest, of which, at present, it is impossible for me to give you an ample detail. I shall, one day or other, communicate to you the remarks I have made, and that I am continuing to make on this subject." As the baron de S. had, in answer to this letter, communicated to captain NORDEN divers observations from ancient history, in which he was wonderfully skilled, that they might be compared, if possible, with the monuments of the Upper Egypt, towards which Mr. NORDEN was then setting forward, the latter, after his voyage, having left the Levant, in order to return to Denmark, and  
being



being arrived at Venice, wrote to the baron de S. the following, dated Sept. 20, 1738. “ I have several times wrote to you, during my stay in Egypt; but not having received any answer, I was unwilling to divert you from your occupations by a correspondence little interesting, and which the distance rendered so irregular. At present, as I am at this place, I would not deprive myself of the pleasure of discharging my duty by this letter, and assuring you that the light you have afforded me, has been of great service to me in visiting the inestimable antiquities of that famous kingdom. I have made my observations upon many of them, and I have also *drawn*, and measured the greatest part; the whole, however, with much fatigue, and no small danger, since the country beyond Cairo is, to say the truth, almost impassable to travellers. We penetrated, however, as far as a vessel was capable of being navigated upon the Nile, that is, to the second cataract, and is as far as there are any antiquities to be observed; it has furnished me with a great extent for drawing, with all possible exactness, a geographical chart, from Grand Cairo to Derri. I may, perhaps, some time or other, put together all my papers, and exhibit such a work as, in my opinion, has never yet made its appearance. I have met with many particulars that STRABO speaks of, and among the rest the two grand colosses mentioned in his writings, the *designs* of which, as well as many others, I have by me; and I have also seen, so far as I am able to conjecture, the remains of the statue of MEMNON. The palace of MEMNON is entire, and ornamented with significative hieroglyphics of great beauty, where the incrustated colours are as well preserved, as if they had been applied but yesterday. I could have wished to shew you my whole collection of above two hundred *designs*, by returning home your way. But my permission to undertake the voyage to Egypt, and my orders to return to my own country, and to see Venice  
in

in my passage, being joined together, I am not at liberty to go out of my way, and I set out next week in order to continue my *route* to Copenhagen, without stopping." The two other letters will appear in another paper.

---

Numb. XXXI.

Florence, July 29, 1740.

*Continuation of the correspondence of captain  
NORDEN with baron the STOSCH.*

BARON de STOSCH in answer to captain NORDEN's last letter written from Venice, sent him an account of the authors who had described Egypt, advised him to have his *designs* engraved, and desired to be informed whether he had observed the famous temple of CÆSAR, spoken of by PHILO JUDÆUS, and which CÆSAR made his habitation. The relation of this great temple is in PHILO's book upon the legation to CAIUS, and begins with these words: Οὐδὲ γὰρ τοιῶτόν ἐστι τέμενος οἷον τὸ λεγόμενον Σεβάσιον, ἐπιβαλὴν Καίσαρος νεώς: where the historian describes it in the most precise and exact manner, and speaks of it as one of the most surprising edifices of antiquity. Captain NORDEN replied to all these points, Oct. 25, 1738, in his passage through Hamburgh, where he received the baron's letter: "From the honour of yours of the 27th ult. which came to hand the 25th instant upon my arrival at this place, I have the happiness to find myself constantly in your favour, and heartily return you thanks for the informations you have given me, concerning the authors who have written on Egypt. In regard to your advice, to get my *designs* engraved, that matter yet remains undetermined, not only as I am ignorant whether his majesty, who, you  
well



well know, made me undertake these travels, will think proper to give his permission, but also as I should be unwilling to expose myself, till I am certain that my work is new, and that the same observations have not already been furnished by others. I should be better able to determine this affair, had I the opportunity of shewing you my *designs*; but this is an advantage I could not obtain. Your friend Mr. ZANETTI at Venice has seen them, but he has so highly applauded them, that I know not well what to think of it. If you are inclined, you might ask him after news, and by that means I may perhaps be able to form some judgment of my performance. The great temple that PHILO speaks of, has been situated between the little Pharillon and the new town, to the left as you enter the great port of Alexandria. At this time there are only two obelisks, one of which is yet standing in its old place, the other is broken, and almost buried in ruins. Except the former, I have not found any columns standing, but a great number broken in pieces, of which some lye in the water, and others have been used in the towers of the old wall, erected by the Saracens as an inclosure to the town. The columns of the market place, which you speak of, have no connection with this temple: There are half a dozen in the street of Rosetto. They have been employed to make a gallery, which the houses rest upon, and it is at the same time a shelter to foot passengers, as at Padoua and in the place of St. Mark at Venice. I have taken *designs* of the obelisks, and a view and plan of the whole." Arriving at length at Copenhagen, captain NORDEN wrote again to the Baron de S. a long letter, dated April 19, 1739, an extract of which follows. "I hope to get the Scotch author you tell me of" [Mr. ALEXANDER GORDEN, whom the Baron de S. had proposed to him, for illustrating the ancient paintings] "but as he treats only of the paintings upon the cases of the mummies, he will be of no great use to me in explaining  
those

those wonderful ones that I have seen upon an infinite number of ancient buildings, or in giving the least idea of them. Imagine to yourself, in the extent of an Italian league, palaces with columns thirty two *french* feet in circumference, cased with sandy stones cut in squares; and all over covered within and without with paintings, representing the worship of the deities of the country, the ceremonies and customs of the inhabitants, their manner of making war and of sailing, together with love-devices intermixed. Consider likewise that the manner of painting is so totally different from any thing in practice at this time, as to make it necessary for me to give you some slight idea of it. . A painting eighty feet high, and proportionably broad, is divided into two ranges of gigantic figures in *bas-relief*, and covered with most exquisite colours, suited to the drapery and naked parts of the figure. But what is still more wonderful is this, that the azure, the yellow, the green, and the other colours made use of, are as well preserved, as if they had been laid on but yesterday, and so strongly fixed to the stone, that I was never able to separate them in the least degree. The intermediate space between these colossal figures is filled with an infinity of other paintings and hieroglyphics, of which a great part is easily intelligible by every observer, whilst others, which are in the taste of those upon the obelisks, and which without doubt contain the history and description of the picture, are no longer understood. What a change, here, has time produced! that which was designed to explain the picture, is understood only by the picture itself. The inside of the temples and palaces does not indeed contain representations of such immoderate size; but the whole is filled in the same manner. You will ask me whether the design is good, and has taste? yes, sir, the whole is executed with much greater exactness than the idols of granite, which we both have seen in the capitol. The reason of this is plain; the material, of

which those idols are made, is extremely hard, whereas that of the figures, which I have so lately seen, is of a much softer nature. You would know too if I have copied any one of them. Assuredly. I have a small delineation which represents a part of a sepulchral grotto, that is entirely historical. But why nothing more, you will say. Nobody, sir, should be required to do impossibilities: I have been obliged to set bounds to my ambition, and to treat of this magnificence of antiquity in general only. Had I entered into a minute examination of particular beauties, I never should have made an end. I own I often found myself under strong temptation to undertake it, but when I reflected upon my design, it constantly happened that nothing was concluded upon, and the moments were so precious in this country, that I was under a necessity of retiring, all enchanted as I was. I should never conclude, if I attempted to communicate to you exactly every thing I have seen in this source of all the sciences. Let them talk to me no more of Rome; let Greece be silent, if she would not be convicted of having known nothing but what she derived from Egypt. What venerable architecture! What magnificence! What mechanicks! What other nation ever had courage to undertake works so surprising! They in truth surpass all ideas that can be formed of them; and I cannot help lamenting, that I shall scarce obtain credit, though I express myself without the least exaggeration."—This Danish gentleman, with an understanding so cultivated, is at this time on board admiral Haddock's squadron at Port Mahon<sup>d</sup> in quality of a volunteer.

---

<sup>c</sup> Plate CXXV. Vol. II. *Fol. ed.*

<sup>d</sup> It was in admiral NORRIS's fleet that Mr. NORDEN then served, as has been mentioned in that part of the preface which gives an account of the author's life.

**T**HE translator imagines it will be no unacceptable addition to the work, to give the address that Mr. NORDEN wrote to the President and Fellows of the Royal Society, in the treatise he published at London upon his admission into that illustrious Body, which is mentioned in the translation of the preface to the French edition, p. 12. He has therefore extracted it, together with the quotations from ancient and modern authors.

*“ To MARTIN FOLKES Esq. President, and to the rest of the Council and Fellows of the Royal Society of London, for improving natural knowledge.*

GENTLEMEN,

**T**HE plates I have the honour to lay before you, are taken from four of the drawings, which I made about four years since, by the command of his Majesty the king of Denmark, my gracious and royal master, from some of the remains of antiquity, that are still found dispersed, almost all over the kingdom of Egypt.

AND as these may possibly be of use to illustrate some passages in antient authors, who have taken notice of the statue of MEMNON, I have subjoined most of those passages; to which I have added, what I have met with in modern books also, relating to the same subject; together with an extract from my own journal, of what I observed on the spot, and wrote down there immediately after I had taken the drawings, for the more ready understanding the same.

I PRESENT them to you, gentlemen, as to persons of the most extensive knowledge and learning, thereby qualified to judge of all works of antiquity, to compare one with another the divers writings of the antients, and to correct the several errors and inaccuracies, to which they, as well as the moderns, may have been subject.

I LAY claim myself to no erudition, and desire you

will only look upon what I say, as the report of a faithful traveller, and of one who pretends to no more, than having seen with some care, and related honestly what he has seen.

THE three first drawings were executed upon the place just as you see them : I have not since been willing so much as to finish them ; much less would I have ventured to add any thing by way of ornament or embellishment. The last drawing, which exhibits the plan, was made since I came away, but from the sketch and measures I took also upon the spot, when I was at Thebes.

THE marvellous and the agreeable which frequently recommend works to the multitude, but which at the same time destroy the true fruit that should be gathered from relations of this sort, have always appeared to me unworthy of a traveller ; and more particularly of one who treats of places so far distant, that it is very difficult for others to examine into the truth of his reports : for this reason, I am here desirous to assure my readers, that in whatever I may hereafter have occasion to publish of my observations on the places I have seen, it is my fixed resolution to pursue no other rule, than that of delivering, with truth and simplicity, such accounts as I am able to give of those places, and of the things I have there thought best deserving to be taken notice of.

It is upon this account only, that I have thought these few drawings worthy to be laid before you : and I flatter myself, gentlemen, that you will accept them as a small token of my sincere respect, and of my thankfulness for the honour you have been pleased to do me, in admitting me a member of your illustrious Society ; being with great truth,

GENTLEMEN,

*Your most humble*

*and most obedient servant,*

F. L. NORDEN."

*London, the 7th of  
January 1741.*

*Passages from ancient and modern AUTHORS referred to in the foregoing letter.*

STRABO, lib. xvii. p. 816.

**H**IC cum duo Colossi essent de solido lapide inter se propinqui, alter adhuc extat, alterius vero superiores a sede partes corruerunt, terræ (ut fama est) motu.

CREDITUM etiam est, semel quotidie sonitum quendam, veluti ictus haud magni, edi a parte, quæ in sede ac basi remansit.

IPSE cum ÆLIO GALLO adesset, & cum reliqua multitudine amicorum, ac militum, qui cum eo erant, circiter horam primam sonitum audiui; utrum a basi, sive a Colosso, an vero ab eam circumstantium aliquo editus fuerit, non habeo affirmare: cum propter incertitudinem causæ quidvis potius credere subeat, quam ex lapidibus sic compositis sonum edi.

PLINIUS, lib. xxxvi. cap. 7.

Non abfimilis illi narratur in Thebis delubro Serapis, ut putant MEMNONIS statuæ dicatus: quem quotidiano solis ortu contactum radiis crepare dicunt.

TACITUS *Annal.* lib. ii. cap. 61.

COETERUM GERMANICUS aliis quoque miraculis intendit animum, quorum præcipua fuere MEMNONIS faxea effigies, ubi radiis solis icta est vocalem sonum reddens.

PAUSANIAS *Attic.* cap. 42.

EUM certe in fabricandis muris ab APPOLLINE ad-  
jutum MEGARENSES affirmant, atque eum de quo dixi lapidem ubi citharam deposuit, pro testimonio habent. Reddit enim, calculo si quis eam percusserit, eundem quem pulsæ fides sonum: quæ mihi res plane admirabilis visa est: quanquam Colossus, qui Thebis Ægyptiis est trans Nilum, non longe ab eo loco, quæ SYRINGES appellantur, majore utique cum admiratione spectavi.

STATUA



STATUA ibi est sedentis hominis, eam multi MEMNONIS nominant: quem ex Æthiopia in Ægyptum venisse, ac Susas etiam usque penetrasse tradunt. At ipsi Thebani MEMNONEM esse negant, nam PHAMENOPHEM fuisse indigenam hominem dicunt. Audivi etiam qui SESOSTRIS illam statuam esse dicerent: eam CAMBYSES diffidit: & nunc etiam superior pars a vertice ad medium truncum humi neglecta jacet: reliquum adhuc sedere videtur, ac quotidie sub ipsum solis ortum, sonum edit, qualem vel citharæ vel lyre nervi, si forte dum tenduntur rumpantur.

PHILOSTRATUS, *De vita Apollonii*, lib. vi. cap. 3.

Locum enim ubi templum fundatum fuerat, antiquo foro similem dicunt esse. Extant ejusmodi fora quædam in vetustissimis civitatibus, ubi & columnarum visuntur fragmenta, & parietum quædam vestigia. Præterea sedes & limina & Mercurii simulachra, partim manu, partim vetustate consumpta, illic etiam conspici dicunt. Ipsius vero MEMNONIS statua adolescentis impuberis imaginem referens, ad solis radios conversa est. Est autem ex nigro lapide fabricata, atque utroque pede solum attingens juxta DÆDALI statuariam artem: erectæ autem manus sedi innituntur hominis surgere volentis similitudinem exprimentes. — Cum vero solis radius statuam attingeret (id autem circa solis ortum evenire perhibent) tum vero supra modum admirabilis visa est. Tunc enim statuam loqui perhibent, ubi primum solis radius ad ejus os pervenit.

PHILOSTRATUS *Iconum*, lib. i.

Ipsæ autem MEMNON in nigrum transformatus est in Æthiopia lapidem, & figuram quidem sedentis: speciem vero illam puto, & solis radii statuam petunt. Sol enim MEMNONIS os veluti plectro percutiens, inde vocem elidere, loquacique sophismate invento diem solari videtur.

LUCIANI *Toxaris seu emicitia*.

MEMNONEM autem vocem edere exoriente sole.

LUCI-



LUCIANI *Philopseudes*.

Quum in Ægypto versarer adhuc adolescens, a parte videlicet doctrinæ gratia transmissus, cupiebam navigio profectus in Coptum, illinc adiens MEMNONEM, miraculum illud audire, eum videlicet sonum reddentem ad orientem solem. Illum igitur audiivi non hoc vulgari modo quo audiunt alii sonum quempiam inanem, sed mihi oracula etiam edidit MEMNON ipse aperto ore septem versibus; quod nisi esset supervacaneum, ipsos vobis versus recenserem.

TZETZES *Cbiliad*. vi. *Hist*. 64.

In patriam autem relatus, sepultus est domi.  
Et columna huic fuit rubri varii lapidis  
Fabrefacta, lætum autem die mittit cantum,  
Velut lætatus matris præsentia.  
Noctu autem flebile quoddam contra canit carmen.

DIONYSII *Periegesis*, v. 249.

Thebas priscas centum portas habentes, ubi resonans  
MEMNON exorientem suam salutat Auroram.

JUVENALIS *Sat*. 15.

Dimidio magicæ resonant ubi MEMNONE chordæ.

VANSLEB *relation d'un voyage d'Egypte*, p. 410. where he gives the following remark from *father* PORTAIS.

A UNE lieue deçà il y a une ancienne ville apellée *Habu*, ou l'on voit aussi plusieurs belles curiosités, & entre autres des momies. On y decouvre de fort loing 2 statues, l'une d'un homme, & l'autre d'une femme, les gens du pais appellent celle-la *Sciama* & celle-ci *Fama*: elles paroissent être pour les moins, aussi grandes que l'*Abulbon* ou le *Sphinx* qui est vis-à-vis du *Cayre*. Près de ce lieu il y a un village ou l'on decouvre du *Nil* deux statues, qui paroissent si nouvelles, qu'à les voir on diroit, que l'ouvrier vient de les achever.

XL PASSAGES FROM AUTHORS.

MAILLET *descript. de l'Egypte, lettre 8<sup>me</sup>, speaking of Thebes ;*

PERSONNE n'ignore que c'étoit dans cette ville que se voyoit cette celebre statue de MEMNON, dont il est tant parlé dans l'histoire. Quoiqu'il en soit, il ne reste pas plus de traces de ce Colosse que CAMBYSES fit, dit on, mettre en pièces.

*Memoires des Missions de la Compagnie de Jesus dans le Levant, tom. 5<sup>me</sup>.*

PLAN d'un ouvrage sur *l'Egypte* ancienne & moderne, par le Pere SICARD, chap. xi.

Au couchant du Nil.

3. LES deux Colosses, dont parle *Strabon*, chargez d'inscriptions *Grecques & Latines*.

4. RESTES du palais de MEMNON & sa statue colossale.

---

ESTAMPES.

PLAN des deux Colosses au couchant du palais de MEMNON, & de sa statue.

TOM. vii<sup>me</sup>.

DISCOURS sur *l'Egypte*, par le Père SICARD de la C. de J. Chap. vii.

THEBES.

---

Sans parler des temples de VENUS & de MEMNON, des galleries pleines de hieroglyphes, & des colonnes, il y a des choses que l'on peut dire être uniques dans le monde ; sçavoir les sepulchres des Rois de *Thebes*, & trois statues colossales, les deux premieres, dont a tant parlé STRABON, sont remplies d'une vingtaine d'inscriptions soit *Grecques* soit *Latines* : la troisième est la statue du Roi MEMNON, qui, selon la tradition des anciens *Egyptiens*, rendoit un son au lever du soleil.

---

# TRAVELS

IN

## EGYPT AND NUBIA.

---

### ANCIENT ALEXANDRIA<sup>a</sup>.

**T**HE ancient Alexandria has been subjected to so many revolutions, and so often ruined, that we should have at present some difficulty to find it, if the situation of its ports, and some antique monuments, did not direct us to its true place.

---

<sup>a</sup> Q. CURTIUS *relates*, "That ALEXANDER, in his return from Jupiter Ammon, when he came from the sea to the lake Mareotis, not far distant from the island Pharos, having observed the nature of the place, determined at first to build a new city in the island itself; but afterwards, when it appeared the island was not spacious enough for a great city, he chose the place where Alexandria now stands, which derives its appellation from the name of the founder. Having included all the ground that lay between the lake and the sea, he assigned for the walls a circuit of eighty *stadia*, that is, ten Roman miles." l. iv. cap. 8.

CÆSAR *gives the following account of Alexandria, as it was in his time*: "The Pharos is a tower exceeding high, and of wonderful structure, situated on an island; from which it took its name. This island, opposed to Alexandria, forms an harbour; but vast heaps of stones, fetched from the mountainous countries, having been thrown into the sea to the length of nine hundred paces, it is

B

Those

Those infallible guides will lead me to describe, in a kind of order, what I have been able to observe; I do not propose however to give a complete description, nor to write the entire history of the *rise* and *fall* of this great city. My only aim is, to communicate faithfully what I have seen and been able to remark, concerning the present state of the ancient and new city. The order that I shall observe, will be such as my memorandums will furnish me with; and if I do not explain myself sometimes with sufficient clearness, the *designs* that I have drawn upon the spot, will complete the idea, that the reader will have conceived by the relation I am going to give.

THE old and the new port at this time at Alexandria are what they called formerly the ports of Africa and

---

now joined by a narrow road and bridge to the town. In this island are habitations of Egyptians, and rows of houses that in extent resemble a town: and whatever ships, through ignorance, or by stress of weather, have turned a little out of their course; the inhabitants are wont to plunder them like pirates. Without *their* leave, *who* are in possession of Pharos, there can be no entrance for ships into the harbour, on account of the narrowness of the passage.

“ALEXANDRIA is almost secure from fire; because the buildings are without rafters and timber; and the several parts are held together by mortar and arches, and covered at top by rough stone or mosaic work.

“THE whole city almost is hollowed, and has subterraneous canals reaching to the Nile; by which water is conveyed into private houses, where by degrees it grows clear, and lets fall a sediment; this the owners of houses and their families are wont to make use of: for what is brought directly by the river Nile is so muddy and foul, that it occasions many and various diseases, but the common people are obliged to be content with it, because there is no fountain in the whole city.” Cap. ult. et Hirtii Com. de Bello Alex. c. i. et v.

F. VANSLEB mentions the diseases chiefly occasioned by the Nile water, to be a looseness and an itching over the whole body.

CÆSAR here places the distance of the island Pharos at nine hundred paces from the continent, allowing a little more for the extent of the bridge. All the ancient writers agree in assigning it pretty much the same distance, except HOMER; who describes it as being a whole day's sail from Egypt, even with a fair wind, *Odyss.* l. iv. ver. 354.

of

of Asia. The first is reserved for the Turks; the second is open to the Europeans. They differ the one from the other in this, that the old is much more neat, and has much deeper water than the new, where they are obliged to put, at certain distances, empty casks under the cables, that they might not be fretted and worn by the bottom, which is stony. But if this precaution preserves the cables, the vessels are still always exposed to the risque of being lost. The anchor not *holding* so well in this manner, a tempestuous wind easily loosens the vessel, which, when once it *drives*, is cast away even in the harbour, because it has not sufficient room, nor sufficient depth, to make its anchor hold again. A French vessel was lost in this manner, the year before my arrival at Alexandria.

THE entrance of the new port is defended by two castles, of a bad Turkish structure, and which have nothing remarkable but their situation; since they have succeeded edifices very renowned in history.

THAT which they call the Great Pharillon, has in the middle a little tower, the summit of which terminates in a lanthorn, that they light up every night; but which does not give much light, because the lamps

LUCAN has given the reason for this diversity, in a writer so correct as HOMER is in his geography, in the following lines;

Tunc claustrum pelagi cepit Pharon : insula quondam  
In *medio* stetit illa mari, sub tempore vatis  
Proteos : at nunc est Pellæis proxima muris.

And PLINY assigns the *natural* cause. “Nascuntur enim [scilicet *terræ*] nec fluminum tantum invecu, sicut Echinades insulæ ab Acheloo amne congestæ, majorque pars Ægypti a Nilo, in quam a Pharo insulâ noctis et diei cursum fuisse HOMERO credimus; sed et recessu maris, sicut eidem de Circeis.” l. ii. c. 85.

DR. POCOCKE observes, “That among the remains of Alexandria, the most extraordinary are those cisterns which were built under their houses, supported by two or three stories of arches on columns, in order to receive the Nile water by the canal, as they do at this day.” page 6.

are ill supplied. This castle has been built upon the island of Pharos, which it occupies so entirely, that if there are still some remains of that marvel of the world, that PTOLEMY had caused to be erected there, they continue concealed from the curious. It is the same with regard to the other castle, known under the name of the Little Pharillon. There are no foot-steps of the famous library<sup>b</sup>, which, in the time of the PTOLEMIES, was considered as the most beautiful that had ever been seen.

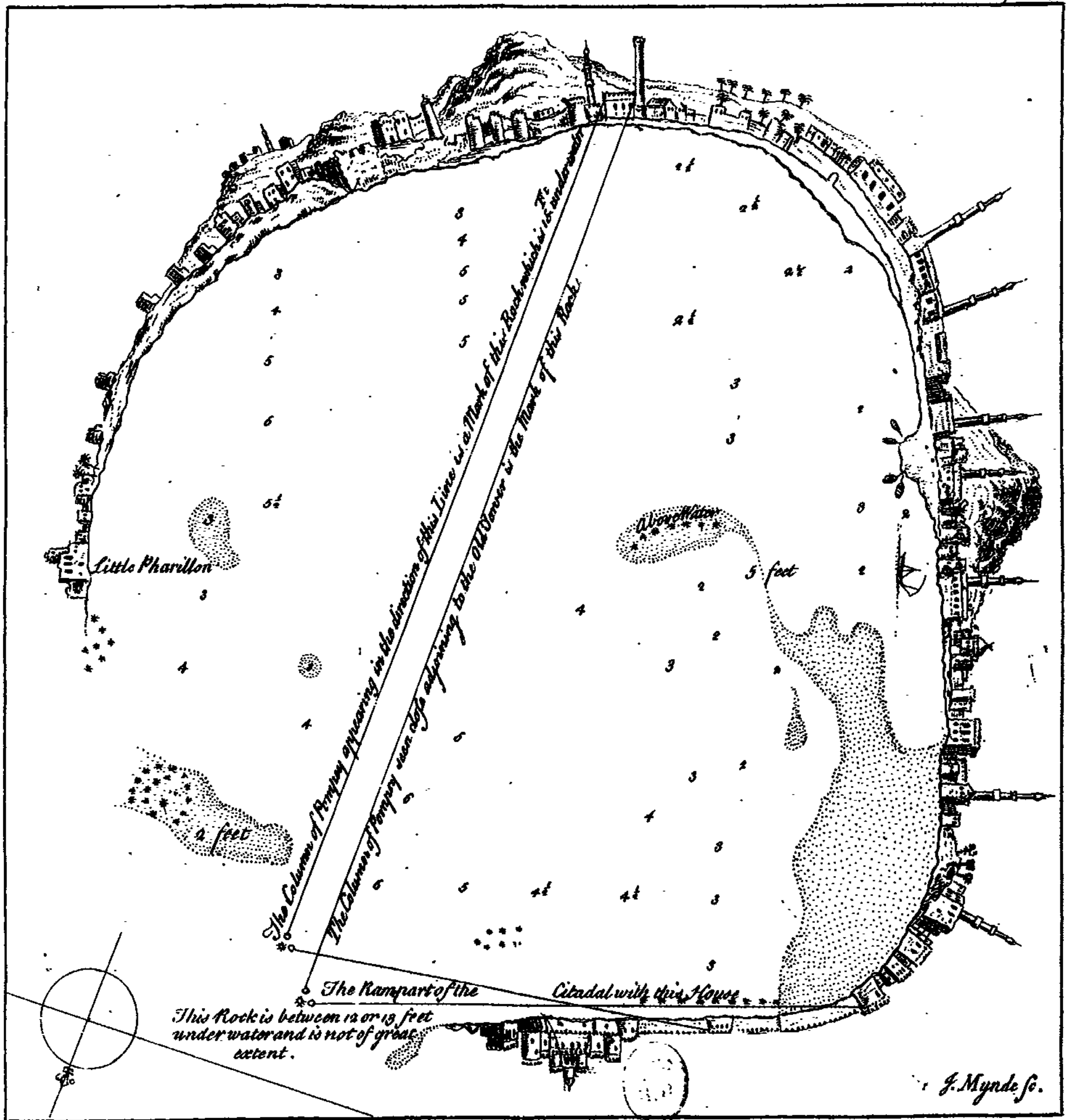
EACH of these two islands is joined to the *terra firma* by a mole. That of the island of Pharos is extremely long. It appeared to me to be three thousand feet in extent, and is made partly of bricks and partly of free-stone. It is vaulted through its whole length; its arches are in the gothic taste, and the water can pass underneath. It resembles in that the remains of the mole of Pouzzol, that they commonly give for CALIGULA's bridge. It is not credible that the Saracens or the Turks have been the inventors of it. If they have found there the ruins of an ancient mole, they have so disfigured them, in repairing them, that we observe not the least feature, that favours the elegant ages of antiquity.

THE mole, which gives passage to the Little Pharillon, has nothing particular but two zigzages, which,

---

<sup>b</sup> SENECA speaks of this library as consisting of four hundred thousand, and A. GELLIUS seven hundred thousand volumes: a number vastly superior, I believe, to that of any library now in the world! I know it will be said, that the volumes at that time were much smaller than they are now, since the invention of printing; but then it must be considered, on the other hand, that printing multiplies the same object by a variety of impressions, and it is the number of editions of the same book, that swells the bulk of our modern libraries. This noble library was unfortunately destroyed by CÆSAR, who being obliged, as PLUTARCH relates, to preserve himself by setting fire to the enemy's fleet, the flames spread from the dock to the great library, and devoured that illustrious monument of the good taste of the kings of Egypt.





*Chart & Plan of the New Port of Alexandria*  
*As the Figures mark the English Fathoms each Fathom of Six feet Royal English and*  
*shew the Depth of the Port*



in case of need, may serve for its defence. The Pharillons and their moles, one at the right, the other at the left of the port, conduct you insensibly to the shore; but it is proper to advertise, that precisely at the entrance of the port, you have to pass rocks, some of which are underneath, and others above the surface of the water. It is necessary to avoid them with care. For this purpose they take Turkish pilots, appointed for this business, and who come out to meet vessels at a distance from the port: you are then secure of arriving within the port, and of *riding* there with the other vessels, that are moored along the whole length of the great mole, as in the deepest place.

Nothing is more beautiful than to see, from thence, that mixture of antique and modern monuments, which, on whatever side you turn yourself, offer themselves to the view. When you have passed the Little Pharillon, you discover a row of great towers, joined one to another by the ruins of a thick wall. One single obelisk standing, has sufficient height to make itself remarked in a place, where the wall is fallen down. If you turn yourself a little further, you perceive that the towers appear again; but they present themselves only in a kind of distant view. The new Alexandria makes a figure afterwards with its minarets<sup>c</sup>; and above this town, but in a distant view, rises the column of Pompey, a most majestic monument. You discover likewise hills, that seem to consist of ashes, and some other towers. At length the view terminates in a great square building, that serves for a magazine of powder, and which joins the great mole.

AFTER having landed, we crossed the new town, and took the rout of the obelisk, where we did not arrive, till after having clambered over ruined walls,

---

<sup>c</sup> A KIND of tower, or steeple, placed near the Mahometan mosques. They maintain there cryers, who call the people to prayers, to supply the want of bells.

which give, through a tower of stone work, a free passage, quite to the foot of that antique monument; and no sooner have you approached it than you see, on one side, another, which has, long since, been obliged to give way, and is at present almost entirely buried.

THE obelisk which is standing, and which they still call the obelisk of CLEOPATRA, shews that it is the place, where the palace of that queen was, to which they gave likewise the name of CÆSAR's palace. There remains no other footstep of that magnificent building; which is the reason that I shall stop only to observe the obelisk.

THIS obelisk of CLEOPATRA is situated, almost in the middle, between the new city and the Little Pharillon. Its base, of which a part is buried under ground, is raised twenty feet above the level of the sea. Between this monument and the port, runs a thick wall, flanked, on each side of the obelisk, by a great tower; but this wall has been so ruined, that its height is almost equal to the base of the obelisk. The inside of the wall is but at ten feet distance from this monument; and the outside but at four or five paces from the sea. All the front of this wall, quite into the port, is full of an infinite quantity of ruins of columns, freezes, or other pieces of architecture, which have belonged to a magnificent edifice. They are of divers sorts of marble. I have perceived there some granite, and verd antique. Towards the country, the obelisk has behind it a very large plain, which has been so often raked into, that all the soil seems to have passed through a sieve. There grows only here and there a little grass; and even that is of so bad a substance, that it withers immediately. PLATE III.

As to the obelisk in itself, it is of a single piece of granite marble. It suffices to say, that there are only two of its four faces, which are well preserved; the two others are effaced, and you scarce see in them the hieroglyphics, with which they were anciently covered,

THE

THE obelisk that is thrown down appears to have been broken; but that which may be decyphered of its hieroglyphics gives one reason to judge, that it contained the same figures, and in the same order, as those of the obelisk which is standing.

THE reader will be surprized, without doubt, that the Roman emperors did not get that obelisk transported to Rome, rather than others which it was necessary to fetch from a great distance. But if one considers the two faces, which have been spoiled by the injury of time, it will be thought a sufficient reason for not taking it away; and this reason dispenses us from having recourse to any others.

SOME ancient authors have written, that these two obelisks were in their time in the palace of CLEOPATRA; but they do not tell us, who caused them to be placed there. It is probable, that these monuments are much more ancient than the city of Alexandria, and that they were brought from some place in Egypt, for the ornament of this palace. This conjecture has so much the more foundation, as it is known, that at the time of the foundation of Alexandria, they no longer made any of these monuments, covered with hieroglyphics, of which they had already long since lost both the knowledge and the use.

THE two sides of such hard stone, spoiled and effaced, shews the great difference there is between the climate of Alexandria, and that of all the rest of Egypt; for it is neither fire, nor a brutal hand, that has damaged these stones. One sees clearly, that it is only the injury of time, that has eaten some of the figures, and which has effaced some others, tho' they were very deeply engraven.

As the designs give exactly the contours of the figures, which cover the faces of this obelisk, I shall forbear entering into a larger detail. Thus, after having given all that I know, with regard to this monument, I quit it, to examine what is found at the foot

of the walls, and along the sea-shore, from the obelisk quite towards the Little Pharillon.

I HAVE already said, that in the front of the obelisk, we find a great quantity of divers sorts of marble, which appear to have been employed in some magnificent edifice. We easily judge, that they are the ruins of the palace, which was situated in the place where the obelisk is. It is only because they are in the sea, that they remain there. The access is too difficult to draw them from thence, and to carry them away. It has not been the same with regard to those, which, having fallen, continued upon the ground. They have carried a part of them away, to transport them elsewhere; and the rest has been employed in the new Alexandria. There is therefore no reason to be surprised, if, in the space we are going over, one finds no more ruins of such choice materials. In reality, one perceives there only works of brick burnt by the fire and very hard. They deserve, however, our attention, since they present themselves with an air of antiquity. Some vaulted canals, open and in part filled up; apartments half destroyed; whole walls thrown down, without the bricks being detached; all this proves that they are not works of a modern construction. Unfortunately, these ruins make so confused a chaos, that one cannot form to one's self a just idea of the edifices, which were in this quarter; all that one can imagine is, that these buildings belonged to the palace, and that they were employed in different uses, such as to serve for common sewers, private houses, guard-houses, and other like things.

CURIOSITY leads us no further on that side. There would still remain to be examined the Little Pharillon, but the garrison does not permit the entrance of it. We must therefore be satisfied with going to see what those great towers are, joined by such thick walls. One has no difficulty to conceive, that it is the inclosure of the ancient Alexandria. But of what age is this inclosure?

closure? This is a point on which one may venture to give one's sentiment, after having examined the object near, and after having well considered it.

THOSE towers, which form as it were bulwarks, are not all of an equal bigness, nor of the same figure, nor of the same construction. There are some of them round; others are square; others of an oval figure; and these last are sometimes cut by a strait line in one of their sides.

THEY differ, in like manner, in their inside. There are some that have a double wall, and at the entrance winding stairs that lead up to the top of the tower. Some offer nothing for a passage, but a hole in the vault, and through which it was necessary to pass by the assistance of a scaling-ladder. Generally speaking, the entrances of these towers are very small and very narrow, and look out upon the inside of the curtain, or wall of communication. Their different stories are formed by arches, supported sometimes by a column, sometimes by several; and there are even some, that are supported by a large post. The port-holes, that go all round these bulwarks, are narrow, but grow wider within. They resemble those which one sees in several ancient castles of England. One observes no wells in these towers; yet I doubt not but they had some: it is probable that they have been neglected, and filled up in length of time. All the towers are built of free-stone, and of a very massive architecture. In the lowest part we see, all round and at certain distances, shafts of columns of different sorts of marble, and they have been placed there in such a manner, that, when you see them from a distance, you take them for cannon guns, which come out of their port-holes. We perceive likewise, here and there, some square pieces of marble made use of; but all the body of the building, as I have already said, is formed of free-stones; and they are of a sandy kind, such as those of Portland, or of Bentheim.

THE



THE walls, which make the joining of the towers, and which, with them, have composed the circuit of the town, are not, throughout the whole, of the same breadth, nor of the same height, nor of the same construction. Some may be about twenty feet thick, whilst others are more or less. Their height reaches to thirty or forty feet. One cannot, however, be assured, by the mere view of these ruins, that all the inclosure of the town has been built in the manner that I have remarked, in speaking of the wall near the obelisk; but it had, on the inside, a walk, almost in the same taste, as that which we see in the inclosure of the palace of AURELIAN at Rome.

THERE remains nothing more for me to mention, with regard to this inclosure, but that the towers as well as the walls, at least those that are to be seen, are all very much damaged, and in several places entirely ruined. After that, the only point is to know, if, from what hath been just now observed, and from what history informs us, we may decide, whether this inclosure is of the time of the first foundation of Alexandria, or at what time it might have been made.

If we are to credit history, and what that tells us of the grandeur of the ancient Alexandria, it would be very difficult for us to limit it to an inclosure of so little extent. But without engaging ourselves in what one wishes it might have been, we may better confine ourselves to consider what remains of that famous city.

ONE perceives at first a very massive architecture, and such as it was proper it should be to sustain the shocks of battering-rams. But that may be the work of any age. Let us apply ourselves therefore to particulars, which may be able to make us perceive the difference between one age and another; and, in this case, one can scarce take advantage of any thing but the columns, which support the arches on the inside, and of the shafts  
of

of columns that shew themselves without. The columns have capitals, which manifestly do not appear to be of the age of ALEXANDER. The taste of them is too much Saracen, to carry back their origin so high. But, it will be said, an arch fallen, and repaired by the Saracens, might have produced the same effect. There remains therefore nothing but the shafts of the columns of different marbles, which shew, that the work is neither of the first foundation of the city, nor of the time of the PTOLEMIES, nor of that of the Romans. There are none but Barbarians, that could have made so odd an use of pieces of a material so precious in Egypt, as is the foreign marble. These columns have been, without doubt, drawn out of the ruins of Alexandria : and perhaps even out of the palace of CLEOPATRA ; for if they had been brought from Memphis, such as they are, we should have discerned hieroglyphics on them ; but we perceive neither hieroglyphics on these columns, nor on the square pieces of marble, made use of up and down. Let us conclude, therefore, that this inclosure was not made, till the Saracens, after having ruined Alexandria, found themselves obliged to fortify themselves there, in order to make advantage of its ports ; and that of all the ground of the ancient city, they included only so much of it as was then necessary to them, for their defence, and for the security of their commerce.

AFTER having made the tour of the ancient city, it is proper to see what is contained within its inclosure ; where we find scarce any thing at present but ruins and rubbish, excepting a very small number of mosques, churches, gardens, and some cisterns, which may be considered as entire, since they are still tolerably well kept up, in order to furnish water to the new city.

WE know so well at present the obelisk of CLEOPATRA, and its situation, that it is commodious to set out from thence, in order to proceed to observe the churches of St. MARK and St. CATHARINE, which  
are



are nearest to it. These two Churches belong to the Christians, and are at present served by Greek priests, and by Coptic priests. In other respects, they resemble each other so much, that one single description will suffice for both. They have nothing which claims our regard, but the name of *church* which they bear; and they are so dark, so dirty, and so full of lamps, that one should take them rather for pagodes<sup>d</sup>, than for temples, where the true God is adored.

THAT of St. MARK has nothing particular but an old chair of wood, which they pass off, if I remember well, for that of the Evangelist, whose name the church bears. I do not however ascertain the fact, because I did not take notice of it sufficiently, to recollect it with certainty<sup>e</sup>. That which I can warrant is, that the holy Evangelist is infinitely better lodged in his church at Venice, than in that of Alexandria.

IN the Church of St. CATHARINE, they shew, with great veneration, a piece of a column, upon which they pretend that this saint had her head cut off; and some red spots they shew you, which, they say, are drops of her blood.

IN the neighbourhood of this church one meets with the bank of St. CATHARINE, which is a little hill formed out of the ruins of the town. There is also another of the same kind and of the same bigness. Both have been dug up and turned so often, that they are properly nothing but a heap of dust. In order to find there any thing, you must go after rain; the running of the water leaves then bare some graven stones, or other little things, which have escaped the view of those that have raked into them before, or which have been rejected, as little worthy of their attention. The Saracens have acted in the same manner here, as the

---

<sup>d</sup> THE word *pagode* is used for an idolatrous temple, as well as for the idol itself.

<sup>e</sup> DR. POCCOCKE mentions it likewise as the patriarchal chair.

Goths and Vandals at Rome. They have picked out the stone from the ring with a sharp pointed iron ; have taken the gold, and thrown away the stone, which one finds commonly damaged by this violence. It is rare to discover there at present any thing curious. I have seen an infinite number of these stones ; I have even purchased some, without being able to say, that I have acquired so much as one that is well cut.

BEFORE I got out of the town, I cast my eye upon some shafts of columns of granite marble, which are still standing, here and there, upon the road that leads to the gate of Rosetto. There may be about half a dozen of them ; but they inform us nothing, except that all this long street must have had, on each side, porticos for walking, near the houses, under shelter. What remains of them gives one reason to judge, that they were all of the same bigness ; but it is not so easy to decide, whether they were of any order of architecture, or made in the Egyptian taste. They are sunk one third into the ground ; and have all lost their capitals. They have their surface smooth, and the circumference larger towards the bottom than towards the top. This is all that I have remarked in them ; but it is not enough to found any reasonable conjecture. However, I could not avoid speaking of them, because they have certainly a right to hold a place amongst the antiquities, which subsist at Alexandria.

AFTER having pursued the road, which leads to the gate of Rosetto, I passed that gate, to go to the fine column, commonly called the column of POMPEY. It is placed upon an eminence, from whence we have two beautiful views ; the one looking upon Alexandria ; the other upon the flat country, that extends itself along the Nile, and that surrounds the calish, or canal, dug beyond the gate of Rosetto, for conveying the water of the Nile to Alexandria. But I shall speak more of this canal hereafter : let us con-  
fine

fine ourselves at present to the column of POMPEY.  
PLATE III.

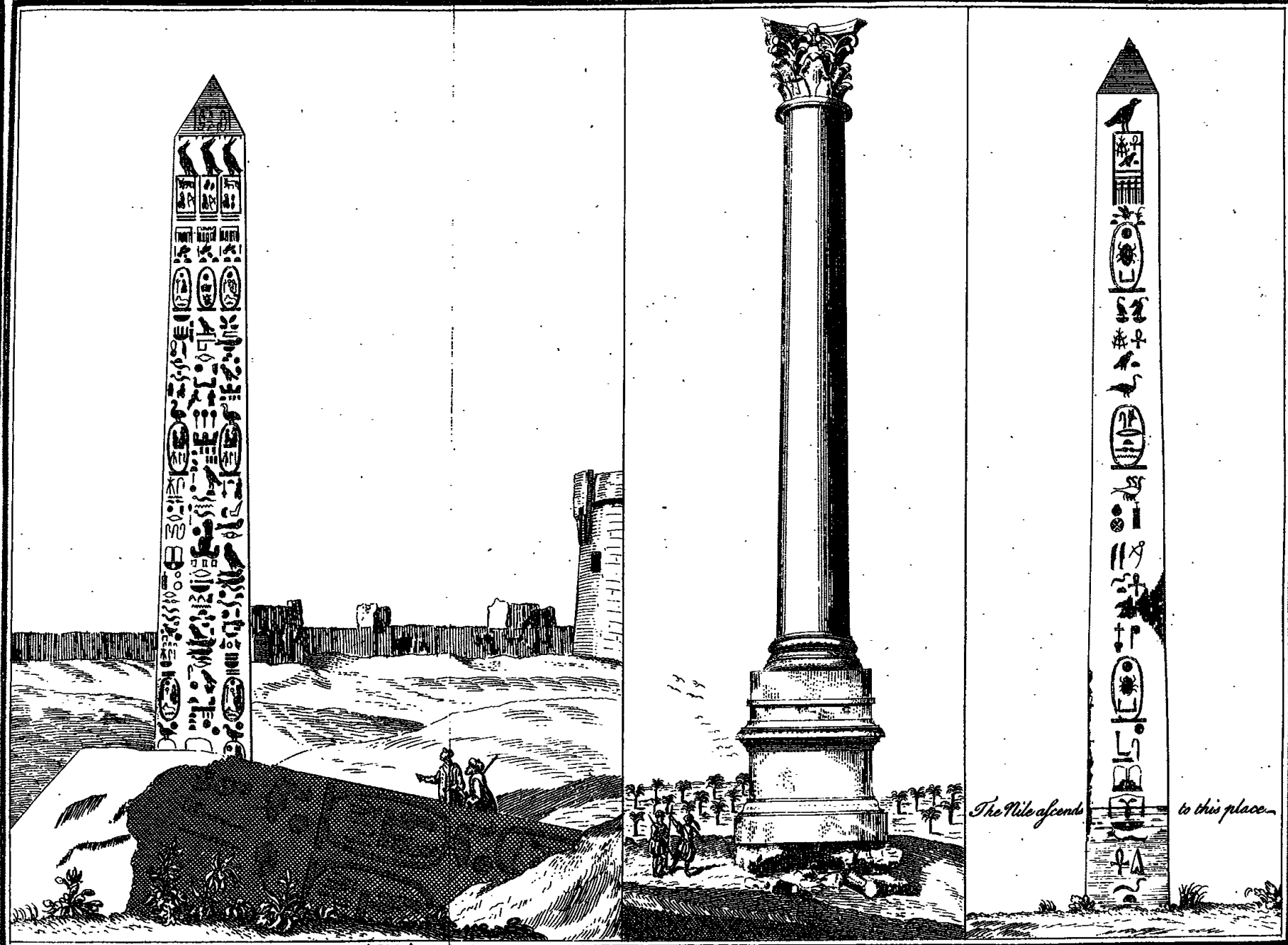
THIS column should not be styled, properly speaking, an Egyptian monument, tho' the materials, of which it is made, have been drawn from the quarries of that country. It is apparently the greatest and the most magnificent column that the Corinthian order has produced. If the reader will cast his eyes upon the *design* that I give of it, there will remain for me very little to say concerning this superb monument. Every one is able to judge of it himself; especially when I shall mention, that the shaft is of one single piece of granite marble; that the capital is of another piece of marble; and the pedestal of a greyish stone, resembling the flint stone, for the hardness and grain. With regard to the dimensions, they are marked upon the plate, which gives the *design* of this column<sup>f</sup>.

---

<sup>f</sup> *The dimensions of this pillar not being given upon the plate, I shall supply them from Dr. POCOCKE.*

THE pillar, commonly called POMPEY'S pillar, is situated on a small height, about a quarter of a mile to the south of the walls, and may be supposed to have been erected after STRABO'S time, as he makes no mention of such an extraordinary monument: It might be set up either in honour of TITUS, or ADRIAN, who were in Egypt. Near it are some fragments of granite pillars, four feet diameter; and it appears plainly, from many old foundations, that there has been some magnificent building there, in the area of which, it is probable, this pillar was erected; and some Arabian historians (on what authority I know not) call it the palace of JULIUS CÆSAR. This famous pillar is of red granite. Besides the foundation, it consists of three stones; the capital, which is judged to be about eight or nine feet deep, is of the Corinthian order, the leaves being perfectly plain, and not the least indented, and seem to be the plain laurel or bay leaf. Some sailors have found means to get to the top, which has a hole in it, from which it is judged that there was a statue fixed on the top of the pillar; the shaft of the pillar, taking in the upper torus of the base, is of one stone, the remainder of the base and pedestal of another, and all is raised on a foundation built of several stones, in the nature of two plinths, of two tier of stone, the lower setting out four inches beyond the upper, as that sets out a foot beyond the plinth that is over it. This foundation is four feet nine inches high, and the

WITH



The Obelisk of Cleopatra  
An Obelisk thrown down; half buried

The Column of Pompey. The Obelisk of Matara.  
J. Mynde sc.

WITH regard to the foundation on which the pedestal and the column rest, it is open on one side. An Arab, it is said, having dug under this foundation, placed there a box of gun-powder, in order to blow up the column and to make himself master of the treasures, which he imagined to be buried underneath. Unhappily for him, he was not a good miner. His enterprize miscarried. The mine blew up, and dis-

---

pedestal, and part of the base, which is of one stone, are twelve feet and a half high. I found the whole height, by the shadow, to be one hundred and fourteen feet, which agrees pretty nearly with the account some authors have given; so that taking out the above measures, and half a foot for the upper torus, the height of the shaft is eighty eight feet nine inches, that is, about ten diameters of the column, for I found the diameter of it to be about nine feet; the die of the pedestal is twelve feet two inches square, and the plinth is two feet wider. I observed the swell in the pillar, and that it leans a little to the south west. The pillar is well preserved, except that it has scaled away a very little to the south, and more to the north east; the face of the foundation is represented in the draught of the pillar, as it is to the west south west, where some of the stones have been taken away, so as to shew the middle stone, which has been so much talked of, as if the pillar rested on that alone; whereas the work remains all round, on which the pillar is raised; and yet it is indeed probable that the main weight of the pillar does rest on this stone, which on that side is about four feet wide, and appeared to me to be a mixture of alabaster, and flints of a great variety of colours, and has hieroglyphics on it. When I returned a second time to Alexandria, this part was repaired in such a manner, that the lower plinth is made a seat for people to sit on; and so it is no more to be seen in its ancient state." vol. i. p. 8.

DR. SHAW observes, "That the foliage of the capital is badly executed. A great part of the foundation, which is made up of several different pieces of stone and marble, hath been removed, in expectation, as may be supposed, of finding a treasure. At present therefore the whole fabrick seems to rest intirely upon a block of white marble, scarce two yards square, which, upon being touched with a key, gives a sound like a bell. Some of the broken pieces of marble are inscribed with hieroglyphics; a circumstance which may induce us to suspect, that this pillar was not erected by the Egyptians, but by the Greeks or Romans; nay, later perhaps than STRABO, who, otherwise, it may be presumed, would not have omitted the description of it." p. 338.

ranged only four stones, which made part of the foundation, of which the three other sides remained intire. The only good, which resulted from it, was, that the curious were afterwards able to see what stones had been employed in this foundation. I have observed there a piece of white oriental marble, quite full of hieroglyphics, so well preserved, that it has been easy for me to draw them exactly. Another large piece, which is removed from its place, and which, notwithstanding, lies bare, is of Sicilian marble, yellowish and spotted with red: This has equally its hieroglyphics, but so damaged, that I have not been able to draw any thing from it. A piece of a little column had likewise served for this foundation, as well as some other pieces of marble, that have nothing remarkable.

I HAVE already said, that the damage has been only on one side. That which has been taken away of the foundation leaves at most a void of three feet, underneath the pedestal; and the middle, as well as the three other sides, continue in their original solidity. PAUL LUCAS, however, who has not been content with giving us a drawing that is not exact of this column, represents it to us as resting only upon a single stone in the middle. In the main one may pass over this fault, as well as so many others; but that a consul general<sup>e</sup>, who has resided sixteen years at Cairo, who pretends to have seen better than any other traveller, and who has been long enough at Alexandria, to be able to examine this column, should have contented himself with copying the drawing that he found in PAUL LUCAS, is a matter inconceivable. Perhaps he had reasons of policy for acting in this manner. He formed the project of transporting this column to France; and representing it as resting only upon a single stone, it appeared so much the more easy to re-

---

<sup>e</sup> Monsieur DE MAILLET.

move,



move, and to put on board a vessel. I will own, however, that what they say of it, both the one and the other, is more exact than the drawing which they give.

AFTER having considered the column of POMPEY, and the other objects of which I have made mention, nothing offers itself to the sight but an open country. I am told, however, that there are in the neighbourhood *catacombs*, and that a quarter of a league's travelling brings us thither. That was enough to engage me to take this journey. We arrived very soon at the place designed; we entered; and found a long subterraneous walk, which has nothing particular. It resembles, for its breadth, the catacombs of Naples. It was not worth our while to stop here any longer. We took therefore the rout of the calisch, or canal of CLEOPATRA, which furnishes fresh water to Alexandria, throughout the whole year.

UPON our descending the hill, we entered into a plain, quite covered with bushes that bear nothing but capers; and advancing further, we got into a wood, or forest of date trees. Their fruitfulness shews, that they receive benefit from the neighbourhood of the calisch, whose waters are carried to them by some watering canals, that are made by art between the trees. We crossed this wood, and came at length to the calisch.

THE borders of this canal are covered with different sorts of trees, and peopled by divers flying-camps of Bedouins, or wandering Arabs. They are there to

---

§ DR. POCOCKE observes, "That to the west, beyond the canal of Canopus, and near a sheik's burial place, are some catacombs; they consist of several apartments cut in the rock, on each side of an open gallery: on both sides of these apartments are three stories of holes, big enough to deposit the bodies in.—The most extraordinary catacombs are towards the further end, and may be reckoned amongst the finest that have been discovered, being beautiful rooms cut out of a rock, and niches in many of them, so as to deposite the bodies in, adorned with a sort of doric pilasters on each side." vol. i. p. 9.



feed their flocks, by which they maintain themselves in food, but live in other respects in great poverty. They would be very glad of being more at their ease; and I have not forgot, that one day, as I went out early at the gate of Rosetto, twenty of them had a great desire to rob me; and they would have put their design into execution, if a janissary, that attended me, had not hindered them. These Arabs resemble swallows; as long as they enjoy, in one place, fine weather and abundance, they continue there; but as soon as a scarcity of provisions comes, they change their habitation, and go to seek more fertile places. It is to these changes of abode, as well as to their poverty, that they owe the liberty they enjoy. It would be very difficult for them to preserve that liberty, if they had more substance than they have.

THE calisch, as history informs us, was made to facilitate commerce, and to carry goods from Cairo to Alexandria, without exposing them to pass the Bogas, or mouth of the Nile, because they would run a risk of being lost. They found by it likewise another advantage in this, that the city of Alexandria, being destitute of fresh water, might be abundantly provided with it, by means of this canal. At present, it is not in a condition to answer all these purposes: Being merely an hollow in the ground, without being supported by any lining of stone work, it has by degrees been filled up. The decay of commerce, and the ruin of the country, no longer permit the inhabitants to furnish the expence, that would be requisite every year, to keep this canal in the necessary repairs. It resembles at present a ditch ill kept up; and there runs in it scarce water enough to supply the reservoirs for the consumption of the new Alexandria. I passed it without being wet-shod in the month of June. There is however one place in it lined with walls; it is where the aqueduct begins, which you can trace the whole length

length of the plain, and even quite to Alexandria. For though it be under ground, the vent holes that it has, at certain distances, shew sufficiently the rout that it takes, in order to discharge itself into the reservoirs or cisterns, which are found only in what we have observed to be the ancient city. At the time when that city subsisted, all the ground that it occupied was made hollow for reservoirs, the greatest part of which are at present filled up. There remain of them no more than half a dozen; and indeed they are not well taken care of.

It would be superfluous to undertake to give here the description of one of these reservoirs<sup>h</sup>. I shall only advertise one thing, which is, that all the arches appear to be made of bricks, and covered with a matter impenetrable by water. This matter is precisely the same as that with which the walls and reservoirs are covered, that one sees at Baiæ and at Rome, in the baths of divers Emperors.

THE greatest part of the columns, that support the arches of these reservoirs, are of different sorts, and most of them in a Gothic taste, or rather in a Saracen. It is not conceivable, that they have been placed in such a manner from the beginning. An entire destruction has occasioned, without doubt, that some have taken the places of others. They have repaired the reservoirs that were the least ruined, and for that pur-

---

<sup>h</sup> "The canal of Canopus comes to the walls near POMPEY's pillar, having run to the west of it: it has a passage under the walls, and from that part a fossée has been cut along the outside of the walls to the sea; but the water is not only conveyed to the cisterns from the canal, as it there enters the city, but also before, from several parts of the canal, by passages under ground to the higher parts of the city. There are entrances down to these passages in several parts, in order to clean them: the cisterns also must be cleansed; and the descent down to them is by round wells, in which there are holes on each side, at about two feet distance, to put the feet in to descend by; they draw up the water by a windlass, and carry it in leather bags on camels to the houses." p. 6.

pose would make use of what cost the least to employ in the work. We may judge from thence in what manner the rest must have been treated.

Of all the reservoirs, which are made use of at present, that which is near the gate of Rosetto preserves the longest its water, probably because it lies lower than the rest. When any of these are empty, they take care to clean them against the time of the increase of the Nile; for it must be observed, that these reservoirs cannot empty themselves. They are made to receive water and to retain it, and not to let it run off. They are emptied by means of pumps with chains, or ropes of pitchers; and when they would convey water to the new town, they fill bags of goat skins with water, and load the backs of camels or asses. The necessity they are under of emptying, by dint of labour, these reservoirs, shews the reason, why they have filled up so great a number of them. The consumption not being so great in the new town, as it was in the ancient, the water would have become corrupted, and would have infallibly caused diseases by its noxious smell. Besides that there was no way of supporting the expence, which would have been necessary to cleanse them every year; if they had stopped up the canals of the aqueduct, that convey the water, they would have been in danger of making a general sink. In fine, they remedied another inconvenience; the greatest part of the reservoirs being half ruined, it was better to fill them up, than to be exposed to the accidents, that the keeping of them up might have occasioned, from day to day. This is all that I am able to say, concerning the reservoirs of Alexandria. The *designs*, and the measures with which they are accompanied, will give the reader a compleat idea of them.

THERE remains nothing else to observe in the inclosure of the ancient Alexandria, but the gate of Rosetto, and another gate, through which you go  
from

from the old town to enter into the new, after having gone across the great square of the former. These two gates are built in the same taste with the rest of the inclosure. That of Rosetto has some little towers at each angle; the other, which is near a great bastion, has but a plain opening in the wall. The folding doors of the gate are of wood, and are covered with plates of iron, extremely rusted.

As it is better to finish all we have to say concerning the antiques, before we pass to the modern, it is proper to take a turn towards the old port, on the border of which we shall find remains of antiquity, belonging to the ancient Alexandria, or at least to its suburbs.

THE old port, otherwise called the port of Africa, has on one side the Great Pharillon, which defends it, as it makes likewise the defence of the new port. Opposite the Great Pharillon, and upon the neck of land which forms the old port, there is another little castle, for the security of the same port on that side; and in front a part of the new town joins itself to the old. It is from this place we set out, to go and examine some remains of antiquity, which consist of sepulchral grots, subterraneous temples, little harbours, or baths, &c.

THE sepulchral grots begin from the place, where the ruins of the old city terminate, and they run to a great distance along the border of the sea. They are all dug in the rock; sometimes one over another, sometimes one aside of another, according as the situation of the ground has permitted. Avarice, or the hope of finding something there, has caused them all to be opened. I have not seen a single one shut up; and have absolutely found nothing within them. It is easy to judge, by their shape, and by their great number, of the use, for which they were designed. We may say, that in general they have only a sufficient breadth to contain two dead bodies, one lying

by another. Their length exceeds but very little that of a man; and they have more or less height, according to the disposition of the rock. The greatest part have been opened by violence; and that which remains of them intire is not ornamented either with sculpture or painting.

WHAT we have mentioned is too barren a spot, to continue there any longer. It is better to cast our eyes on those little hollow places of the shore, which they made use of for agreeable retreats; where they diverted themselves with enjoying the cool air; and from whence, without being seen, but when they chose it, they saw every thing that passed in the port<sup>i</sup>.

<sup>i</sup> As HOMER travelled into Egypt, it is highly probable that he took the idea of PROTEUS's cave from these retirements in rocks, which he saw; and that all his images were drawn from natural views.

Ἡμος δ' ἦλθε μέσσην ἔσανδ' ἀμφιβέηκει,  
 Τῆμος δ' ἔξ' αἰὸς εἶσι γέγων' ἄλιον ηἰμαίνετο,  
 Πρωτὴν ὑπὸ Ζεφύροισι, μελαίνῃ φρενὶ καλυφθεῖς,  
 Ἐκ δ' ἰλθαὶ κοιμάσθ' ὑπὸ σείσωι γλαφυροῖσιν. *Odys.* l. iv. v. 400.

Instead of which Mr. POPE represents PROTEUS as *basking* on the shore.

"When thro' the zone of heav'n the mounted sun  
 Hath journey'd half, and half remains to run,  
 The seer, while Zephyrs curl the swelling deep,  
*Basks on the breezy shore*, in grateful sleep,  
 His oozy limbs."

Which gross error in Mr. POPE is the more to be wondered at, since VIRGIL might have led him into the true meaning, by having given an account of PROTEUS, which he copied from HOMER;

*Ipsa ego te, medios cum Sol accenderit æstus,  
 Cum sitiunt herbæ, et pecori jam gratior umbra est,  
 In secreta senis ducam, quo fessus ab undis  
 Se recepit;* *Georgic.* l. iv. ver. 401.

*Est specus ingens  
 Exest latere in montis, quo plurima vento  
 Cogitur, inque sinus scindit sese unda reductos.* ver. 418.

"I will myself conduct to thee on thy way,  
 When next the southing Sun inflames the day:

Some



Some rocks, that jut out, furnished a charming situation; and natural grottos, which those rocks had made, gave the opportunity of forming there, with the assistance of the chissel, real places of pleasure. In effect, we find entire apartments made in this manner; and benches, contrived in the rock, afford seats where you may be secured from the wet; and where you may bathe in the water of the sea, which occupies all the bottom of the grotto. On the outside, they had little harbours, at which they arrived in boats, that were there sheltered from all sorts of winds. If they would enjoy the view of the port, they easily found upon the rock, without the grotto, some place that was shaded from the heat of the sun. All these agreeable retreats, which are in great number, have however no other ornament. The places, where the chissel has passed, are smooth; but the rest has the natural shape of the rock.

At thirty or forty paces from the border of the sea, and opposite the point of the peninsula, which forms the port, we find a subterraneous monument, to which they commonly give the name of a temple. The only entrance is by a little opening, upon the descent of the eminence which makes the boundary of the port on that side. We entered it, lighted by flambeaux, and we were obliged to walk stooping in a very low passage, which, at the end of twenty paces, introduced us into a hall, pretty large and square. The top is a smooth cieling, and the four sides and the bottom are full of sand, as well as of the excrements of bats, and other animals that retreat thither.

---

“ When the dry herbage thirsts for dews in vain,  
 “ And sheep in shades, avoid the parching plain.  
 “ Then will I lead thee to his *secret* seat;  
 “ When weary with his toil, and scorch’d with heat,  
 “ The wayward seer frequents his cool retreat.”

DRYDEN.



WE are not yet, properly speaking, arrived at the temple. As soon as we have passed another alley, we meet with something more beautiful. We find a souterrain of a round figure, the top of which is cut in form of an arch; it has four gates, one opposite to another; each of which is adorned with an architrave, a cornish, and a pediment with a crescent on the top. One of these gates serves for an entrance; the others form each a kind of niche, much lower than the souterrain, and which contains only a chest, hewed out of the rock in hollowing in it, and sufficiently large to contain a dead body.

THIS description, as well as the plan and the section of the souterrain, will enable the reader to judge, that what is given out, in the country, for a temple, must have been the tomb of some great lord, or perhaps even of a king. However, as there is neither inscription nor sculpture, that can let us know to what purpose this edifice has served, I leave it to every one to assign the use for which it was destined. I shall only remark, that the gallery, which continues beyond this pretended temple, seems to shew, that there are further on other edifices of this nature. The common opinion likewise is, that there are, in the neighbourhood, other like souterrains; but they are not known: probably because the entrance into them is so well closed, that it could never be discovered; or because, after having opened them, they have been so neglected, that the hole has been stopped up by the sand; and the same thing will happen, according to all appearance, to that, of which I have been speaking, since the entrance becomes daily smaller, and the alley lower. I think myself happy, however, in having seen enough of it, to give a just idea, and to preserve the memory of it.

IN mounting up the same rock, one meets with great fosses, of which they know not either the destination, or the time in which they were dug. They are cut per-

perpendicularly from the surface downwards, and may have forty feet of depth upon fifty of length, and twenty of breadth. Their sides are very even; but the bottom is so filled with sand, that one can scarce discover the *upper part* of a canal, which must, one would think, have led to some subterraneous place. It is well known, without my mentioning it, that it is not in the power of a traveller to get such places cleansed, in order to satisfy his curiosity. Whoever knows the country, cannot require of us so hazardous an attempt; and those who, without having seen any thing, imagine that we may do every thing that seems practicable to them, need only travel in Egypt, to be convinced, that it is more easy to judge than to act as one would.

We should now pass to the description of the new Alexandria; but before I quit the ancient, I have still many things to say, and reflections to make, with regard to it. It is not sufficient to have made the tour of this ancient city, to have gone out of its inclosure to see the column of POMPEY, to have entered into the catacombs, which are in the neighbourhood, to have seen the canal of CLEOPATRA, to have gone over the borders of the old port, and the adjoining ground, which had appeared to deserve our examination; there is always something omitted upon such occasions, and sometimes we leave too much to be supplied by the imagination. It would seem, for example, in reading the description, that I have given of the inclosure of the old city, that one may trace it all round, without finding any interruption. It is however certain, that there are spaces, where there remain neither bulwarks, nor walls. To have a just idea of the condition of the ground, which was occupied by the ancient city, there is something else to be observed besides the antiquities, which subsist. The modern edifices themselves, the bank of St. CATHERINE, and the neighbouring

bouring plain of the obelisk, together with the antiquities, do not fill entirely the whole space. It is proper to add, that the rest differs scarce at all from the soil, which is near the obelisk; that the whole has been turned up and raked into; that what was valuable has been carried away; and that if there is yet any thing, which is worth the labour, it must be searched for very deep in the earth, or in the reservoirs that have been choaked up.

ON the other hand, some questions naturally present themselves, that deserve an answer: "From whence did they draw, will it be said, that enormous quantity of marble and of granite, which were employed in the building of the first Alexandria; and what is become of it all, since the destruction of that great city?" If I do not undertake to give a positive answer to these enquiries, I shall venture at least conjectures, which may carry some shew of reason with them.

EVERY one, I believe, will agree with me, that it would have been absurd to have fetched from a distance, what they had, in some measure, ready to their hands; and that if they had attempted it, they would never have been able to carry this city to that height of magnificence, wherein it was seen even from its first foundation, or a little time after, under the PTOLEMIES. It is therefore natural to suppose, that the first Alexandria derived its greatest lustre from the destruction of Memphis; and this reason is so much the more probable, as there is absolutely requisite a place for conveying the ruins of that great city, of which there have remained scarce any the slightest foot-steps, capable of marking out the place where it was. It is necessary, however, to remove some objections that offer themselves.

It will be said, That it is not conceivable, that ALEXANDER, so generous a warrior, should have been inclined to destroy a city so magnificent as Memphis, in order to build another with his own name.

Neither

Neither is it what I mean. I would not load the memory of ALEXANDER more than that of the Popes, who have made no difficulty of permitting the destruction of a part of the antiquities of Rome, in order to build superb palaces for their own families.

MEMPHIS, they will add, without doubt, subsisted still in the time of ALEXANDER, and under the PTOLEMIES. I agree it did. But in what manner did it subsist? Pretty much as the ancient Alexandria subsists in our time; or at the most, as it subsisted in the time of the Saracens. Is it in reality to be believed, that the Persians have shewn more favour to Memphis, than to the other cities of Egypt? Would those, who exterminated the gods, have spared the temples? When ALEXANDER entered into Egypt, was not the splendor of religion eclipsed in Memphis? The principal priests had retired into deserts, and CAMBYSES had carried away the idols. We may conceive from thence, the condition of the temples, that were no longer frequented, that were abhorred by the Persians, and that they employed to the vilest of uses. In this case, ALEXANDER and his successors might very well take from them, without being sacrilegious, and without drawing on themselves the hatred of the people, who must see, even with pleasure, that the materials of their ruined temples were employed in edifices, where the worship of their ancient gods would be re-established.

THIS great objection being thus removed, we have only to examine how they were able to transport that immense quantity of materials. But did not the Nile, and the canal of CLEOPATRA, afford very easy conveyances? It will be said, Was the canal there at that time? There is no doubt of it. They could not form the project of building a town in such a place, without thinking at first of a canal. The place was unprovided of fresh water, and there was no means of procuring it any, but by deriving it from the Nile, beyond

beyond the Rosetto, where the canal commences; for the water of that river, mixed with the water of the sea, at its mouth, is not drinkable; and to go and fetch it by sea would have required at least two days voyage; one for the going, the other for returning. Besides, there was no means of making use of great flat-bottom vessels, capable of containing a great deal of water; because they would not have been proper to pass the sea; and, on the other hand, less vessels, that would have drawn more water, would not have found sufficient depth at the mouth of the Nile. There was then an absolute necessity of beginning by the canal, and this canal must be navigable; for if they had merely in view to furnish the town with water, they would have been content with making an aqueduct of stone work. But they dug a canal; and at this canal commenced the aqueduct, which carried water to the town; whilst the canal itself took its rout towards the sea, where it emptied itself in the neighbourhood of Alexandria. The name of CLEOPATRA, which it preserves still at present, is not a reason for confining ourselves, with regard to the time when it was first dug. A repair, made by a queen so famous, some diversion that she might have taken there, or a feast that she had given, might easily have occasioned that name. However, the necessity of a canal being incontestible, it is for me a certain guide; and I adhere to that, without troubling myself to search for other reasons, than those that have been alledged.

HOWEVER certain this proof may appear, yet there is still a difficulty offers itself, capable of disranging our whole system, if there was no means of removing it. How comes it to pass, it will be said, if the ruins of Memphis have served for the building of the first Alexandria, that we find not, except upon the obelisk, and upon the stones, which form the foundation of the column of POMPEY, any of the figures, with which every column, and every piece of marble, brought



brought from Memphis, must have been covered, or adorned? It is easily seen, that I mean hieroglyphics; for it is certain that, excepting those of the obelisk, and of the foundation of the column of POMPEY, we perceive not any at Alexandria: some pieces of granite, broken, and drawn out of the foundations of some ancient edifice, are of no weight and consequence in the affair. It is certain, that the ruins that are found in the sea, over against the obelisk, and that I conjectured to have belonged to the palace of CLEOPATRA, have no hieroglyphics: the shafts of pillars, and the pieces of marble employed in the bulwarks, have not any neither. It is proper, therefore, to search for some way of reconciling this contradiction, and to give a good account of the affair, in order to render our proof acceptable; this is what I shall attempt to execute.

AT the time of ALEXANDER, and under his successors, the taste of Egyptian architecture was no longer in vogue. Greece, though she had drawn from Egypt the first principles of that art, had substituted there an architecture much more light, and adorned in a quite different manner. The Greeks, not having the immense riches of the Egyptians, nor, like them, abundance of materials, nor multitudes of workmen, renounced that solid architecture. They even considered it afterwards as defective, and producing nothing but heavy piles of building, and without taste. They fixed rules for the different orders of architecture, and they carried them so far, that they came even to think themselves the first inventors of that art.

ALEXANDER, imbued in his youth with the principles of his country, disdained to adopt those of a kingdom he had subdued; and besides, it would not have redounded to his honour to raise there buildings which would have been inferior to the least of those, that had been preserved in the country. It will therefore  
be



be easily admitted, that all the temples and all the palaces, which this prince or his successors raised, were built in the taste, and according to the rules of Greece. The materials, which they took from the ruins of Memphis, could not be employed, without being fashioned a-new, according to the order of that architecture. This order was extremely light in comparison of the other: thus there was a great deal to take away. They respected not hieroglyphics, of which they had no longer any knowledge. The Greeks looked on them even with envy, because they contained the mysteries of religion, and of those arts, of which they pretended to be the sole inventors. Let us not then be surprized, if we find no hieroglyphics upon marbles, that are taken out of the ruins of Alexandria. It was not likely that there should be any on them. If the rules of the new architecture did not require those hieroglyphics to be taken away, yet still they would have effaced them, that they might not have appeared in edifices, with which they had no connexion. What an indecency, for example, would it have been, to have employed a column, covered with hieroglyphics, together with a column of the corinthian order?

WE should properly consider the ruins of Memphis only as a rough quarry, from whence they drew stones, in order to cut them into a suitable fashion. It would have been impossible to collect together all the pieces in such a manner, that they could have served for edifices, like those wherein they had been employed. As soon as one supposes, that those edifices were in ruins, one must expect in them nothing that is intire; and there would have been likewise an impossibility of re-establishing what was wanting. Reasons of ambition and of jealousy, as we have observed, opposed any such attempt; and we cannot be ignorant of the obstruction that a natural cause occasioned, since, in the time of ALEXANDER, they were become as ignorant

rant in the knowledge of hieroglyphics, as *we* are at present.

I MIGHT enlarge further on this subject; but I persuade myself, that the reasons, I have just given, are convincing. I content myself therefore with remarking only, that the pieces of marble, covered with hieroglyphics, which are found at the foundation of POMPEY's column, prove, that in fact they have brought some from Memphis; and that they were unwilling to make use of them, without altering them, unless in places where they thought them for ever concealed from the eyes of spectators.

THERE remains only one point to examine. What is become, will it be said, of that great quantity of ruins, that the general destruction of so great a city as Alexandria must have occasioned? I answer, that, as far as I have been able, I have assigned them suitable places in Alexandria itself, where they must be deeply buried under ground. Let the reader consider, how much the ancient pavement of Rome has been raised, on account of the sacking and ruin of that ancient capital of the world, and he will be easily persuaded, that the same thing has happened to Alexandria<sup>k</sup>. Moreover, is it not certain that, at all times, they have transported into Europe a great number of these ruins? they continue to do it in like manner every day; and at the time I was there, I have seen large pieces of columns, and other remains of antiquities, put on board French vessels. Indeed, they take away

---

<sup>k</sup> MR. ADDISON, in his remarks on Italy, takes notice, that "It is generally observed, that modern Rome stands higher than the ancient; some have computed it about fourteen or fifteen feet, taking one place with another. The reason given for it is, that the present city stands upon the ruins of the former; and indeed I have often observed, that where any considerable pile of building stood anciently, one still finds a rising ground, or a little kind of hill, doubtless made up of the rubbish of the ruined edifice."

in this manner but little at a time ; but, in succession of time, it makes a great sum. If Alexandria was under a government less suspicious and reserved, one might examine things more nearly, and give reasons perhaps more evident : for want of that, the reader must be content with the few observations, that it is possible to make in such a country as this.

I RECOLLECT a thing at present, which I ought not to pass over in silence, tho' it be only to let the reader see, that I have attended to it. That great and superb column, which one sees without the gate of Rosetto, is called the column of POMPEY ; but no one, I believe, can tell us, from whence that denomination is derived. We know that CÆSAR shed tears at the death of that great commander<sup>1</sup> ; but who will tell us that he had erected for him this magnificent monument ? The silence of ancient authors upon this point is surprizing. I do not undertake, any more than they, to give the history of it. A man must be a conjurer to do it. I shall only remark, that as this column is of the corinthian order, that seems to fix its erection to the time of the PTOLEMIES. I say its erection, and not the making of it ; for I believe it Egyptian in its origin, and changed afterwards into the form, in which we see it at present. An inscription, that one discovers with difficulty upon one of the sides of the pedestal, might, without doubt, give some light into it ; but time has so little spared it, that it is not

---

—<sup>1</sup> lacrymas non sponte cadentes

Effudit, gemitusque expressit pectore læto,  
Non aliter manifesta putans abscondere mentis  
Gaudia, quàm lacrymis. LUCAN. l. ix.

“ And strait the ready tears, that stay'd till now,  
“ Swift at command with pious semblance flow :  
“ As if detesting, from the sight he turns,  
“ And groaning, with a heart triumphant mourns.  
“ He fears his impious thoughts should be descry'd,  
“ And seeks in tears the swelling joy to hide.”

Rowe.  
decypher.

decypherable. A traveller, that had observed it twenty years ago, pretends to have been able to distinguish, that it was written in Greek characters. I rest it upon his authority. I know only, that the traditions, which the Arabians have transmitted to us of it, are so fabulous, that it is better to rank them with the tales of ROLAND and his horse, than to mention them amongst observations and remarks that are serious.

WHAT I had to say with regard to ancient Alexandria might be concluded here; but I foresee, that some will ask me about the tomb of ALEXANDER, about the serapium, the museum, &c. and that others, perhaps, will go so far as to require me to give a plan of the quarters of this ancient city.

To give an answer to the first, I shall say, that I informed myself with care concerning those ancient edifices, and that I made many enquiries, in order to find out the places at least, where they have been erected. All my care has been useless; so that if I have put, in the beginning of this work, the museum in the place where the Little Pharillon is at present, I have been determined to it by what the LXX interpreters have said <sup>m</sup>. If however it may be judged more proper to place it nearer the palace, and to situate it between that edifice and the Little Pharillon, I see nothing to object to it <sup>n</sup>. I would advise, indeed, the confining it to the border of the sea, that is to say, near the port, without entering any further into the affair, and without attempting to place there whole quarters, as the author <sup>o</sup> of the remarks upon CÆSAR's com-

---

<sup>m</sup> THE translator imagines there is an error in the French edition, and that it should be, *what has been said of the seventy interpreters*; for JUSTIN MARTYR mentions that he saw in Pharos the marks of the cells still subsisting. *Cohort. ad Græc.* pag. 14.

<sup>n</sup> STRABO expressly says, "That the museum is a part of the palace, having a walk with seats, and a large building." l. xvii. p. 793.

<sup>o</sup> I IMAGINE that it must be doctor CLARKE whom the author means in this place; and I must own, it is pity that so judicious an

mentaries, printed in England, has taken it into his head to do. He has followed the designs of PALLADIO, who had made use of the liberty of painters, *quidlibet audendi*, a liberty scarce excusable in him; but which becomes a crime in a serious author, who makes a commentary upon commentaries; as it only serves to amuse the minds of his readers with false ideas. Whoever has been upon the spot, and has seen the situation, cannot forbear remarking the falsity of such a plan, made with a view of clearing up what CÆSAR has said; but which, on the contrary, serves only to mislead those, who shall take it for their guide. I say this however without pretending to reflect on the rest of the work, which may have its merit. I meant only to speak of the plan of Alexandria.

THE tomb of ALEXANDER, which, according to the report of an author of the fifteenth century, subsisted still in his time, and was respected by the Saracens, is no longer to be seen; even the tradition of the people concerning it is entirely lost. I have sought, without success, for this tomb; I have in vain endeavoured to inform myself about it. Such a discovery is perhaps reserved for some other traveller P.

IT is the same with regard to the serapium. Its ruins may lie under some of the banks, which I have

---

editor, as doctor CLARKE was in other respects, should have made use of such modern materials for his prints in that pompous edition, and neglected the collection of antiques, which he might have been furnished with in many particulars.

P STRABO says, "That a part of the palace likewise is what they call Σήμα, *sepulchre*, which was an inclosed place, in which were the tombs of the kings, and that of ALEXANDER: his body was deposited in a golden coffin; which being taken away, it was put into one of glâs." *I am satisfied that the common reading in STRABO is false, and that it should be as I have written it, and translated it.* Vid. pag. 794. ed. Par. 1620.

SUETONIUS observes, "That AUGUSTUS took a view of the corps of ALEXANDER the Great, taken out of its shrine, and with the utmost veneration scattered flowers over it, and adorned it with a golden crown."

mentioned.



mentioned. But I have perceived nothing that could have belonged to that magnificent temple<sup>9</sup>.

To take a plan of the quarters of the ancient city, was a task that exceeded my abilities. There are not ruins enough standing, to assign to each quarter its true place. I have been obliged to confine myself to mark the situation of the ports, and leave to every one the liberty of forming a plan of the quarters, according to the descriptions, that the ancients have given us of them. If my relation and my designs can be of any assistance to them, I shall be much pleased at it: if not, I am content with having performed the duty of a traveller, who sees, and who writes nothing but what he has seen. If I have presumed to advance my own sentiments on certain things, I have not done it in so absolute a manner as not to leave every one the liberty of thinking as he pleases: If I have omitted some particulars, which have escaped my enquiries, so much the better for those who shall come after me; they may enrich their relations by my omissions; and if it has happened to me to repeat what was known already, the reader should not be displeased with me for having ascertained facts by a new testimony<sup>1</sup>.

---

<sup>9</sup> STRABO mentions, "That the serapium is situated in a very sandy place, insomuch that vast heaps of sand are raised by the winds." *From this circumstance, I think it evident, that the serapium could not be situated near the Nile; for the slime of so muddy a river would necessarily compact more firmly the sands.*

<sup>1</sup> *The author having omitted to give an account of Rosetto, it may not be unacceptable to the reader to have the following, from Dr. PO-COCKE.*

"ROSETTO is on the west side of the branch of the Nile; anciently called Bolbitinum, which HERODOTUS says was made by art. This town is called by the Egyptians Raschid, and is esteemed one of the most pleasant places in Egypt; it is near two miles in length, consisting of about two or three streets. Any one that sees the hills about Rosetto, would judge that they have been the ancient barriers of the sea, and conclude that the sea had not lost more ground than the space between the hills and the water. The fine country of Delta, on the other side of the Nile, and two beau-



tiful islands a little below the town, make the prospect very delightful; the country to the north is improved with most pleasant gardens of oranges, lemons, and citrons, and almost all sorts of fruits, with the agreeable variety of groves of palm trees, and small lakes in different parts; and when the fields are green with rice, which is much cultivated here, it adds a great beauty to the country. Great part of the land of Rosetto belongs to Mecca, and they have a tradition, that a relation of MAHOMET was there, and lived at a place where they have built a mosque towards the north end of the town. They have also a notion, that if Mecca were taken from them, the devotion of it would be removed to this place.

THEY have a great manufactory of striped and other coarse linens; but the chief business of the place is the carriage of goods between this town and Cairo; all European merchandizes being brought to this place from Alexandria by sea, and loaded on other boats to be carried to Cairo, as those brought from Cairo on the Nile, are here put into large boats to be sent to Alexandria. For this purpose the Europeans have their vice-consuls and factors here to transact their business; and letters are brought regularly from Alexandria by land, to be sent by boats to Cairo, on the days they set forwards; but letters of greater consequence, that require dispatch, are sent by foot messengers across the deserts directly to Cairo. Tho' Rosetto is so near the sea, yet the water is very good, unless when the north wind blows very strong, or the Nile is at the lowest, when the water is a little brackish. It is remarkable that the Nile does not rise here above three or four feet, because its banks are low, and the water spreads itself all over the country.

"I SAW in Rosetto two of those naked saints, who are commonly natural fools, and are had in great veneration in Egypt; one was a lusty elderly man, the other a youth about eighteen years old. As the latter went along the streets, I observed the people to kiss his hand. I was also told, that on Fridays, when the women go to the burial places, they frequently sit at the entrance of them; and that they not only kiss their hands, but shew them the same respect that was paid to a certain heathen idol, and seem to expect the same kind advantage from it. I myself saw one of these saints sitting at a mosque-door in the high road without the gates of Cairo, with a woman on each side of him, at the time when the caravan was going to Mecca, and a multitude of people were passing by, who are so accustomed to such sights, that they took no notice of it.

"I WENT about two miles north to the castle of Rosetto, on the west side of the river; it is a square building, with round towers at the corners; there are port-holes near the bottom of it: I observed about them several pieces of yellow marble, many of which had hieroglyphics on them, and might be the pieces of some broken obelisk.—This castle is built of brick, cased with  
stone,

stone, and is said to be the work of KEYCK BEY, who lived, as I am informed, about three hundred years ago; but I should rather think it was built about the time of the holy wars, and that this bey might repair it, and make the port-holes. A little lower down, on the other side of the river, is a platform of guns, and to the east of it are salt lakes, where they collect a great quantity of salt.

"At Rosetto I paid a visit to COSMAS, the Greek patriarch of Alexandria, whose usual residence is at Cairo. As I was introduced by the dragoman, or interpreter from the consul, I had all the honours done me that are usual at an eastern visit. First a lighted pipe is offered, brought by the servant to you, then a saucer of sweet meats is carried about, and a little in a small spoon given to every person. After the coffee is served, the servants bring to every one a basin of sherbet, with a handkerchief on the arm for them to wipe after they have drank; and when it is time to go away, they sprinkle rose water on the hands, with which the guest rubs his face; then the incense is brought, which he receives leaning the head forward, and holding out his garment on each side to take the smok. This compliment is paid only where they would shew a particular regard, and the master makes a sign for it, when he thinks it is time the visit should end, or the guest offers to go away; which is never done when the visiter is much superior, till he makes a motion to go. In these visits, every thing is done with the greatest decency, and most profound silence; their slaves or servants are standing at the bottom of the room, with their hands joined before them, and with the utmost attention watch every motion of their master, who commands them by signs." vol. i. p. 13.

## NEW ALEXANDRIA.

**I**T may justly be said, that in the new city of Alexandria we find a poor orphan, whose sole inheritance has been the venerable name of its father. The vast extent of the ancient city is contracted in the new, to a little neck of land, between the two ports. The most superb temples are changed into plain mosques; the most magnificent palaces, into houses of a bad structure; the royal seat is become a prison for slaves; an opulent and numerous people

has given way to a small number of foreign traders, and to a multitude of wretches, that are the servants of those on whom they depend : a place formerly so famous for the extent of its commerce, is no longer any thing more than a mere place of embarking ; in fine, it is not a phoenix, that revives from its own ashes, it is at most a reptile, sprung from the dirt, the dust, and corruption, with which the Alcoran has infected the whole country.

THIS is, in general, the portraiture of the Alexandria of our time. It scarce deserves that we should give a description of it in form. I cannot, however, decline this task, which must be useful to the traveller : As it is the place he first lands at, he ought to begin there to accustom himself to the manners of the country, and learn to bear the contempt of a people, unpolished and unaffable to strangers ; to form to himself an idea of the inconveniencies and disagreeableness, that he may expect in going farther ; and, in one word, perform a kind of probationership of his travels in Egypt. It is proper, therefore, that he should be instructed in what experience has taught those, who have gone before him.

THE port is sufficiently known, and the manner in which it is entered. I have mentioned it in the preceding description. Upon your arrival at the city, you repair to the custom-house, where the traveller pays some trifle for his baggage. It will be searched perhaps, but there is nothing to be feared. They consider not at Alexandria any goods as *counterband*, with regard to a traveller. The merchant, to whom he is recommended, commonly takes the trouble of this, as well as of furnishing him with lodging and board.

ALL merchandizes, that enter into Egypt by this port, pay there a duty, according to the tax that the Grand Seignior has imposed upon his subjects, or rather according to the tariffs that he has settled with the powers of Europe, whose subjects traffic at Alexandria,

andria, where, for the sake of good order, they maintain consuls. The merchants, whose sovereigns are not in alliance with the Port, pay at the same rate as his own subjects. The bashaw of Cairo, every two years, lets out in farm this custom-house, for the profit of the Grand Seignior. He adjudges it to the best bidder, provided that he gives good and sufficient security. It commonly falls to the lot of the Jews, because they have the art of getting the favour of the bashaw, either by presents or by intrigues. They are not subject to have many competitors. The Turkish merchant does not aim at it, that he might not appear too rich, and incur the risques that would follow. Neither are the Christians desirous of concerning themselves with it, because they know before-hand, that the oppressions they would draw on themselves, would soon absorb all the profit of the farm. There are none but Jews, therefore, that aspire to it; and they have sufficient jealousy amongst themselves to outbid one another, and by that means raise the price of the farm.

THE reader will imagine, without doubt, that the Europeans must have a very profitable trade, since, according to their treaties, they pay always so much *per cent.* less than those who are subjected to the tax of the Grand Seignior, amongst whom are comprised the Jews, both foreigners and natives, as well as the nations that have no consul. But he will be deceived, as soon as he shall know, that *they* can never sell so cheap as the Turks and Jews established at Alexandria, and who have a sufficient substance for carrying on a great trade. These last conduct the affair in the following manner.

As soon as the custom-house is farmed out, they agree with the farmer of the customs to pay him so much *per cent.* of the commodities, that they shall import, during the whole time of his farming them. By that means they are at once upon a *par* with the Francs, and sometimes they give even less than the

Francs. In effect, the farmer knows before-hand, that if he does not act in this manner with them, they will import but few commodities during the two years of his farming : if, on the contrary, he makes a good agreement with them, they will take care to supply their magazines, not only for the time present, but likewise for the future. It is easily perceived, that not every one can act in this manner ; since it is requisite that the farmer should have some assurance that there will be a great trade ; and a man, that is not rich, cannot import a great quantity of commodities. He is, for this reason, excluded from this privilege ; and as he cannot sell at the current price, and no one will give him more, he continues without business, is ruined, and always poor. The contrary happens to the others, they grow richer and richer, and get at last to establish a kind of monopoly.

THERE may be at Alexandria a dozen of these Jew merchants, in good circumstances. The others begin only under them, and sell by retail, what the rich import by wholesale. These last render themselves, by this means, very powerful in their nation, and govern it almost as sovereigns. He that refuses to obey them, has no longer any share in trade, and consequently becomes in a little time miserable. His example induces the rest to submit themselves to all that the rich decide. Their sentences are like those of the judge, to whom the Jews have but seldom recourse, since, in all their wants, they are under a kind of necessity of applying themselves to the rich men of their own nation, and of adhering to what they pronounce.

I HAVE been led insensibly by the custom-house to speak of the Jews : I shall therefore take this opportunity of adding some other remarks, which concern them. The most considerable amongst them are almost all foreigners, and natives of Constantinople, Portugal, or Leghorn. It must not be imagined,  
how-



however, that those of Alexandria are the heads of the families. They reside commonly at Leghorn, and extend from thence their branches to Alexandria, to Cairo, to Aleppo, to Constantinople, to Tunis, to Tripoli, and, in a word, to all the trafficking towns of the Mediterranean, especially in the Levant. They have neither particular privileges, nor any declared protection; but they have the artifice to procure it by their intrigues. They always attach themselves to the strongest, that is to say, to the chiefs of the government, who reside at Cairo. It costs them something indeed, but they make themselves amends for it elsewhere; for they turn this protection to such advantage, that they commonly get the preference, on all occasions, where there is any profit to be had. This gains them respect among the Turks, and secures them from the oppressions and insults, to which other nations, more privileged than theirs, are often exposed. Two facts, that I am going to mention, might induce one to think, that they have not a great regard for the Jews at Alexandria. A farmer of the customs was killed there, a little while ago; and an house was set on fire by the populace, who caused all that were within it to perish in the flames. But such accidents may happen here to every body, in like circumstances. The farmer was killed by a janissary, of whom he refused to take less than the *duty* imposed; and the house was set on fire, in a popular insurrection, because the people of the house would not surrender a man, who had retired into it, after having wounded, or beaten a Turk. There was no legal satisfaction to be had; it is not the fashion here. The criminal takes flight, and they are commonly satisfied with that; because their maxim is, that *a thing done is not to be undone*. However, since the murder of the farmer, there is always a guard at the custom-house.

SINCE I have gone so far as to speak of one nation, it is proper likewise to make known the rest;  
and,



and, that I may dispose my narration in some order, I shall give the first rank to the Turks, as they hold the reins of government. They keep garrisons in the two Pharillons, and they have one likewise in the city itself. It consists of a small number of janissaries and assafs. The governor, who commands them, is an aga, and has his residence in one of the ancient bulwarks. There is likewise a cadis, who judges in civil causes. The other Turks who dwell at Alexandria, are, for the most part, artisans or shop-keepers. There is amongst them but a very small number of merchants; who are commonly in good circumstances, tho' they do not let it appear much; as I have mentioned before.

THE Christian Copti, Greeks, and Armenians, that are natives of this country, are to be met with in great numbers at Alexandria; yet they make no great figure. They maintain themselves, pretty nearly, on the same footing as the Turks; with this difference, that they are generally despised. There are however among the Greeks and Armenians some foreigners, that are merchants, and grow rich. The Copti patriarch in this city fills the see of St. MARK, tho' he resides commonly at Cairo. He calls himself successor of that holy apostle and evangelist; and in that quality he pretends to be on a *par* with the Pope. If he was at the same time a *temporal* sovereign as well as the Pope, he would not fail, without doubt, of making his pretensions valid: but as he lives in slavery, like the rest of his nation, his power is confined to the governing the evil consciences of his flock.

I HOPE the gentlemen of Europe will not take it ill, that I mention them the last: my intention was good; for I was not willing to confound them with the other inhabitants of Alexandria. Indeed, 'as they are strangers there, it was not reasonable to assign them the first rank. It is proper to remark, that all Europeans pass here under the name of Franks; those  
4 who

who dwell here are the French and the English ; the former flatter themselves with having more respect, but the latter perhaps have a better trade.

THE French maintain here a consul, dependent on the consul of Grand Cairo. The court of France commonly gives a plenipotentiary power to its ambassador at Constantinople, and it is he that fills up the vacant posts. This consul has, for his assistants, a chancellor and a drogman ; each with a commission from the court as well as himself. He commonly confines himself to the government of his household : the chancellor has the charge of correspondence, and determines differences between merchants and captains of ships of that nation ; and the drogman takes on him the affairs, which concern the interest of the French relatively to the Turks.

ACCORDING to the treaties agreed on between the two courts, the privileges of the French are very considerable ; but their strength is too small at Alexandria, to be able to maintain these advantages. They have no more than a dozen merchants there, of whom one alone, an Italian by nation, traffics on his own account : the others are only factors of divers merchants of Cairo, to whom they have the care of sending the merchandizes, that are landed here.

I HAVE already given an idea of the manner that is here taken for diminishing their privileges, with regard to the duties of the custom-house. The fact that I am going to mention, will shew how they maintain themselves in those privileges. I have been a witness of the affair, at the time I was at Alexandria, to reimbark in order to return into Europe.

FOR some years certain Greek women, of a bad character, had kept a kind of publick house, where the French sailors went to drink, when they came to the city. The disorders that were committed there, had engaged the consul to exert all his power, for putting down this publick house ; but these women had taken  
such

such precautions, that all his attempts were in vain. They had chosen for protector a janissary; who was one of those bravadoes, that on occasion never want friends amongst their comrades.

At the beginning, this fellow contented himself with taking upon him to be master of the publick house, and rebuked the French sailors when they made a noise; but when the consul of the nation issued an order, that no Frenchmen should frequent that publick house, this janissary declared himself an enemy to all those of that nation. He did not confine himself to words, and to threats; he insulted, upon all occasions, those that he met. The government of Alexandria refused to punish this janissary; whether it was because they feared him, or because they did not chuse to give satisfaction to the French, without being well paid for it. In the mean time the janissary became, day after day, so insupportable, that no Frenchman could go out of his house, without being exposed to ill treatment by him. Their safety suffered much in this affair, and their pride perhaps still more. It was necessary therefore to apply to the government of Cairo; and they obtained there, in the usual form, that a *sious*, or a *black-head* of the porte<sup>a</sup> of the janissaries, should be sent to Alexandria, with full power to take cognizance of this affair, and to establish proper measures for the security of the French. They took care to gain the favour of the judge, and agreed with him on the method they should take, for seizing the janissary, who, being informed of the danger that threatened him, put himself, the day before the arrival of the *sious*, under the protection of the assassins, hoping, by that means, to ward off the blow.

At length the *sious* being arrived at Alexandria, declared himself, according to his orders, sovereign judge for the time of his commission. The day, that

---

<sup>a</sup> THE military classes amongst the Turks are called *Portes*.

he appointed to take cognizance of this affair, all the French had notice given them to keep at home; and the gate of the consul's house was guarded by the janissaries, whom that nation maintains: there was none but the drogman appeared in publick.

On that day, early in the morning, the sious ordered all the Greek women of the publick house to be apprehended, and they were embarked on board a French vessel, that immediately set sail for the island of Cyprus, where it had orders to land them. The janissary did not shew himself on this occasion, neither did he move off; because he thought, that the protection he had taken among the assafs was a sufficient security.

As soon as the sious had received intelligence of the departure of the Greek women, he held a grand council, to which he sent for the janissary and his accomplices. They came thither, without shewing the least fear, and followed by all the populace, curious to see the issue of this affair. The sious received them very civilly. He made them sit down on each side of him, and discoursed at first with them on indifferent things. The conversation fell afterwards upon the step they had taken in changing their porte, by leaving that of the janissaries to go to that of the assafs; and they had no sooner admitted the fact, than the sious himself seized the criminal janissary, whilst his attendants did the same with regard to the others. They at once took from them their arms, which they carried concealed under their cloaths; loaded them with chains; and in this condition embarked them on board a pinnace, that immediately set sail.

This violent procedure caused a sudden insurrection of the populace, and all those who belonged to the porte of the assafs. The sious perceiving it, got up into a balcony; and after having ordered silence to be made, he read, with a loud voice, the two plenipotentiary powers, with which he was invested. As one  
of

of these plenipotentiary powers had been issued by the porte of the assafs, and no body there could find fault with it, every one retired. The sious having been informed by the French, that the janissary was going to enter into that porte, had taken the precaution of having orders from thence. The janissary, who did not know this, ran headlong into the snare; for if he had had the least notice of it, he needed only to have withdrawn for some time; and might have returned after the departure of the sious, when the process would have been over.

THE French had taken care not to appear to have concerned themselves in this affair. Neither was there any mention made of them in the plenipotentiary powers. Notwithstanding that, they were considered as the aggressors; and the wives of those wretches that had been embarked, imagining that they were going to be drowned without the harbour, ran through the town like mad women, assembled their friends, and went directly towards the consul's house, uttering curses and imprecations against the French. In vain did the janissaries, that were sent for, endeavour to stop this raging mob: a shower of stones obliged them to take shelter in the consul's house. The mutinous became by that means more insolent. They broke the glass windows, and were preparing to beat down the house, when the janissaries received a reinforcement of some of their own people, that were sent them by the English consul, and of a certain number of other janissaries, that the sious gave orders to march to their aid. The affair then changed its appearance. The janissaries played off so well their bludgeons, that the brawling women and the mutinous mob took to flight.

THEY ran, however, about the streets till it was night; and did all that they could to animate the populace, and to induce them to revenge. But the tumult was appeased all at once, as soon as they were informed that the prisoners were sent to the castle of Beau-



Beauquier, from whence they were to go into banishment. It was judged that they deserved this punishment; and no body concerned himself about them any more.

THERE were none but the French nation that appeared a little perplexed at the mildness of this punishment. They had imagined, that the criminals would have been at least strangled, in order that an example of severity might have served to prevent the like insults for the future: whereas a mere banishment gave them reason to fear, that there would always be found some insolent person, capable of giving uneasiness to a whole nation. That which gave them still more discontent, was the uncertainty of the duration of this exile. They were apprehensive of seeing these seditious people return, and of being exposed to greater insults from them. This affair, however, occasioned to the French a great deal of expence; we shall see hereafter from whence such an expence was derived, and what prejudice such levies brought to their commerce. In the mean time I am going to mention something of their consul, and of that of the English.

I FOUND that the French consul assumed to himself, over his own nation, a power, that might indeed be tolerated. The chancellor, and the drogman, that he had in my time, understood their business; and that was the reason that every one was content. It is usual among the French of Alexandria to shew an extreme respect for their consul. In order to make him more considerable in the minds of the Turks, and of the other nations, they endeavour to give an high idea of his person, and to illustrate his birth in such a manner, that it is not their fault, if he is not considered as issued from the blood royal. If by chance he take a tour to Rosetto, he carries a white flag at the mast of his pinnace; and when he goes out of the port, as likewise when he returns into it, he is saluted by a general discharge of the cannon of the French vessels.

HE



He resides, together with the greatest part of his nation, in a vast hôtel, where he has a church and a chaplain. The other French dwell in separate houses. He does not traffic himself, at least as far as appears; and he goes out but very rarely, that he might not expose his person and his character. The airs that he gives himself amongst his own people, do not permit him to converse much with them: thus he pays for his grandeur by a very irksome life to a man that would like society.

I quit for a moment the French, but shall return to them in speaking of their commerce. In the mean time, let us see how the English act. We have nothing near so much to say of them as of the former. They have at Alexandria no more than two merchants, of whom one is the consul, and is dependent on that of Cairo. They keep themselves quiet, and conduct themselves without making much noise. If any nice affair is to be undertaken, they withdraw themselves from it, and leave to the French the honour of removing all difficulties.

WHEN any benefit results from it, they have their share; and if affairs turn out ill, they secure themselves in the best manner they can. This is all that I can say of the nations established at Alexandria. There are no other but those that I have mentioned. The French, however, protect an Italian, and some Greeks, who pass for their own people. I am now going to conclude what remains for me to say of the commerce of this nation.

THE trade of the French is very considerable at Alexandria. They receive every year several ships, which they freight with commodities, that are brought from Cairo. The vessels they make use of for this intercourse, are feluccas, barks, and tartanes. There go thither very few other vessels; because every vessel, that does not bear a bowsprit, pays less for the maintenance of the ports, &c. They name them caravaniers,

vaniers, on account that, as the caravans, they go from place to place, to take in a lading in the best manner they can. This would be the place of speaking of the divers sorts of commodities, that the French nation carries to Alexandria, and of those, that it draws from Egypt; but, to say the truth, I do not recollect this affair sufficiently, to give it in detail as is requisite; and it is better to say nothing of it, than to speak of it imperfectly<sup>b</sup>. I chuse therefore to touch on the question that I promised to explain; namely, why the French are obliged to raise the price of their commodities.

WE need not search for the cause in any thing else than the idle expences, to which that nation is exposed; for besides that all ships pay a pretty great duty of consulship; *they* are moreover obliged to pay a certain tax, that is imposed, either upon vessels, or upon goods. This tax is destined to supply the charges that the common safety requires; and to indemnify the several persons who have suffered any oppressions from the Turks. It is the consul that raises or falls this tax, according as circumstances require. Yet I do not think that he is absolutely the master, to order

---

<sup>b</sup> F. VANSLEB gives the following account.

“THE trade of the French merchants in this city, is the greatest that they have in all the eastern parts; for there is no place in Turkey where so many French ships come as into this haven; from the beginning of the year 1672, to the month of June, there was no less than nineteen French ships that came hither, and in the month of June I reckoned fourteen.

“THIS is a considerable number, but not to be compared with the number of vessels that frequented this haven heretofore: for M. LUCASOLE, who did the office of chancellor of the French nation, told me, that he remembers that there have been at Alexandria, in one year, ninety four French ships.”

*The reader may see in VANSLEB an exact account of all the commodities that are carried from Egypt into Europe, whether it be by the way of Marsailles, or by that of Leghorn, or by Venice, with their ordinary price in the year 1673; and likewise an account of the commodities that are sent from Europe into Egypt.*

it as he pleases; but it depends, without doubt, on the French ambassador at Constantinople, who must approve the representations of the consuls of Alexandria and of Cairo, before they can pass into acts. Yet, whatever may be the authority, by virtue of which they levy these duties, it may be said, that they are very chargeable to the nation, which really loses, by that means, much more than one can imagine.

THE English know not any contributions of that kind. They have the duty of consulship to pay; and that is all. Moreover, that great subordination, that the French are obliged to observe with regard to their consul, is not in use among the English. They act more roundly one with another; and there is no respect, any farther than decency, or some private interest, may require it. There arrives every year a good number of English vessels at Alexandria; but they are not always laden on the account of that nation. The Jews, and even the Turks, often freight them, and on board these vessels carry on a profitable trade.

THE Venetians and the Dutch have formerly had settlements and consuls at Alexandria; but great bankruptcies, even of their consuls themselves, have entirely ruined that commerce. The Turks, who are not to be bantered, where their interest is concerned, refuse to admit any longer consuls from those two nations, till they have indemnified the losses, that were sustained on account of the preceding consuls. As the sums, in this case, are great, and that neither the one nor the other have any hopes of a considerable profit, they have never since attempted seriously the re-establishment of this branch of their commerce. Perhaps likewise they are not willing to undertake it, on account of the consequences that might follow, if a whole nation took upon itself to pay the debts of a particular person. The few vessels, that the Venetians, or the Dutch, send to Alexandria, are, as well

as their cargoes, at the mercy of the farmer of the customs, who is reputed their consul; they make an agreement with him for the custom-house duties, and they get off sometimes tolerably well. The Venetians, however, appear commonly under French colours, and enjoy this protection, as far as that can give it them, with regard to commerce.

THE Swedes, tho' in alliance with the Port, go but very seldom to Alexandria. At the time I was there, one vessel from that nation came thither. It expected to enjoy at least the privileges that are granted to the Venetians and the Dutch; but the farmer of the customs refused to treat with it on that footing: inso-much that it was obliged to pay the duties, in their utmost extent; which surely could not encourage it to return again.

THERE are, I think, no other European nations that trade to Alexandria. The Turkish vessels, which frequent its port, are some sultanas, that go thither annually, to receive, in merchandizes, the *carrat* (tax) of the Grand Seignior. The bashaw of Cairo is appointed to collect it, and to transmit it, under the inspection of a bey of Cairo, who accompanies it quite to Constantinople.

THERE was likewise at Alexandria, about the time I was there, a Turkish squadron; which came thither in order to transport the three thousand men, that Egypt furnished, for its *quota*, during the war between the Port and the Emperor of Germany. The half of this *quota* consisted of janissaries; the other half of assassins. These two *corps* behaved so ill, during the two months that they remained at Alexandria, that no one could come thither from Cairo in safety. They pilaged every where about; and amongst other robberies, took away a thousand sequins (*about 500 l. sterling*) that a French merchant sent to be embarked and transmitted into Europe. He imagined, that his money ran no risk, because he had trusted it to some janissaries,

nissaries, who are maintained by that nation; but these were attacked by an enemy superior in number, and one of them being dangerously wounded, they delivered up the money to the conquerors. The consul employed all his power to get this money restored; but, notwithstanding all the steps he took; notwithstanding all he could offer to the commanders of these troops, he obtained nothing; and, at my departure from Alexandria, they considered those thousand sequins as irrecoverably lost.

THE disorders got to such an height afterwards, even in the city of Alexandria itself, that the janissaries and assafs came to blows. The *reservoirs* not being furnished with a sufficient quantity of water, to supply the wants of so great a number of supernumerary persons; the contest was, who should make themselves masters of *them*: together with this, the hatred, which always subsists between these two parties, had animated them to such a degree, that their officers had a good deal of difficulty to hinder them from cutting each others throats; and would never have succeeded in it, if they had not taken the method of hastening their departure. By this means alone they re-established discipline among their troops, and delivered the city of Alexandria from an heavy burthen, that scarce left it the liberty of minding its most necessary affairs. I was not an eye-witness of the facts I have been mentioning; but as I arrived at Alexandria immediately after the departure of these troops, the memory of the riots, they had committed there, was still so recent, that it was not possible to doubt of the recitals, nor the complaints that every one made of them.

THIS digression, which I thought necessary, has hindered me from speaking of the *saicks* and *vergues*, Turkish vessels, that one sees every day in the port of Alexandria. The first, as being the largest, go to Damietta, and to divers other ports of the Levant; and the *vergues* are ordinarily employed to go to Rosetto.



setto. These vessels bring from Damietta and Rosetta the merchandizes of Europe, deposited in those two towns; and they carry thither the merchandizes of Cairo, that are designed to be sent into Europe.

THERE remains for me nothing more to say, than that during my continuance at Alexandria for three weeks, I went, by way of jaunt, to see some places, that are but a few leagues distant from it. I saw, amongst others, in these expeditions,

THE castle of Bokkier, situated on a point of land, that advances a little way into the sea, between the city of Alexandria and the western mouth of the Nile.

THE town and castle of Rosetta, which is on the right hand, as you enter by the same mouth of the river.

THE village of Deruth, on the border of the Nile, to the south of Rosetta, and to the east of Alexandria.

THE mosque of Scheck-Ghadder, on the border of the Nile, upon the left hand as you enter it.

THE mosque of Carullo-Merefel.

ANOTHER mosque, at four leagues to the south of Rosetta.

I HAVE drawn views of all these places on the spot, whither I went for that purpose; and I represent them in the manner that they appeared to me.

THERE is no need of mentioning, that these places are situated in the Delta, or in its neighbourhood, nor of enquiring why the part of lower Egypt, that is included between the Mediterranean and the two arms of the Nile, which begin to be formed at Cairo, has had the name of Delta. All those who have read the descriptions of this country, or who have cast an eye upon the maps, that have been given of it, must have perceived, that the origin of this name is owing to the resemblance, that this district has to the triangular figure of the Greek letter  $\Delta$ .

---

<sup>c</sup> HERODOTUS relates, " That it was said by the Egyptians, and he declares it to be his own opinion, that the Delta was for-



THE reader must not be surprized that I speak not of divers other places. I pass them over in silence; because I was not at them. Nothing gave me hopes of finding there any thing worthy of attention. Besides that, it was necessary for me to make haste, in order to penetrate into the upper Egypt; which was the principal aim of my voyage, and the object of my curiosity.

YET, before I quit Alexandria, I am going to discharge the promise I made above, of mentioning the manner in which a traveller ought to conduct himself in Egypt. I shall give notice, however, that what I write, is not for those who go thither with the view of trafficking there, or of making their fortune. Such persons will be placed with some merchant, who will take care to instruct them early in all they have need of, for making their way. My intention is only to inform those, who, like myself, go into Egypt, to satisfy their curiosity, and to make enquiries tending to the advantage of the republic of letters.

I BEGIN therefore with saying, that I observed in Egypt one has need of a good banker, much more than any where else. In another country it is sufficient that a banker furnishes you with money; but in Egypt, it is requisite, besides, that he serve you as an host, and in some measure as a protector. The reader will imagine that, in such a country, there are no inns capable of receiving what we call a gentleman. It is necessary, therefore, that the banker should supply you with the necessaries of life, either at his own

---

merly covered by water, and that it was *lately*, as may be said, a new discovered land." l. ii. c. 15. *This opinion of HERODOTUS confirms what I mentioned before concerning the island Pharos, which HOMER places at the distance of a whole day's sail from Egypt.*

DIODORUS SICULUS says, "That all Egypt was formerly sea, and that the land was formed by degrees from the mud brought down from Ethiopia by the Nile." l. iii. *So that Egypt, from whence we derive, as the original source, almost all the arts and sciences, is itself but a modern country.*

house,

house, or with one of his acquaintance. If the banker is of a nation that has a consul, this minister commonly takes upon himself the charge of the protection, you stand in need of; and if he is a Jew, and of a good character, he will not fail of credit to secure the traveller from any insult.

If, after being provided with a good banker, which is, in my opinion, the most necessary thing, you would go further into the country, and satisfy your curiosity, I advise you much to dress yourself immediately in the Turkish manner; for, tho' one may appear at Alexandria in habits of the European mode, it is much better to dress yourself like the Franks, and by the sight of them to have already modelled yourself. By that means you pass, as knowing the customs and usages of the country, and are less subject to the reflections of those that pass by you. A pair of whiskers, and a grave and solemn air likewise, are well employed here; they give you a greater conformity with the natives of the country.

A TRAVELLER will take afterwards a janissary into his service; and, if it is possible, he will chuse one that has been accustomed to serve the Franks. You get janissaries for a small matter. They commonly understand what is called *lingua franca*<sup>d</sup>. They accompany a traveller wherever it is permitted him to go. No one will insult him in their company. If they meet a man of distinction, they can give him an account of the person they escort; and if they see the lower sort of people running towards you, they keep them at a distance, by threats. The bankers know the janissaries that are to be hired; and you may trust to their recommendation.

---

<sup>d</sup> It is a kind of jargon, composed of Italian, Spanish, French, vulgar Greek, and other languages. In this language, if it may be so called, nothing but the infinitive mood of each verb is used; this serving for all the tenses and moods of the conjugation.

BEFORE his arrival at Alexandria, a traveller should have read the ancient authors, and have formed in his mind a scheme of the things, that he would either examine or compare. But as the country has so much changed its face, the traveller had need that some one should put him in a right track. He may easily make acquaintance with the divers European nations that are settled in the country ; and he will be able to get great assistances from them. He should take care, however, not to give himself up to them with too much credulity. There reigns commonly a great deal of jealousy among these gentlemen. We should endeavour to know their characters, and be attached only to such as can be of the greatest service : the drogman of the French nation, for example, is commonly a man brought up in the country, and that understands perfectly the language and customs of it. By this means, if he be the least curious, he must be able to direct you to the places, where there is any thing to be seen. You should not neglect the instructions he is capable of giving you, but ought to rely absolutely on no one but yourself. A thing, that one person will not deign to look at, may deservedly draw the attention of another, and give lights, that will have escaped persons that were less attentive. All those, with whom a traveller makes an acquaintance, offer civilly to attend him in visiting the antiquities of the country. Their kindness is not to be refused ; but at the first trial, you will find, that they will confine themselves to common things ; and if you would go further, they will endeavour to divert you from it ; whether it be because they begin to grow tired, or because they fear to expose themselves to some accidents. You have nothing of all that to fear, when you have the company of a janissary. He is accustomed to smoke his pipe, and to be idle : he finds these two sorts of pleasure with a traveller that he accompanies ; thus he regards little the time that passes in stopping at one place. I ought, however,

however, to advertise, that it is not proper, that a traveller should carry his curiosity so far, as to be desirous of penetrating into places which the Turks do not permit the entrance of, such as fortresses and mosques. Perhaps he may be able to persuade his janissary to carry him thither. Interest has great sway over those sort of people. They are not proof against presents. But it would be always imprudent to expose ones self to the danger. It may happen once that you will escape without harm; yet it will be always an hundred to one that you will be the dupe of your own curiosity. I advise you never to be eager of visiting places that are prohibited, unless you are beforehand assured of a permission, of such a nature as to secure you from hazards; and unless you are convinced, that the thing is worth the trouble that you give yourself, in order to get the sight of it.

THE conversation of the people, with whom one makes an acquaintance in the country, gives commonly into the marvellous. They relate a thousand accidents that, they pretend, have happened to travellers, or to others. If we gave credit to such persons, we should scarce go beyond the walls of the ancient Alexandria; or at most advance no farther than Cairo; but in the main, I chuse rather to confide in my own experience, than rely on the reports of people ignorant or credulous. I dare at least assure the traveller, that if he designs to go no further than Cairo, and takes never so little precaution, the ordinary rout will bring him thither with the utmost safety.

WE have no need of drogman, or interpreter, so long as we do not go out of Alexandria. If you have an intention of going further, it is proper to provide yourself at least with a valet that understands Arabic. A dispute, that might arise between the people of the boat, on which you are embarked, or between them and the passengers that are natives of the country, would

would be capable of frightening you, if you had not some one, who could tell you what is the matter.

IN case that you find at Alexandria an opportunity of travelling in company, either with missionaries, or with merchants of any European nation, you ought not to miss the occasion ; for besides the advantage of the language, that we commonly find by that means, you may always rely more on the report of those honest people, than on that of a rascal of a valet, Jew or Greek, who often has the impudence to make you believe some danger, in order to render himself more necessary.

BEFORE I leave this subject, I shall add one rule, which you ought to follow, even at Alexandria, and which must be exactly observed throughout all Egypt. It is, never to dig at the foot of any piece of antiquity, nor to break any stone of any monument whatsoever. You must be content with seeing what is exposed to the sight, and those places where you can clamber up, or to which you can get by creeping. Whatever pleasure there might be in viewing an antique monument throughout the whole, it is necessary to debar yourself of it. The consequences would be too dangerous. A consul of France attempted to dig near the obelisk of CLEOPATRA at Alexandria, in order to have the just dimensions of it. He had taken care to ask a permission for doing it, which he did not obtain but with a great deal of difficulty. Notwithstanding that, it was not possible for him to get to the end of his design ; in proportion as he caused it to be dug in the day, they filled up, at night, the hole that he had got to be made. This obstinate opposition arises from hence, that the people, as well great as small, are persuaded, that all the antique monuments contain some hidden treasure. They cannot imagine, that mere curiosity should engage the Europeans to go into Egypt, only to dig the ground there : on the contrary, they are so persuaded of our avarice, that they do not permit us  
to



to rake into any place. If you take it into your head to do it in secret, and they come to find it out, they consider you as robbers. They maintain, that you have seized the treasure, which they supposed to be in that place ; and, in order to have the better hold upon those that have raked the ground, they make this pretended treasure amount to an excessive price.

ONE would think, that the grandees of the country, infatuated with this opinion, should never cease to rake into the earth, and to destroy all the remains of antiquity. It is, in effect, what several of them have applied themselves to ; and divers precious remains of antique monuments have perished by that means. But as they have not found any thing, they were at length tired of the expence. Yet they have not, for all that, got rid of their foolish imagination ; on the contrary, they have joined to it another notion, still more silly, in supposing, that all these treasures are enchanted ; that in proportion as they are approached, they sink deeper and deeper in the ground ; and that there are none but the Franks, who are capable of breaking these charms ; for they pass generally in Egypt for great conjurers.

ANOTHER reason still has diverted them from these sorts of researches. Two of those, who had made themselves famous by this enterprize of digging the ground, to seek for treasures, fell into the hands of their superiors, who did not spare them, and would never believe, that those men had discovered nothing. They accused them of having found treasures, and of denying it, in order that no body might go shares with them. They imposed on them every day new oppressions, under frivolous pretences ; and, in fine, made them pay the profits of a research, from which they had never drawn any advantage.

THE antiquities that we find at Alexandria, as well of medals as of stones ingraved, and of other like things, are discovered, as I have already remarked  
above,



above, without digging, and only when the ground is washed by rain. If on some occasions they turn up the earth, it is done under other pretences, as to draw out stones for building, &c. But that is done, without touching, in any manner, those antique pieces, which are standing; and which, by this happy jealousy, have been preserved in the midst of a barbarous people, who otherwise have no great respect for them.

I SAY nothing of the peril, to which a stranger exposes himself, if he has the weakness to engage in any love intrigue. I suppose that a man, who goes into Egypt, to instruct himself by an inquiry into antiquity, would be moderate enough, and sufficiently reserved, to have nothing to fear on that head. If, however, there should be any one, that has need of an antidote against so mad a passion, it is sufficient to refer him to the recitals, that all those, who have frequented Alexandria and Cairo, will be able to give him. He will learn, that young merchants have been unhappily assassinated in these two cities; that others, after having ruined themselves, by making presents to the janissaries to engage them to secrecy, have found themselves at last deceived to such a degree, that, instead of having enjoyed some women of distinction, they have sacrificed themselves to the vilest prostitutes, who, at a great price, have regaled them with a disease, which they have kept for their whole lives, as no one there was capable of curing them.

LASTLY, in Egypt, we ought to avoid, still more than any where else, all occasions of being insulted by the people of the country. But, if unhappily it falls out, that you are exposed to their insults, it is wise and prudent to give a deaf ear, and to seem not to perceive it. At most, you may go so far as to threaten; but beware of striking a Mussulman. If you are fortunate enough to escape being murdered, it would cost you all that you are worth; and, what would  
give

give one likewise great uneasiness, the friends of the person, that has given the blow, would be drawn into the affair, and would not be able to extricate themselves, without a large sum of money. If however you are determined to have satisfaction for any insult, it is necessary to apply yourself to the judge; but it will cost so dear, that you will have no desire of having recourse to him a second time.

If there is any thing else, that a traveller ought to know, he will learn it in a few days after his arrival in the country. It was proper to instruct him in the articles that I have been mentioning. Perhaps it might be too late to be informed of them upon the spot: besides, a man is apt not to believe all that he hears said. For my part, I should have been greatly pleased to have been informed of them beforehand; this is the reason of my publishing them, for the advantage of those, who may be in the same circumstances with myself.

---

## NEW CAIRO.

**I** ARRIVED at Grand Cairo the 7<sup>th</sup> of July, 1737. This capital of Egypt, that they call likewise barely Cairo, and in Arabic, *Masser*, is situated to the east of the Nile, a little above the place where this river separates itself into two branches, for forming the Delta. It is divided into two cities, the one known under the name of OLD CAIRO; the other under that of GRAND CAIRO.

THIS city is so well known, by such a number of relations and descriptions, as have been published of it, that I flatter myself, the reader will be pleased with my forbearing to enter into circumstantial details on its origin, its circuit, the number of its inhabitants, its castle,

castle, the number of its mosques, its public baths, its gates, &c. Yet, that I may not be reproached with having said nothing of it, I shall make some remarks on certain subjects, which perhaps will not appear to every one unworthy of attention.

THE first of these remarks concerns the ceremony that is practised, every year, when they are to cut the bank of the *Calish*, or canal, which, at the time of the increase of the waters of the Nile, is to convey them to Grand Cairo; and which, in the country, resembles only a ditch badly kept up; for it has not

---

\* DR. POCOCKE has given the following account of all these particulars. "The city of Grand Cairo has been much magnified as to its extent, and the number of its inhabitants; it consists now of three towns, or cities, a mile apart, that is Old Cairo, Cairo properly so called, and the port called Bulac. The ancient city, which seems to have succeeded to Babylon, and was built near it, was called Mesr, the old name of Egypt. The present great city of Cairo, which was called by the Arabs Caher, according to their historians, was built by a general of the first calif of the Fathmites, in the year 973 of CHRIST. It is said SALADIN built walls round both these cities. A third city was built between the old and new cities, called Kebasch, which has been since destroyed, and the ruins of it are now seen.

"OLD CAIRO is reduced to a very small compass, and is not above two miles round; it is the port for the boats that come from upper Egypt; some of the beys have a sort of country houses here, to which they retire at the time of the high Nile.

"NEW CAIRO is situated about a mile from the river; and extends eastward near two miles to the mountains; it is about seven miles round.

"THE city is said to have been larger than it is at present, when it was the centre of trade from the East Indies. There are three or four very grand gates that were built by the Mamalukes. The workmanship of them is very good, and, amidst all the simplicity of the architecture, every one must be struck with the surprising magnificence of them.

"THE streets of Cairo, as of all the Turkish cities, are very narrow, and would be looked on as lanes in Europe.

"TURKISH houses, especially in Cairo, have very little beauty in them; they are generally built round a court, where they make the best appearance, nothing but use being considered as to the outside of their houses, what they have of ornament being in their saloons within; so that their houses, built below of stone, and above  
either

either a lining of stone-work, or even a determinate border. Indeed, when it enters into the city, it becomes a little more respectable, as it runs along the walls of the houses built upon its edges. However, it has no great breadth in the city, no more than in the country; and in the place where the waters of the Nile enter, it may have from fifteen to twenty feet in breadth.

As soon as the waters of the Nile begin to increase, they close the mouth of the calisch, by means of a little mound of earth, which they raise there, and they place

a sort of cage-work, sometimes filled up with unburnt brick, and few or no windows towards the street, are a very disagreeable sight to one who has seen only European cities, that have something of outward regularity, as well as conveniency and beauty within.

" THERE are several magnificent mosques in and about Cairo; but that which exceeds them all, both as to the solidity of its building, and a certain grandeur and magnificence that strikes in a very surprizing manner, is the mosque of sultan Hassen, built at the foot of the castle hill; it is very high, of an oblong square figure, crowned with a cornish all round that projects a great way, and is adorned with a particular sort of grotesque carvings after the Turkish manner; the entrance into it is very finely laid with several sorts of marbles, and carved in like manner at top; the ascent was by several steps, which are broken down, and the door walled up, because, in times of publick insurrections, the rebels have often taken shelter there.

" THE castle of Cairo is situated on a rocky hill, which seems to be separated by art from the hill or mountain Jebel Dûise. The castle is walled all round, but is so commanded by the hill to the east, that it can be a place of no strength since the invention of cannon. At the west of the castle are remains of very grand apartments; some of them covered with domes, and adorned with mosaic pictures of trees and houses, that doubtless belonged to the ancient sultans. This part of the castle is now only used for weaving, embroidering, and preparing the hangings or coverings they send every year to Mecca.

OVER this is a higher ground to the east, near the grand saloon, commonly called Joseph's hall, from which there is a most delightful prospect of Cairo, the pyramids, and all the country round. It was probably a terrace to that magnificent room, which is now all open, except to the south side, and is adorned with very large and beautiful pillars of red granite.

a mark,

a mark, to indicate the time of the opening of this canal, and of all the other canals of the kingdom.

WHEN this day is come, the bashaw and his beys go, with a grand retinue, to the ceremony of opening the bank. They place themselves under a very indifferent tent, that is on one side of it; and the Copti and the Jews are employed in cutting the bank. Some ill dressed people, that are in a vile barque, throw nuts, melons, and other like things, into the water that enters, whilst the bashaw causes some *parats*<sup>b</sup> to be thrown in, and a paltry firework to be played off,

---

"IN Cairo there are several bagnios, some of which are very handsome within, being places of great resort in Turkey, both on a religious account, in order to purify themselves, and also as places of refreshment and diversion, especially for the women, who once or twice a week spend most part of the day in the bagnios, and are glad of such a pretence to get out of their confinement. There are some bagnios on purpose for the women, but the more general method is to set apart certain times for them; but the ladies are deprived of this publick opportunity of bathing among the very great people, who have bagnios prepared for them in their own houses.

"I WENT to see some of the best houses in Cairo. The great men have a saloon for common use, and another for state; and as they have four wives, each of them has a saloon, with the apartments about it, that have no communication with the other parts of the house; except the common entrance for the servants, which is kept locked; and the private entrance, of which the master keeps the key. They have such a machine made to turn round, as they use in the nunneries, which receives any thing they want to give in or out, without seeing one another.

"THOSE seem much to exceed, as to the number of people in Cairo, who compute that there are two millions, tho' it is positively affirmed that seven thousand have died in one day of the plague; in which they say they can make an exact computation, from the number of biers that are let to carry out the dead." Page 26, &c.

DR. SHAW says, "That Cairo must be allowed to be exceeding populous; for several families live in one house, and a number of persons in each chamber of it; during likewise the busy time of the day, all the streets are so crowded with people, that there is difficulty enough to pass through them." Page 340.

<sup>b</sup> THE *parat* is the same as the *meidin*, and worth three farthings English, according to Dr. ПОГОСКИ,

con:



consisting of about twenty rockets. At last all these rejoicings, so much boasted of by some travellers, end pretty much like those that one may see at the wedding of a substantial peasant. All that can attract ones curiosity there, is the retinue of the grandes, which, in its kind; has something magnificent.

THE people, on these occasions, do a thousand foolish things, to shew the joy they have, at their expectation of the fertility of the country, and of the plenty of the harvest, from the increase of the Nile. The most lascivious dances are the least marks of their joy; and there seldom passes a year, but some one loses his life amidst these tumultuous rejoicings.

THE second remark that I have to make, concerns the famous well of Joseph. The mouth of this well has eighteen feet of breadth upon twenty-four of length. Its depth is two hundred and seventy-six feet, from the upper wheel quite to the bottom of the water. This depth is parted into two divisions. At the end of one hundred and forty-six feet we meet with a stop, or resting place, upon which they draw water from the bottom, by means of a second wheel with a rope of earthen pitchers. This resting place is a little lower than the middle of the whole depth; for from thence to the bottom of the well, there remain no more than one hundred and thirty feet. This second plat-form of the well is neither so large nor so long as the first. It has no more than fifteen feet of length upon nine of breadth, and its height is nine feet. All this well is cut neatly in the rock, and so artfully, that the rock serves as a rampart to the descent by the side of the well; and they have contrived, at certain distances, some windows to give light. It enters by the mouth of the well, and serves for the descent of the oxen, that are destined to draw up the water by the second wheel. From thence quite to the bottom there run other stairs, or descent, which makes the same figure; excepting that it is not so

F

wide



wide as the first, having no more than between three and four feet of breadth, and six feet of height: besides, it has no parapet to the sides. It is all open, and that renders the descent very dangerous. At the bottom of this last descent is the basin, or the spring of water, which has no more than between nine and ten feet of depth. The taste of it is a little saltish: and indeed they do not make use of it for drinking, unless in case of a siege, or in some other exigency.

COMMERCE is the object of my third remark. It has been formerly much greater than it is at present; but it still continues to be very considerable; and as I have had the curiosity to inform myself thoroughly of the money, of the different weights and measures, and of the most current merchandises of the country, I am going to give a particular account of them.

THERE are in Egypt MAÏDINS, which are little pieces of silver<sup>c</sup>.

THE FENDOUCLI is a piece of gold, that is worth 146 maïdins.

THE GENZERLI and the MAHBUB, are two other different coins of gold, that are worth 110 maïdins each.

THEY make use likewise in commerce of an imaginary piafter, valued at 60 maïdins<sup>d</sup>.

THE species of Europe, that are current in Egypt, are as subject to variations and revolutions, as the commodities. I shall give however a note of them, such as the merchants communicated to me in the month of May 1738.

<sup>c</sup> DR. POCOCKE says, "That a *maïdin* (as he writes it) is of iron silvered over, about as big as a silver three pence. It is worth about three farthings English."

<sup>d</sup> THE translator imagines there must be some mistake in the French edition; for VANSLEB reckons the piafter at thirty maïdins; and SAVARY, in his *Dictionnaire de Commerce*, at thirty three maïdins.

VALUE of the species of Europe, that are current in Egypt.

SPANISH pistole, of the weight of two drachms and two carrats, the drachm consisting of sixteen carrats, without weighing, } at 250 maïdins.

CRUISADOES of Portugal, of the weight of one hundred and fifteen drachms, the thirty three cruissadoes, without weighing, } at 407 maïdins.

SEQUINS of Venice, of the weight of eleven drachms and a half, the ten sequins under weight, } at 154 maïdins.

SEQUINS of Hungary of the same weight, under weight, } at 146 maïdins.

PIASTERS of Reals, of the weight of nine drachms, the piafter under weight, } at 78 maïdins.

PIASTERS of the Emperor of Germany, of the weight of twenty-four drachms, the ten piafters, under weight, } at 78 maïdins.

ROSE PIASTERS, of the weight of nine drachms, the piafter, without weighing, } at 72 maïdins.

As to the weights, either greater or less, it is sufficient, in order to understand the prices that I am going to mention, to know beforehand, that the rotal is generally of one hundred and forty-four drachms<sup>\*</sup>; that one hundred and two rotals three quarters of these drachms make ninety-six pounds of Copenhagen, whose pound amounts to one hundred and fifty-four drachms one eighth in Egypt, where the rotal, as has been just said, is of one hundred and forty-four drachms; and that the hundred pounds of Copenhagen, make one hundred and seven rotals of Egypt.

<sup>\*</sup> Dr. Pococks, on the contrary, asserts; "That the rotalo of Alexandria is three hundred and ten drachms; the English pound weight is about two drachms more than the common rotalo."

THEY use likewise, in that country, some other weights; amongst them the ock, which is of four hundred drachms, and of four hundred and twenty.

WITH regard to the measures of merchandizes, that are imported, they are regulated by the pike of Constantinople. The CANNE makes three of these pikes; the ell of Hanse one pike three quarters: the English yard one pike and one third. The hundred *braces* of Tuscany eighty six pikes. The hundred *braces* of silk stuffs of Venice, thirty three pikes; and the *brace* of cloth of the same city, one pike.

IN the same month of May, in the year 1738, the prices of merchandizes entered were on the footing that follows:

The quintal } Pepper, clean from dust, }		at pieces, 29.	
of rotals 100. }		the quintal,	
		Maïdins,	60.
102.	Quicksilver,		133.
	Cinnabar,		130.
	Pewter in rods,		24.
105.	Wire of yellow brass, sorted,		42
	Laminæ, or sheets of brass, }		44.
	in rotals,		
	Ditto, in plates,		40.
	Ditto, in rods,		32.
	Iron wire sorted,		13.
	Steel,		7.
The quintal }		at maïdins, 138.	
of rotals 110. }		Cloves, the rotal,	
	Nutmegs, the rotal,		130.
	Salsa pareille fine, the rotal,		25.
	Spica celtica, the quintal, at pieces,		28.
112.	Benjamin,		80.
	Almonds,		8.
115.	Ginger,		6.
120.	Brazil wood, Fernamboure,		15½.
	Brazil wood, brazilet,		6.
	Ditto, Campeachy,		4½.
	I		The

The quintal of rotals 125.	}	Verdigrease in cakes,	24.
		Yellow arsenic,	8.
150.	}	Ditto white,	3.
		Red lead,	6.
	}	Arquifou <sup>f</sup> of iron, without waste, for the chest or barrel,	4 $\frac{1}{2}$ .
		Ditto of Scotland,	5 $\frac{1}{2}$ .
		Sulphur, in canons,	3.
		Azure fine, the ock of drachms 400.	
		Cochineal, ditto the ock,	13.
		Yellow amber, worked into trans- parent lumps, and sorted, the ock of drachms 420,	} at pieces 15 to 25.
		White lead of France, with the box, the rotal 75,	
		Ditto of Holland, the rotal 75,	5 $\frac{1}{2}$ .
		Ditto of Venice, ditto,	7.
		Sheets of tin, the barrel of 450 sheets, the barrel,	} 23.
		Needles, from N <sup>o</sup> 1. to N <sup>o</sup> 6. the twelve thousand N. P. S.	
		Paper, the bale of fourteen reams,	12.
		Ditto, the bale of twenty four reams,	} 11 $\frac{1}{2}$ .
		Ditto, the bale of twelve reams,	

<sup>f</sup> "ARQUIFOU is a sort of mineral lead, very heavy, easily reduced into powder, and hard to melt. When it is broke, it parts into shining scales, of a whitish colour, inclining to black, pretty much like the colour of needles of antimony. The potters use it to give their works a green varnish: and in England it is commonly called potters ore." POSTLETHWAYT's *Dict.*

*I doubt therefore very much of the propriety of the expression arquifoux de fer, in the French edition: and I cannot conceive the use of arquifoux in Egypt, where, as Mr. NORDEN observes, they know not the use of varnish.*

	Paper, <sup>s</sup> Venice manufacture, the	} 55.
	bale of forty reams,	
Draperies	Londrine <sup>h</sup> prime of	} at maïdins, 110.
	Hanse, the pike	
	Londrine second,	85.
	Londrine broad,	73.
	Londrine of Holland,	120, to 160.
	Scarlet serge, Venice ma-	} 200, to 280.
	nufactory, the pike, ac-	
	cording to the quantity,	
	Semi-serge, of the same	} 110, to 170.
	city,	
	Sattin of Florence, the pike,	65, to 85.

*The principal merchandises for exportation are,*

Flax in <i>ramo</i> or branches,	} The whole in prodigious quantity, and of all sorts.
Ditto in thread,	
Ditto combed,	
Cotton spun,	
Leathers,	
Callicoes of all fashions,	Sugar.
Yellow wax.	Sena.
Sal-ammoniac.	Cassia,
Saffron.	

THERE is exported besides that an enormous quantity of coffee of Mocha, and of all sorts of commodities, drugs, spices, callicoes, and other merchandizes of the East Indies, which thirty or forty vessels land at Suez, from whence they go every year, laden by the merchants of Cairo with commodities of Europe and of Egypt.

To these few remarks concerning Grand Cairo, I shall join some others, that regard Old Cairo.

<sup>s</sup> IN the French it is *papier à trois lunes*; which I take to be a mark upon the paper. But no dictionary takes notice of it.

<sup>h</sup> WOOLEN cloaths that are sent into the Levant; which have taken their name from the city of London.

## O L D C A I R O .

**T**HIS ancient city, of which I give in my *designs* three different views, is situated on the border of the great canal, that separates the island of Rodda from the continent. Its length, to reckon from the machine that raises the water of the aquæduct, quite to the Bafar, is a quarter of a French league; and its greatest breadth, to take it from the Monks hospital quite to the canal, is of five hundred ordinary paces. The rest is very unequal, and its extremities terminate by houses alone.

THE greatest part of its buildings, except the habitations of workmen, consists in houses of pleasure, where the great men, and the persons of distinction at Cairo, go to divert themselves, at the season when the waters of the Nile have begun their encrease. But the gardens are in great number; and palm trees, as well as vine-arbours, take up a great deal of ground.

THERE may be at Old Cairo an half dozen of mosques, adorned with minarets. The Jews have there a synagogue; the Roman catholicks an hospital; occupied by the fathers of the Holy land; the Copti, a *contrade*<sup>a</sup>, with divers churches; amongst others, that where the grotto is, in which, a tradition runs, that the holy virgin reposed herself when she retired into Egypt: and the fathers of the Holy land pay the Copti a certain sum, annually, to have the privilege of saying mass in this grotto, as often as they please.

THE WATER-HOUSE is a work of the Saracens. It might have served anciently as a palace. At present, one sees there four mills that turn ropes of vile earthen pots. Oxen work them; and it is this that furnishes with water the aquæduct, which supplies the

---

<sup>a</sup> A sort of convent.



castle of Grand Cairo. The whole is built of free-stone.

ONE of the most considerable edifices is JOSEPH'S GRANARY. It occupies a square surrounded by a wall, and they have contrived within it divers partitions. They deposite there the corn that is paid as a tax to the Grand Seignior, and which is brought from different cantons of Egypt. This corn, that continues there quite uncovered, feeds every day a great number of turtle-doves, and other birds, that come to pilage it. The doors are shut only with wooden locks; but the inspectors of this granary, after having shut a door, put on it their seal upon a handful of clay, which they make use of as wax. This granary has nothing, however, antique, whatever its name might seem to impose. Its walls are partly of the time of the Saracens. They have employed in them some free-stones; but the greatest part is built with bricks and clay, such as they make use of every day at Cairo for building.

THE houses for pleasure, belonging to the grandees, have nothing that corresponds to their name. They are only vast saloons, ill disposed, with three or four divans in the inside. These divans themselves are nothing but little holes that form a sort of labyrinth, and have this advantage only, that they procure the master the conveniency of seeing his women, and slaves, without their being able to pry into each others apartments, and perceiving what passes there.

IN the neighbourhood of Old Cairo, particularly towards the east, one discerns nothing agreeable to the sight. It is all barren hills, that seem to be composed of ashes and rubbish.

It may be said, that the town is entirely open; for it has only, on the side of the east, a little piece of a wall, that still subsists, ever since the time of the Saracens. This could not serve much for its defence; and indeed they have employed it to a different use: they

they have contrived lodgments in it, to which the peasants bring their poultry, and other commodities, that they have to sell.

THE canal, which is between Old Cairo and the island of Rodda, has been dug from the remotest antiquity. It begins at the Bazar, and terminates near the water-house. We pass all this tract dry-shod, when the waters of the Nile are low; but when this river is swoln, one sees all sorts of vessels, even to barks, moving on it: on the 23<sup>d</sup> of July, 1737, it was entirely dry; but, at the end of that month it was not possible to ford it; and on the 14<sup>th</sup> of August the increase of the waters was already so great, that they were able to open the mound of the calisch, or canal, which carries the waters of the Nile to Grand Cairo. The 19<sup>th</sup> of November, the time when I was ready to set out for the Upper Egypt, this canal would scarce permit one to pass it in little wherries; and when I was returned, I found it entirely dry, the 24<sup>th</sup> of February 1738. Its breadth is two hundred ordinary paces, and its length a quarter of a French league.

THERE may be a quarter of a league from Old Cairo to the inclosure of Grand Cairo, and half a league from Old Cairo to Boulac.

BOULAC maintains itself from its vicinity to Grand Cairo, of which it is as it were the staple and harbour. It is situated to the east of the Nile; and it has to the north the calisch, which, as I have already remarked, conveys the water of the Nile to Grand Cairo.

IN the middle of this river, between Old Cairo and Gize, is situated the island of Rodda, which is almost as long as Old Cairo, when it is not overflowed in its northern point; but at the time of the inundation, it loses a quarter part of its extent. It may have in its middle five hundred paces of breadth. The northern extremity terminates in a point; and the front of the Mokkias occupies all the breadth of the southern part.

AL.

ALMOST all the island is distributed into gardens, and has no other inhabitants but gardeners, with workmen, that are necessary to them for their labour.

THE MOKKIAS, or MIKKIAS, a work of the Saracens, makes its principal ornament. It derives its name from the use, to which it has been dedicated; for Mokkias signifies *measure*. In effect they observe there, every day, by means of the graduated column, the increase or decrease of the waters of the Nile; and it is by that the publick cryers regulate the proclamations they make of these events, at different hours, through the city.

Its bason is in a square tower, surrounded by a gallery, that has divers windows, and which is terminated by a vault, in the Arabic taste. The Arabic inscription, that one reads at the entrance of the Mokkias, is this, according to the explanation that was given me of it:

*The entrance of this place testifies, that there is no other God but one God; and that Mahomed is the sent of God.*

ON one side of the Mokkias, but still in the same range of buildings, one sees a grand mosque; and on the side of this mosque, towards the west, stairs to go down to the water. It is on these stairs, that the people make their observations; for the Mokkias itself is shut up; and it is with great difficulty that they permit the entrance into it.

THE rest of the buildings, that accompany the Mokkias, is destined for those, that attend it, and for the people of the mosque.

SOME pretend, that it was on this island, that MOSES was exposed by his mother, and saved by the daughter of PHARAOH. One may, however, with a good deal of reason, call in doubt this opinion; because the island of Rodda has not always been such as it is at present. The canal, which separates it from Old Cairo, is a sufficient proof of it. Besides that, the city of Memphis was on the other side of the Nile;  
and

and it is not said in Holy Scripture, that the daughter of PHARAOH went a-cross the river.

THAT I may not interrupt the description of Cairo and its dependencies, I shall pass on immediately to GIZE, of which I have already made mention. It is a pretty large village, situated on the western shore of the Nile; opposite to Old Cairo, and the island of Rodda. It is built of bricks and clay; and has no other ornament, but four or five minarets of mosques, with some palm trees. There are made in this place a great number of earthen pots, and of tiles, that are very indifferent, and always without a varnish, of which the Egyptians know not well the use.

If we give credit to some authors, the city of Memphis was situated in the place where at present stands the village of Gize; and I own that this opinion does not want probability. But if we attend to it carefully, we shall find it necessary to strike off a great deal of the grandeur of that ancient capital of Egypt, or else raise extremely the plains all about it<sup>b</sup>.

---

<sup>b</sup> HERODOTUS gives the following account of the ancient city of Memphis. "Hitherto I have mentioned what I have myself seen, and known, and by enquiry have been able to discover. But now I am going to mention the Egyptian accounts, such as I have heard. To which will be added likewise something that has fallen under my own inspection. The priests related that MYN, or MEEN, the first king of Egypt, gained Memphis from the river by making a dam. For all the river flows by a sandy mountain towards Africa. That this MYN at the distance of one hundred stadia, which is twelve Roman miles and a half above Memphis, having thrown up a mound against an elbow or bending of the river towards the south, by that means dried up the ancient channel, and diverted the river to flow between the mountains. And even now at present this elbow of the Nile, that flows thus confined, is attended to by the Persians with great observance, the mound being every year repaired. For if the river should attempt, by breaking down this mound, to overflow, there is a great deal of danger that all Memphis would be drowned. So that by this MYN, who was the first king, all that part, from which the river was excluded, was made a *terra firma*. He then built there that city, which is now called Memphis, (for Memphis is situated in

In effect Gize does not occupy the half of the space of Old Cairo; and the plains, that extend all around,

one of the narrowest tracts of Egypt;) and without the city he caused a lake to be dug from the river, towards the north and towards the west; for towards the east the Nile itself bounds it. He next built there the temple of VULCAN, which is great and memorable." I. ii. c. 99.

*There is great diversity amongst the ancients, concerning the orthography of this name, MYN, or MEEN: but I have followed GRO-NOVIUS's reading. Which is, Mña and Mñya in the accusative case. How others have translated it into English, MENES, I cannot conceive.*

"A MAGNIFICENT portail, to this temple, towards the north, was built afterwards by MOERIS. c. 101.

"AND another portail more magnificent still, towards the east, was added by ASYCHIS." c. 136.

DIODORUS SICULUS differs from HERODOTUS with regard to the founder. "UCHOREUS, says he, built the city Memphis, which is the most illustrious of all the cities of Egypt. He chose a place the most convenient of all the country, where the Nile, divided into branches, forms what is called, from the figure, Delta. By which means it happened that the city, commodiously situated near the entrance of the river, commands all that sail up it. He made the circuit of the city one hundred and fifty stadia, *that is, eighteen miles three quarters*; and procured it a wonderful defence and conveniency by this manner. For whereas the Nile flowed round this city and would overwhelm it during the increase, he threw up on the south side a very great mound, which during the swelling of the river, was a defence to it; and against enemies by land, it was of the nature of a fortress. In the other parts all about he dug a great and deep lake, which receiving a great quantity of water from the river, and filling every place about the city, except where the mound was made, he made the strength of the place surprizing. In thus excellently building the city he had in view the conveniency of places, so that almost all the kings after him, having left Thebes, fixed their palace and abode here. For which reason from that time Thebes began to decline, and Memphis to flourish, quite to ALEXANDER the Macedonian. For he having built near the sea a city with his own name, all the kings of Egypt since that time have vied with each other in its improvements. Some, by magnificent palaces, some, by docks and ports, and others, by various presents and illustrious works, have so far adorned it, that it is reckoned by most the first or second city in the whole world." I. i.

DR. POCOCKE observes: "It is very extraordinary that the situation of Memphis should not be well known, which was so great and famous a city, and for so long a time the capital of Egypt; but  
never



never fail to be deluged at the time of the overflowing of the waters of the Nile. Is it credible, that they should

as many of the best materials of it might be carried to Alexandria; and afterwards, when such large cities were built near it, as Cairo and those about it, it is no wonder that all the materials should be carried away to places so near and so well frequented; and the city being in this manner levelled, and the Nile overflowing the old ruins, it may easily be accounted for, how every thing has been buried, or covered over, as if no such place had ever been. There are two distances mentioned by STRABO, in order to fix the situation of Memphis; he says it was about eleven miles from Delta, and five from the height on which the pyramids were built, which appear to be the pyramids of Gize. DIODORUS says, that it was fifteen miles from the pyramids, which seems to be a mistake. STRABO speaks also of Memphis as near Babylon, so that probably it was situated on the Nile, about the middle, between the pyramids of Gize and Sacara, so that I conjecture the city was about Mocanan and Metrahenny, which are in the road from Cairo to Faiume, on the west side of the Nile, and rather nearer to the pyramids of Sacara, than to those of Gize; for at Mocanan I saw some heaps of rubbish, but much greater about Metrahenny, and a great number of grottos, cut in the opposite hills on the east side of the river, which might be the sepulchres of the common people of Memphis, as those on the western hills were probably, for the most part, the burial places of their deities, their kings, their great people, and their descendants. I observed also a large bank to the south of Metrahenny, running towards Sacara, which may be the rampart mentioned by DIODORUS SICULUS, as a defence to the city, not only against the overflowing of the Nile, but also against an enemy; and therefore must be different from that mentioned by HERODOTUS, as twelve miles and a half south of Memphis, by which the course of the river was turned, and consequently, at that distance, could not well be said to be a defence to the city. PLINY is still more plain, and says, that the pyramids were between Memphis and Delta, not four miles from the river, and seven from Memphis, which fixes this city about the place I mention.

“ THERE is another circumstance in the situation of this city, that there were large lakes to the north and west of it, both as a defence, and probably also to supply some part of the city with water; and I saw several such lakes to the north and west of Metrahenny. It also very remarkable that MENES, the first king of Egypt, according to HERODOTUS, turned the course of the Nile, which run under the western hills, and made it pass in the middle between them and the eastern hills, and built the city where the river first run; it is not improbable that Calig al Heram, that is  
have



have built a city so great and famous, in a place subject to be under water the half of the year? Still less, can it be imagined, that the ancient authors should have forgotten so particular a circumstance.

At half a league to the south of Old Cairo, we see the great mosque of ATTER-ENNABY, situated on a point of land to the eastern border of the Nile. The Mahometans have a great veneration for this mosque, because a tradition runs, that Omar, first Califf, in going down to the place, where this mosque has been since founded to his honour, left there, upon a marble, the print of his foot. It has in other respects nothing

the canal of the pyramids, and the western canal, some miles beyond Metrahenny, over which there is a large bridge, and which at present runs under the hills, may, at least in some parts, be the remains of the ancient bed of the Nile; and from this account we have, the city of Memphis seems to have extended from the old canal to the new one, and some part of it to have reached as far as the hills; for the serapium is mentioned to be in a very sandy place, and consequently towards the hills where the Nile does not overflow; for I found the country sandy in some parts for near a mile from the hills. The palace of the kings also was on high ground, extending down to the lower parts of the city, where there were lakes and groves adjoining to it; and I saw near Sacara a sort of wood of the acacia tree; this and the Dendera being the only places in Egypt where I saw wood grow as without art; and it is possible that this wood may be some remains of the ancient groves about Memphis. The city being, according to some authors, above eighteen miles round, it might very well take up the whole space between the river and the hills, which I take not to be above four or five miles; but what fixes the situation of Memphis to this part, is PLINY's account, who says that the pyramids were between Memphis and the Delta.

"THIS city was famous for the worship of OSIRIS, under the shape of a living bull they called Apis, probably because that animal is so useful in agriculture, invented by that king. They had also a famous temple of VULCAN, and another that was dedicated to VENUS. p. 39.

"PLINY speaks of Memphis as a woody country, with such vast trees, that three men could not embrace the trunk, and of one sort particularly that was remarkable, not for its fruit, or any use, but for its resemblance to the sensitive plant. *Facies enim spinæ folia habet, ceu pennas, quæ tactis ab homine ramis cadunt protinus, ac postea renascuntur.*" l. xiii. c. 10.

extra-

extraordinary, neither within nor without, unless it be a gallery of antique columns ; but so ill ranged, that oftentimes the capitals, turned topsy turvy, serve as pedestals, and the pedestals are employed to serve as capitals.

THE village of DEIR-ETIIN is situated very near to the mosque of Atter-Ennabi, towards the south. It has a mosque, and there is likewise a convent of Christian Copti. The houses are of a bad structure, and almost all built of clay. One end of the village is close to the Nile, and the other extends towards the mountains, which are not much further distant than a league. That which embellishes most this village, as well as the greatest part of the others, are the palm trees, a sort of trees, which they raise in great abundance.

It is pretended, that this name DEIR-ETIIN, signifies *convent of figs*. I shall here remark, on this occasion, that they have in Egypt divers sorts of figs ; but, if there is any difference between them, a particular kind differs still more ; I mean that which the sycamore bears, that they name, in Arabic, *Giomez*. It was upon a tree of this sort, that ZACCHEUS got up to see our Saviour pass through Jericho.

THIS sycamore is of the height of a beech, and bears its fruit in a manner quite different from other trees. It has them on the trunk itself, which shoots out little sprigs, in form of grape-stalks, at the end of which grow the fruits <sup>c</sup>, close to one another ; al-

---

<sup>c</sup> PLINY gives the same account of it, with some additional circumstances.

“ ET Ægypto multa genera, quæ non alibi. Ante omnia ficus, ob id Ægyptia cognominata. Arbor moro similis folio, magnitudine, aspectu. Pomum fert non ramis, sed caudice ipso. Idque ipsum ficus est prædulcis, sine granis interioribus, perquam secundo proventu, scalpando tantum ferreis unguibus : aliter non maturefcit. Sed cum factum est, quarto die demetitur, alio subnascente : septeno ita numerosa partu, per singulas æstates multo lacte abundante.” l. xiii. c. 7.

most like bunches of grapes. The tree is always green, and bears fruit several times in the year, without observing any certain seasons ; for I have seen some fycamores that have given fruit two months after others. The fruit has the figure and smell of real figs ; but is inferior to them in the taste, having a disgusting sweetness. Its colour is a yellow, inclining to an oker, shadowed by a flesh colour. In the inside it resembles the common figs, excepting that it has a blackish colouring, with yellow spots. This sort of tree is pretty common in Egypt. The people, for the greater part, live upon its fruit ; and think themselves well regaled, when they have a piece of bread, a couple of fycamore figs, and a pitcher filled with water from the Nile.

I SHALL add here some other remarks, which I made during my abode at Cairo, and in its adjacent parts.

THE first regards the ordinary method of hatching chicken in ovens ; and, in order to make it better understood, I give the design of one of these ovens, with its proportions. The reader sees there the plane of the lower story, where the fire is put ; the plane of the upper story, where they put the eggs in little trenches : a section of the oven in its length, and another section in its breadth <sup>d</sup>.

THE second remark is concerning the manner they thresh, or rather thread, rice in Egypt, by means of a sledge, drawn by two oxen, and in which the man, who drives them, is on his knees, whilst another man has the care of drawing back the straw, and of separating it from the grain, that remains underneath. In order to tread the rice, they lay it on the ground in a ring, so as to leave a little void circle in the middle.

IN the third place, I have observed, whilst I was at Cairo, that we see there often a sort of barques, that carry commonly upon the Nile the fena, that

---

<sup>d</sup> See the folio edition of this work.

comes from Effenay. These barques are called in the country, *merkeb*.

THE fourth remark will regard the Locusts, and the Dareiras. The first, are particularly remarkable for the hieroglyphic, that they bear upon the forehead. Their colour is green throughout the whole body, excepting a little yellow rim that surrounds their head, and which is lost at the eyes. Their length is two inches twenty-six parts, Danish measure\*. This insect has two upper wings, pretty solid. They are green, like the rest of the body, except that there is in each a little white spot. The locust keeps them extended like great sails of a ship going before the wind. It has besides two other wings underneath the former, and which resemble a light transparent stuff, pretty much like a cobweb, and which it makes use of in the manner of smack-sails, that are along a vessel; but when the locust reposes herself, she does like a vessel that lies at anchor; for she keeps the second sails furled under the others.

THE Dareira, is a kind of gnat, with which the water sometimes is almost all covered, towards the evening. I take it for that sort of insect, that the bats go in quest of upon the Nile, for their prey.

IN order to cross the Nile, the inhabitants have recourse to the contrivance of a float, made of large earthen pitchers, tied closely together, and covered with leaves of palm trees. The man that conducts it, has commonly in his mouth a cord, with which he fishes as he passes on.

ADAM's fig trees, vulgarly called *bananas*, and the beautiful cyprus trees of Old Cairo, afford matter for a fifth remark.

THE different vessels and utensils, that they make use of in household affairs, give room for a sixth remark. You see there some *bardakes*, vessels made,

---

\* THE Danish foot is to the English as 1403 to 1350.

some of white, others of a blackish earth ; but they are not above half burnt ; which is the reason that the water is filtrated continually at the bottom, and clarifies itself by this means. The white vessels are the best, because the water cools sooner in them than in the others. They are, in return, a little dearer ; but as one buys two or three of them for a *parat*, or for two sols French, there are none but the poor that can think of being saving in that article. They cover them with a kind of straw cap, made in a very particular manner.

THE water, that is brought from the Nile, upon the backs of camels or asses, is poured into great jars, made of red earthen ware. They are not varnished : by this means they purge the water of the Nile, which is extremely foul, when it is brought into the house. They assist it's clarifying, by putting into it almonds or beans pounded. This jar rests on a foot made very clumsily. It has commonly thirty-two inches in height, Paris measure ; and its mouth has ten inches in diameter.

THE ewer, though made very clumsy, is one of the best pieces of earthen ware that they have in Egypt ; for all that art in this country consists in making some vile pots or dishes ; and as they do not know the use of varnish, they are of consequence incapable of making any work of that kind, that does not leak.

It cannot be said, that the coffee-pots are ill made. They are of red copper, tinned without as well as within. There are of different sizes, from one cup to twenty cups full ; and you find them always ready made ; so that you may take your choice.

THE cups, in which they take the coffee, have no faucers. They seldom employ them. The grandees alone make use of them ; and they are bored through ; which is done, that they may not burn themselves. The China ware, that they make use of in the country, is that of the Indies.

I SHALL



I SHALL finish this remark with the description of the lamps and lanterns, that they make use of commonly at Cairo. The lamp is of the palm tree wood, of the height of twenty-three inches, and made in a very gross manner. The glass, that hangs in the middle, is half filled with water, and has oil on the top, about three fingers in depth. The wick is preserved dry at the bottom of the glass, where they have contrived a place for it, and ascends through a pipe. These lamps do not give much light, yet they are very commodious, because they are transported easily from one place to another.

WITH regard to the lanterns, they have pretty nearly the figure of a cage, and are made of reeds. It is a collection of five or six glasses, like to that of the lamp, which has been just described. They suspend them by chords in the middle of the streets, when there is any great festival at Cairo; and they put painted paper in the place of the reeds.

LASTLY I shall observe, that as it rains but seldom in Egypt, the Author of nature has so wisely disposed things, that this want of rain is happily supplied by the regular inundation, that is there made, and which returns every year<sup>s</sup>.

NOTHING is more known than this inundation; but there is nothing likewise in which people are more

<sup>s</sup> THE natural cause of the scarcity of rain, in the inland parts of Egypt, is, I imagine, the dryness of the sands, which do not afford sufficient moisture for forming clouds and descending in rains. For Dr. SHAW observes, that upon the coast, from Alexandria, all along to Damietta and Tineh, they have their former and latter rains, as in Barbary and the Holy land. He has added a diary of the weather at Alexandria, in the months of January and February, A. D. 1639.

F. VANSLEB says, "That on the 25th of February 1673, the rain fell betimes over against Old Cairo, and lasted till noon; the showers fell so furiously, that our bark sunk almost to the bottom: I wished then, that such as say that no rains fall in Egypt had been there, for they would have seen the contrary. This rain was succeeded by cold and tempestuous winds."



mistaken, than the manner in which it is effected, and with regard to the method of cultivating the ground after it.

THE authors, who have undertaken to give descriptions of Egypt, have thought these two articles so generally known, that they have scarce entered into any particulars. Content with having said, that the fertility of the country is derived solely from this annual inundation of the Nile, they have gone no further; and their silence has given occasion to think, that Egypt is a paradise on earth, where they have no need of plowing the ground, or sowing it, all being produced as it were spontaneously after the draining of the waters of the Nile: but they are greatly mistaken; and I dare assert, by what I have seen, that there is scarce a country where the land has greater need of culture than in Egypt<sup>h</sup>. I must own that in the Delta, which

---

<sup>h</sup> HERODOTUS acknowledges, that he could get no satisfactory account of the cause of the *inundation of the Nile* from the priests, or from any one else in the country. He mentions three *hypotheses* concerning this inundation by Grecians, whom he sneers at the same time for their ambition of being distinguished for their wisdom, and confutes their notions.\* He afterwards proposes *one* of his own, which is equally absurd, and is confuted in his turn by DIODORUS: l. ii. c. 19, 20, 24.

DIODORUS allows only two of the hypotheses to be Grecian, the one by THALES, the other by ANAXAGORAS, and the third concerning the ocean he makes of Egyptian extraction amongst the priests. l. i.

DR. POCOCKE *seems to me to have given the true account of it.* "It must be supposed, *says he*, that the north winds are the cause of its overflow, which begin to blow about the latter end of May, and drive the clouds, formed by the vapours of the Mediterranean, southward as far as the mountains of Ethiopia, which stopping their course, they condense, and fall down in violent rains. It is said, that at that time not only men, from their reason, but the very wild beasts, by a sort of instinct, leave the mountains. This wind, which is the cause of the rise of the Nile, by driving the clouds against those hills, is also the cause of it in another respect, as it drives in the water from the sea, and keeps back the waters of the river in such a manner as to raise the waters above. The increase of its rise every day must be greater during the time it is  
is

is more frequented and more cultivated, the mechanical contrivances are more plain and simple, than

confined within its banks. By accounts of its rise for three years, I find it rose the first six days from two inches to five inches every day; for the twelve next days from five to ten, and so continued rising much in the same manner, but rather abating in its rise every day, till towards the time it arrives at the height of sixteen pikes, when the calisch, or canal, at Cairo is cut; afterwards, tho' it goes on rising six weeks longer, yet it does not rise so much every day, but from three to five inches; for, spreading over the land, and entering into the canals, tho' the quantity of water that descends may be much greater than before, yet the rise is not so great; for after the canal of Cairo is opened, the others are opened at fixed times, those which water the lowest grounds being cut open last. From these canals, when full, the country is overflowed, and not commonly from the great body of the Nile, that is, where the banks are high; for it is otherwise in the Delta, where they are low. Canals are carried along the highest parts of the country, that the water may have a fall from them to all other parts, when the Nile sinks; and they draw the water out of the great canals into small channels, to convey it all over the country. It is remarkable, that the ground is lowest near all other rivers which are supplied from rivulets; but, as no water falls into the Nile in its passage through this country, but, on the contrary, as it is necessary that this river should overflow the country, and the water of it be conveyed by canals to all parts, especially when the waters abate, so it seemed visible to me, that the land of Egypt is lower at a distance from the Nile, than it is near it; and I imagined, that in most parts it appeared to have a gradual descent from the Nile to the hills; that is to the foot of them, that may be said to begin at those sandy parts, a mile or two distant from them, which are gentle ascent, and for that reason are not overflowed by the Nile.

“THE Egyptians, especially the Coptis, are very fond of an opinion, that the Nile begins to rise every year on the same day; it does indeed generally begin about the 18th or 19th of June. They have a notion also of a great dew falling the night before the day that they perceive it begins to rise, and that this dew, which they call nekta, purifies the air. This, some people imagine, causes the water of the Nile to ferment, and turn red, and sometimes green; which they certainly do as soon as the Nile begins to rise, and continues so for twenty, thirty, or forty days. Then the waters are very unwholesome and purging; and in Cairo they drink at that time of the water preserved in cisterns under the houses and mosques: and this might originally be a reason why they would not let the water into the canals, which would

what you find higher up in the country. They *there* make use of divers mills for raising water, which dif-

---

fill the little lakes about every village, and afterwards spoil the good water that might come into them. It is supposed, that the sources of the Nile, beginning to flow plentifully, the waters at first bring away that green or red filth which may be about the lakes at its rise, or at the rise of those small rivers that flow into it, near its principal source; for though there is so little water in the Nile, when at lowest, that there is hardly any current in many parts of it, yet it cannot be supposed, that the water should stagnate in the bed of the Nile, so as to become green. Afterwards the water becomes very red, and still more turbid; and then it begins to be wholesome, and is drank by the vulgar; but most people have large jars, the insides of which they rub with pounded almonds, that is, what remains after the oil is pressed out, which causes the water to ferment and settle in four or five hours. The water continues reddish till the rapidity of the stream begins to abate in December and January; but the river continues to fall, even to the season when it begins to rise again; the waters being always yellowish, and colouring the waters of the sea for some leagues out. I found the height of the Nile at the Mikias in January, according to their account, to be about eleven pikes; in March about nine pikes; but in the computation of the rise of the Nile, I suppose it to be three pikes less than the account they give of it. They told me, also, that the mud, which settles every year in the Mikias, is about five feet deep. I could not have thought it so much, tho' a succession of water may raise it so high.

"THE precise day the Copts would fix the beginning of its rise to, is the 12th of their month *Keab*, which is the fifth of June O. S. and this being their festival of St. MICHAEL, they make a miracle of it. It is certain, about this time, or rather about St. JOHN, the plague begins to stop when it happens to be here, and becomes less mortal; tho' it seems rather to be owing to the change of the wind, and the falling of the dew, which are some time before, and then they begin to find the effects of it. The Nile is commonly about sixteen pikes high, from the 25th of July to the 18th of August; the sooner it happens, they look on it they have a better prospect of a high Nile. It has happened so late as the 1st, and even the 19th of September, but then they have been afflicted with plague and famine, the Nile not rising to its proper height. Eighteen pikes is but an indifferent Nile, twenty is middling, twenty two is a good Nile, beyond which it seldom rises; and it is said, if it rises above twenty four pikes, it is to be looked on as an inundation, and is of bad consequence, as the water does not retire in time to sow the corn; but I cannot find any certain account when this has happened.

fuse

fuse it into an infinite number of canals, that are called commonly in French, *canaux d'arrosage*, watering ca-

“TOWARDS the mouth of the Nile the banks are low, and the water overflows the land soon. There likewise it has its vent into the sea; so that the water does not rise at Rosetto, and below Damietta, above three or four pikes: and I was assured, it does not rise above four or five at Assouan, just below the cataracts; the reason of which may be, that the Nile below is very broad, and that the banks are not, as in other places, perpendicular, but sloping; so that the water is not confined, but spreads over the banks, towards which the low hills come, on the west side, with a gentle descent.

“THE Grand Seigneur has not a title to his rents, till the canal is opened at Cairo, by breaking down the bank that is thrown up before it, which is not to be done, till the Nile rises to sixteen pikes; yet, when the Nile once did not rise so high, and the pasha caused the canal to be opened, the people, notwithstanding, would not pay the tribute. The Nile has sometimes been known to rise irregularly, as it did a pike or two in December 1737, at which the people were alarmed, having made some observations, that misfortunes had happened to Egypt when the Nile had risen out of season, and, particularly, that it did so in the time of CLEOPATRA, when Egypt was taken by the Romans. But, however, nothing happened the year following, but a very plentiful rising of the Nile, which is the blessing of Egypt. The time when the Nile is at highest, is about the middle of September.”

DR. POCOCKE observes, “That they have two measures, called *piques*: the larger is called the pike of Constantinople, and is about twenty seven English inches. The small pike, or pike of the country, consists of about twenty four inches.”

DR. SHAW says, “That in the month of December, the channel of the Nile above the *Mikeas*, was, at a medium, about three cubits in depth, and, as far as he could judge by the eye, little more than half a mile in breadth. But in falling down the branch of Damietta, in the same month (and the river might probably be shallower in the three following) they frequently struck upon the ground, in the very middle of it, though the vessel drew less than three foot of water. In the middle of June, when the Nile was considerably augmented, there were few parts of the main channel but they could pass over, by thrusting the boat forward with a pole of eight cubits in length. Each day's increase afterwards, till the middle of July, was two, three, or four digits, and then it would be sometimes ten, sometimes twenty or thirty, till it rose, August 15, 1721, to sixteen cubits.

“No addition seems to have been made, during the space of five hundred years, to the number of cubits, that are taken notice

nals. Besides that, the Delta has another advantage from nature; which is, that the soil there is lower, and can therefore be so much the more easily overflowed.

ABOVE Cairo, they make use sometimes of leathern vessels, for pouring the water into the canals. They employ likewise very frequently the Persian wheel; with ropes of pitchers, which is turned by oxen; and tho' these machines are not of the best construction, they are nevertheless capable of supplying the water, that is wanted for moistening the ground.

YET all this would not still be sufficient. The drought is so great, that the soil has not only need of a general inundation; it requires besides, that, when the waters of the Nile begin to sink, they should not run off too soon; it is necessary to give the land time to imbibe, and be thoroughly soaked by them.

THIS necessity has, long ago, made them seek methods for being able to retain the water, and to pre-

of by HERODOTUS. This we learn, not only from the sixteen children that attend the statue of the Nile; but from a medal also of TRAJAN, where, we see the figure of the Nile, with a boy standing upon it, who points to the number sixteen. This account we have likewise confirmed by PLINY, l. xxxvi. c. 7. and l. v. c. 9; though, in the fourth century, fifteen cubits only are recorded by the Emperor JULIAN, as the height of the Nile's inundation. About three hundred years afterwards, when Egypt was subdued by the Saracens, still the amount was no more than sixteen or seventeen; and, at present, notwithstanding the great accumulation of soil, that hath been made since those times, yet, when the river riseth to sixteen cubits, (though nineteen or twenty are required to prepare the whole land for cultivation) the Egyptians make great rejoicings, and call out *Wafaa Allah; God has given (them) all they wanted.*" p. 435.

DR. SHAW reckons by the grand cubit, or cubit of *Constantinople*, which he computes in round number to be twenty five inches.

HERODOTUS mentions, "That the priests told him that in the reign of MOERIS, not quite nine hundred years before, the rise of the Nile requisite was no more than eight Grecian cubits." l. ii. c. 13.

serve



serve it for moistening the ground. The ancients had been wonderfully successful in their contrivances for this purpose, and in their time all the land was seen in a very flourishing beauty, quite to the foot of the mountains; but the course of time and divers desolations, with which the kingdom has been afflicted, have caused every thing to fall into such a decay, that, if extreme necessity did not oblige the Arabs to work, in less than a century Egypt would be reduced to as sad a condition as Little Barbary, in the neighbourhood of the cataracts, where they plough and cultivate no further than twenty or thirty paces of land, on the border of the river.

THE methods I have mentioned consist in banks, and in *calischs*, or canals, that they cut or dig in places where the border of the Nile is low. These canals they carry quite to the mountains, across whole provinces; so that, when the Nile increases, its water enters into these *calischs*, which convey it within the country, in proportion to the height of the river. When the river has swoln to its pitch, and diffused its waters on the surface of the ground, they then think of retaining them for some time, in order that the earth may be sufficiently soaked. For this purpose, they make banks, called *giffer*, which hinder the water from flowing off, and confine it, as long as they judge proper. At length, when the earth is sufficiently moistened, they cut the *giffer*, to facilitate the running off of the waters.

ALL the happiness and prosperity of a province depends on the good direction of the *calischs*; but as every one endeavours to yet a profit by them (inso-much that the bey of Gize gets actually more than five hundred purses<sup>1</sup> a year) the *calischs* fall, here and

---

<sup>1</sup> F. VANSLEB says, "That a single purse is worth five hundred French crowns."

there,



there, into great decay; which is the reason that the fertility of the ground diminishes in proportion.

THE conquest of Egypt<sup>k</sup>, in one single campaign, by SELIM I. emperor of the Turks, about the year 1517, made him entirely master of this kingdom, but did not give him an entire security of the obedience of its inhabitants. The upper Egypt particularly, that had not felt the force of the conqueror's arm, and that was governed by several Arab princes, had acknowledged him for master only with the view of avoiding the desolation of the country. The conqueror was not ignorant of this; and he judged rightly, that those, whom his presence kept under the yoke, would very soon escape from it, when he was withdrawn, unless he provided against it, by establishing there a form of government capable of securing to him the possession of the country, and of defending it in case of need.

EVER since the foundation of the Ottoman monarchy, they have held it as a general maxim at the

<sup>k</sup> M. MAILLET gives a long account of the conquest of Egypt by the caliphs of Africa, in the year 970, occasioned by a disappointment in love; the sum of what he has said, I shall contract into as small a compass as I can.

"AT the time that MEES-LEDIN-ALLAH reigned in Africa, Egypt was governed by a young queen, who was so wonderful a beauty, that all were her slaves that saw or heard of her. The report of her charms had captivated MEES-LEDIN-ALLAH, who sent a magnificent embassy to offer her his heart and empire. She rejected both with scorn. In the train of the ambassador was a painter, a Frenchman, young and handsome; who, in order to carry on a love intrigue with one of the queen's attendants, had disguised himself in the habit of a female slave. The queen was smitten with the female slave in disguise, took her into the palace, and caused all the same honours and respect to be paid her as to herself. This queen had the same passion as SAPPHO is said to have had for the Lesbian maids. She grew so desperately fond of this seeming female slave, that she committed the greatest indecencies in publick, and disgusted her own subjects. MEES-LEDIN-ALLAH, when he heard of it, was so enraged at her slight of him, and the injurious preference of a female slave, that he sent a powerful army and subdued the whole country."

Porte, that in matters of government it was not necessary to adhere to rules of equity; and that it was much better to exercise the most severe cruelties, than to suffer the least attack on the sovereign power.

SELIM was of a character to follow strictly this barbarous maxim of his ancestors; but as he did not see Egypt sufficiently subdued, and as he himself was called elsewhere with his army, he judged that, in order to free himself from all fears, and to prevent revolutions, it was proper to establish a form of government, of such a nature as to be able, in time, to reduce that kingdom to the point he wanted, by means of the few Turks, that he should leave in the country.

For this purpose he created a Bashaw, to whom he committed the whole government of Egypt. The power of this officer was despotic, and he was to give an account of his conduct to the emperor alone, according to whose pleasure he was to be changed, either annually, or every two years. Twenty-four Beys were established at the same time. Their office consisted in governing the provinces; where they acted as despotically as the bashaw, throughout the whole kingdom. They were nominated by the bashaw, who had a right to recall them, as he himself might be by the Ottoman porte. One of them was obliged to accompany the *carats*, or tax of the kingdom, that is sent every year to Constantinople: another was bound to conduct the caravan to Mecca<sup>1</sup>: and those, that were unemployed, were to assist, once a week, at the

---

<sup>1</sup> It is surprizing, says M. MAILLET, to see the splendor with which these little sovereigns live in Egypt. I have seen the bey, that conducts the caravan of Mecca, maintain four hundred persons belonging to him, and living at his expence. He might be attended every day of ceremony by three hundred horsemen, all his slaves, mounted upon fine horses from his own stables, with scarlet harness gilt, with coverlids embroidered with gold and silver, hanging quite down to the ground."

divan,

divan, or council of the bashaw; in order to know there the commands of the Grand Seignior, and to agree with the bashaw, upon the most easy and most expeditious means for putting those commands in execution. In case that Egypt sent its *quota*, or other troops, to the Emperor, some beys were to command them; and the post of grand chancellor could be filled only by one of them. The title of *bey*, or *beg*, remained to them all their life; but the different trusts that were committed to them, were only for a time, and according to the good pleasure of the bashaw.

It might seem, by what I have just now said, that in Egypt, the sovereign power is lodged in the hands of the bashaw; and that all other posts of honour are shared amongst the different beys; but, if it be considered, that they are in commission but for one or two years, and that they have not the troops at their disposal, it will greatly lessen that idea.

In effect, SELIM, after having thus disposed of the chief posts of the government, and after having got rid of the Mamelukes, introduced a militia upon the same footing as that of the Turks, and he fixed it to a certain number of men, who were for the most part raised in Egypt itself, and only intermixed with some others, drawn out of the different provinces of the empire, and with some of the Turks, that had remained in the country. These soldiers were divided into different military classes, that are in use in the Ottoman empire, and that are known under the name of *portes*. But as there are none but those of the Janissaries, and of the Affafs, that can make themselves considerable, and that the others even pass themselves off most commonly for being of one of those two corps, I willingly omit them, that I may speak more amply of the two portes I have just mentioned.

THESE two corps of soldiers differ only in their number, which sometimes likewise is not greater in the one than

than in the other<sup>m</sup>. In other respects their government, and their discipline, resemble each other intirely. This does not hinder them from living in continual jealousy, and, according to all appearances, the fault is owing to the janissaries, who, thinking themselves more formidable, become, in consequence, more haughty; for though, with regard to valour, they are much inferior to those of Constantinople, yet they do not forbear to pique themselves upon the honour of their name, and to despise the other corps.

EACH porte has an AGA at its head. This officer is not nominated by the bashaw. It is necessary that he should be elected by the corps itself, and that he should be afterwards vested with the Caffetah, or commission from the Grand Seignior. He concerns himself solely with the interests of his porte; he assists at the Grand Divan; he presides at the council of his own corps, and he has under him inferior officers, called KIAJA or KIECHE, and SIOUS.

THEY mean by KIAJA or KIECHE, a sort of colonels, that have admittance likewise to the divan of the Bashaw, and are sometimes people of great importance. They form together a company; and two from amongst them are chosen, every year, for attending on the affairs of their porte.

THE SIOUS, or black-heads, are lesser officers, but yet have their share in the government, according as their views of interest determine them. There are, in each porte, some hundreds of them.

THIS would be the proper place, without doubt, to distinguish more particularly the posts that I have been mentioning, and to let the reader know exactly their different duties; but besides that I have no intention to enter into a longer detail on their account, I own frankly, that I have not sufficiently studied all

---

<sup>m</sup> ACCORDING to M. MAILLET, "The number of effective men amongst the assafs may be between three and four thousand. The effective men of the janissaries may amount to six or eight thousand."

the rules of their discipline. Moreover, my view is only to acquaint the reader with what passed, at the time of my abode in the country; and perhaps that alone will give a more just idea of their military state, than all the descriptions that could be given of it.

To finish what I have to say in general, concerning the military government, I shall observe, that SELIM did not find it convenient to keep up in the country any naval army; and that of consequence we ought not to enquire after it at present.

As much almost may be said of the *strong places*; but as, in all Egypt there may be still subsisting half a dozen fortified castles, it is very necessary to do them the honour of saying something of them; tho' in effect SELIM has ruined all that was in a condition to defend itself.

THESE castles have garrisons, composed of janissaries and assassins, and those that command them take the title of aga. They have subalterns named *schorbatschies*, that form with them the divan. Their power extends no farther, of right, than on the fortresses, where they command; but wherever they are in the least interested, they find artfully the means of exceeding their limits, and of intermeddling in all the affairs of the neighbourhood.

EACH strong place has a cadis, or judge, that determines causes almost always as a *dernier ressort*, and without appeal. He acts however with some circumspection, for fear that the parties may have friends powerful enough to bring him before a superior tribunal.

THERE is at Cairo, besides the cadis, a Grand Master of the *police*, named *Huali*, who makes there pretty much the same figure, that our grand provosts do in the army. The public markets, the weights and measures, are under his jurisdiction; and if any one commits a trespass, his attendants can bring him to speedy justice. He often walks in person, as well by night as day, through the city; and as he is accompanied



panied with fifty executioners, and that he has power of life and death, without being obliged to give an account of his actions, his presence imposes a very great respect. Luckily his coming can be perceived at a great distance. Every one takes care then to conceal himself, or to slip into another street.

I HAVE already said, that the beys had the charge of the government of the provinces: the rule however is not so certain, but that it admits of some exceptions. Several places have only *cacheffs*, or *caymakans*. The first govern three or four villages at a time; and the latter govern no more than one. But the one and the other enjoy there the same privileges that a bey does in his province: there is no other difference but in this, that the district of the *cacheffs* or the *caymakans* is more confined.

IN matters of religion, Egypt is governed by a *muffti*, and by the doctors of the law. They are the judges in spiritual causes. They take likewise some share in the secular government; but they have the policy to side artfully, sometimes with one faction, sometimes with another, continuing always attached to that which has the uppermost, at least for the whole time that it has the advantage over the others.

I OUGHT not to forget to speak of the Arab princes, and to say in what manner they govern themselves, and what means are employed to reduce them to obedience. These are, I own, two articles very nice, and very difficult to describe. I shall endeavour, however, to do it, and I do not despair of succeeding in it, by following the lights that I have been able to acquire in the country.

THE Arabs, that are in the Delta, and above Cairo, quite to Benesoeff, are divided into *FÉLAQUES* and into *BEDOUINS*. The first are peasants that have their abode in villages, and that are entirely subject to the government. The others are Arabs, distributed into little companies, each with a chief, whom they call



call schech. They dwell always under tents; and each platoon forms a little camp. As they have no land belonging to them, they change their abode as often as they please<sup>a</sup>. When they fix themselves any where for a certain time, they make an agreement with the bey, the cacheff, or the caïmakan, and purchase, for a whole year, the permission of cultivating a certain portion of land, or of feeding their flocks there, during the time they agree for. They continue there then very peaceably, go forwards and backwards into villages, or neighbouring towns, sell and purchase what they please, and enjoy all the liberty they can desire. They are even less oppressed than the other subjects of the Grand Seignior; for as they have nothing, nothing can be taken from them; and if they pretended to molest them in any other respect, the affair would draw on, without doubt, dangerous consequences.

It would be a great advantage for Egypt, if all the Arabs would act as regularly as those whom we have just mentioned. The country, that would no longer want husbandmen, would be cultivated; the officers of the government would receive exactly the taxes, and be able to supply so much the more easily those that they are bound to pay to the Grand Seignior; but these Bedouins are too inconstant, and sometimes too great knaves, to lead a long time so uniform a life. When they have been guilty of some vile prank, and they fear justice, or when any injury has been done them, they pack up immediately their baggage, decamp, and lay plots with other camps. By this means they encrease their numbers; and after having chosen a good leader, they go and take up their quarters, in such a part of the country as they judge convenient. They then take no further care of cultivating the land:

---

<sup>a</sup> THIS is an exact picture of the ancient Nomades, that are mentioned so often in the classic writers.

they

they reap only what they find there. The governors endeavour immediately to oppose them, and sometimes reclaim them; but most commonly these Bedouins make a stout resistance, and do not withdraw till they have made every thing desolate. These pillages ruin the Felacques, that are unable to pay the others share of the tax; and as the Grand Seignior admits no deficiencies, it belongs to the bashaw, or to the other officers, to find the proper means for collecting the necessary sums, in order to make up for those that are not able to pay.

THEY have, almost every year, these sort of little wars. When they do not continue long, the mischief, that the Bedouins occasion, may be supportable; but, if one of their troops has once well established itself in a place, it does immediately a great deal of mischief to the neighbours, and concludes, by separating from the jurisdiction of the government the land it has seized on, and which it pretends to take possession of, without paying any tax.

THERE are divers examples of these sorts of usurpations; and even at the time that I was in Egypt, there was one of these schechs of Bedouins, that gave a great deal of disquiet to the government. He had taken possession of a very fertile soil, on one side of Montfalunth; and he encamped there with his people to the number of four or five thousand men. He was opposed, in the beginning of his enterprize; but as he had been successful enough to gain some advantages over the bey of Girge, he was, in my time, so well strengthened, that his troop, being fixed in the place, cultivated quietly the land they had seized on. The government was obliged to come to terms of accommodation with them, in order to hinder them from extending themselves further, and to get them to let their neighbours live in quiet. These new subjects pay no tax, but to their leader alone; and it is a loss

H

for

for the government, that is deprived by this means of the revenue of those lands.

THE Bedouins of Ouladjeche, opposite Benesoeef, have a like origin. They have been able to maintain themselves so well in the lands, which they have usurped, that they live at present in an entire independency. They have even rendered themselves so formidable, that there is no Turk bold enough to venture amongst them. The risques would be too great. The Arabs of this canton give no quarter. They receive all deserters; and neither intreaties nor menaces can induce them to deliver them up to the government.

ANOTHER sort of Arabs inhabits the mountains, opposite Ell-Guzoue. They are notorious robbers, that plunder equally by water and land. They are not in great numbers; and the bey of Girge is continually in pursuit of them. Notwithstanding that, they maintain themselves, to the great prejudice of the navigation on the river.

I THOUGHT it necessary to give this idea of the Arabs, in order that they may not be confounded with those of the Upper Egypt, of whom I am now going to speak; and who, ever since the conquest by SELIM, have preserved to themselves the possession, and even in some sort the sovereignty, of their country.

SOME Arab princes, named likewise schechs, possess all that part of Egypt, which extends on both sides the Nile, from Girge, quite to Essuaen. They are tributary to the Grand Seignior; and, as soon as a father dies, the son, who succeeds him, is obliged to pay the bashaw some purses, by way of acknowledgment. This is called purchasing the estate of his deceased father. If a father gives up, in his life time, any demesnes to his son, the latter is not bound to this payment, so long as his father is living.

THESE princes reign as sovereigns over their subjects, and are so jealous of their power, that they do not suffer

fer the bey of Girge to enter upon their lands, without having first obtained their permission; and there is no example of their having ever granted it to him, except for his going to Kene, where the bey must be present at a festival, or for his being at a conference, which they desire to have with him, in some extraordinary cases.

THEY reckon a great number of these Arab princes; but they regard, as the most considerable, those of NEGADI, of ACHMIIN, of ESNA, of FARCINI, of NICHEE, of BERBIS, and of ULADJECH. They often hold assemblies amongst themselves, in order to take the most proper measures for their preservation, and for regulating the differences that may arise amongst their subjects, and amongst one another. By this means they often terminate them amicably; but if there should be any parties too obstinate, the dispute is then decided by open war.

THEY do not permit, in case of war amongst themselves, that the government should send troops to the one or to the other party; yet they cannot hinder the government from drawing certain advantages from their quarrels, by oblique means. In reality, he that has the advantage may always be assured, that the Turks will raise him new disturbances, and will embroil him in such a manner with his neighbours, that he shall never be able to recover himself; and if it happens, that both parties should be exhausted by the war, the government will not fail to complete the ruin of both.

THE reader will easily conceive the policy, which the Turk makes use of, for reducing them. It is by sowing division amongst them. Not only the differences, that these princes have with one another; but likewise the pretensions, that children form sometimes to the succession of their father, give a handle to the Turk, and put him in a condition of doing them a mischief. The case happening, for example, that a father leaves ten children behind him, and that he

has not fixed the succession to one alone, the affair is carried to Cairo, where the bashaw does not fail to decide, that the succession shall be shared amongst all the brothers. They not being content with such a sentence, and the bashaw not being in a condition to have it executed by force, the brothers endeavour to support mutually their pretensions by way of arms: and the conquerors find themselves obliged to have recourse a-new to the bashaw, to be confirmed in the possession of their demesne; which they do not obtain, without its costing them a great deal of money. Besides that the bashaw takes occasion from thence to raise the tribute, that these princes owe to the Porte.

It must not, however, be imagined, that all this goes on as expeditiously as I have been relating it. These sorts of causes last sometimes two or three generations; and in that interval change, often, their appearances, according to different conjunctures that happen either in the government or in the country. If the bashaw is very strong, he can revive, at proper times, old contests; which is a source of money for him; and if, on the other side, an Arab prince is in a good situation, he gives himself little uneasiness at the difficulties which the bashaw, or the regency, can create him.

Those of the Arab princes, that are powerful enough to make themselves respected, are commonly flattered, and their friendship is courted by the beys and by the other officers of the portes, that have any share in the government. The posts of the latter being subject to frequent revolutions, they endeavour, whilst they are in place, to make themselves friends amongst the Arab princes, in order to find with them a safe retreat, in case the situation of their affairs should oblige them to seek a secure shelter.



## OF THE PYRAMIDS OF EGYPT.

**B**EFORE I quit Cairo, and its adjacent parts, I cannot forbear speaking of the monuments that are the most worthy of the curiosity of those, who travel into Egypt: I mean the PYRAMIDS, that have been ranked formerly in the number of the seven wonders of the world, that are admired still to the present times, and extend from Cairo quite to Meduun.

THESE superb monuments are found only in Egypt; for tho' there is seen one at Rome, which serves for a tomb to C. CESTIUS<sup>a</sup>, it can pass only for a mere imitation; and the least of those of Egypt surpasses it much in grandeur, thus it does not deserve, that one should make an exception of it from the general position; and it does not hinder us from being able to say, that pyramids are found only in Egypt.

---

<sup>a</sup> F. MONTEFAUCON describes the pyramid of CESTIUS in the following manner:

"THE pyramid of CESTIUS, which we see in going to the gate of St. PAUL, was made in imitation of the pyramids of Egypt, with this difference, that it is entirely smooth without, whereas the pyramids of Egypt go up by steps; the inside is void; in which, likewise, it differs from the pyramids of Egypt; which in a great mass have very little void space.

"THE following inscription is on the face of the pyramid;

CAIVS. CESTIVS. LVCII. FILIVS. POBLILIA. BPVLO. PRÆTOR. TRIBVNVS. PLEBIS. SEPTEMVIR. EPVLONVM.

Another inscription underneath that, and in smaller characters, is in English as follows,

*That the whole work of the pyramid was finished, agreeable to the will of the deceased, in three hundred and thirty days, according to the direction of PONTIVS MELA, son of PUBLIVS, of the Claudian tribe, who was the heir, and of POTHVS, a freed man.*

Another recent inscription shews, that the work was repaired in 1663. This pyramid has at the foot, according to the mensura-

H 3

AN-





ANOTHER general position is, that in Egypt itself we see pyramids only between Cairo and Meduun.

tion of OTTAVIO FALCONIERI, one hundred and thirty five palms, or spans.

"THE inside of the pyramid is adorned with some antique paintings. The first is of a woman sitting, who reads or sings some funeral song; for they sung at funerals, and played upon the flute, beating time upon the breast, says LUCIAN. The second is of another woman sitting, who prepares something in a bason: the third is of a woman with a chaplet of flowers, who holds in one hand a dish, and in the other a drinking-cup, to mark the repast at funerals. The fourth woman holds those flutes they played on at funeral rites. There are, moreover, in this pyramid, painted urns, and the image of Victory, who holds in one hand a crown, and in the other a diadem." tom. v. p. 124.

THE first pyramids, that HERODOTUS gives an account of, "were built by MOERIS, who made the famous lake that bore his name; the circumference of which lake, DIODORUS says, was reported to be three thousand six hundred *stadia*, or furlongs, the depth in most places fifty fathom. The use of this lake was either to supply water to the country, in case the Nile failed, or to receive the redundant waters of the Nile, and prevent a deluge. It still subsisted in the time of DIODORUS. The king, who caused it to be dug, left a place in the middle, in which he built a sepulchre, and two pyramids, each a furlong in height; the one for himself, the other for his wife, placing upon them two marble statues, sitting on a throne, imagining by these works, he should propagate to posterity an immortal memory of his goodness. The revenue of the fish of this lake he gave to his wife, for her perfumes and other ornaments; the fishing being worth to her a talent a day. For they report, there are two and twenty sorts of fish in it, and that such a multitude is taken, that those who are perpetually employed in salting them, of which there is a very great number, can hardly dispatch the work." *Bib. hist.* l. i.

"HERODOTUS, at the sight of so vast a lake, was solicitous to know where the earth was removed to in digging it; and was informed by those that dwelt near it, that the earth was carried away by means of the canal that communicated with the Nile, which would necessarily dissipate it. This he easily gave credit to; because he knew the same thing to have been practised at the city of Ninus." l. ii. c. 150.

The next pyramid that HERODOTUS gives an account of, "was the work of king CHEOPS, who was guilty of all kinds of wickedness. For having barred up all the temples, he first prohibited to sacrifice: he afterwards ordered, that all the Egyptians should  
Some,

Some, indeed, have advanced, that there were pyramids still further in Upper Egypt; but they have

---

labour for him: assigning to some the work of cutting stones out of the quarries in the Arabian mountain, and of dragging them to the Nile: to others, that of crossing the river in vessels to receive them, and bring them to the mountain that is called the Libyan. One hundred thousand men were employed in the work. Ten thousand men worked at a time, and they were relieved every three months. The time that the people were thus harassed, was ten years in making the road, along which they dragged the stones; a work, in my opinion, says HERODOTUS, of not much less labour than the pyramid itself. The length of this road is five *stadia*, or furlongs; the breadth forty cubits; the height, where it is the highest, thirty two cubits, of polished stones and animals engraven upon them. That ten years were spent likewise there in making subterraneous apartments in the hill, upon which the pyramids stand; which apartments he made as sepulchral vaults for himself, in an island which he formed by introducing a canal from the Nile. Twenty years were employed in building the pyramid itself, of which each front, for it is a square, is of eight hundred feet, and the height the same. It was made of polished stone, and exquisitely cemented; none of the stones were less than thirty feet. This pyramid was built in the manner of steps; having laid the first row, they carried up the rest of the stones with engines, made of short pieces of wood: when the stone was raised from the ground upon this row, it was put into another engine, standing upon the first row; from thence it was conveyed to the second row; by another engine to the third, and so on: for so many rows and orders of steps as there were, so many engines were there: or else they removed the engine, which was one, and easy to be carried to every particular row, as often as they wanted to take up a stone. I was willing to mention both the accounts, as they have been reported to me; therefore those parts in the pyramid were first finished which were the highest; then by degrees the rest; last of all those which were upon the ground, and the lowest. In the pyramid itself there was marked, in Egyptian letters, how much was spent on the workmen in radishes, onions, and garlick; and as the interpreter of those letters, having read them, as I well remember, told me; the whole sum was one thousand six hundred talents of silver, spent in those articles alone. If it was so, how much more must have, probably, been spent upon iron, necessary for working, and for food and cloaths for the workmen?"

POMPONIUS MELA asserts the same as HERODOTUS, with regard to the size of the stones employed in this pyramid. "And this I can grant, says Mr. GREAVES, in some, yet surely it cannot be admitted in all, unless we interpret their words, that the least stone

been deceived by false memoirs, or they were willing, out of vain-glory, to have it thought that they had penetrated into places where no one had been, and had seen there what no one had yet discovered.

THE pyramids are not situated in plains; but upon the rock, that is at the foot of the high mountains, which accompany the Nile in its course, and which make the separation betwixt Egypt and Libya. They

is thirty square (or, to speak more properly, thirty cubical) feet; which dimension, or a much greater in the exterior ones, I can without any difficulty admit."

MR. GREAVES *thinks that this account of HERODOTUS is full of difficulty.* "How, in erecting and placing of so many *machinae*, charged with such massy stones, and those continually passing over the lower degrees, could it be avoided, but that they must either unsettle them, or endanger the breaking of some portions of them? Which mutilations would have been like scars in the face of so magnificent a building."

*I own that I am of a different opinion from Mr. GREAVES; for such massy stones, as HERODOTUS has described, would not be discomposed by an engine resting upon them, and which, by the account of HERODOTUS, I take to be only the pulley. The account that DIODORUS gives of raising the stones by imaginary *χωμαίον*, heaps of earth, (engines not being then, as he supposes, invented) is too absurd to take any notice of. And the description that HERODOTUS has given, notwithstanding all the objections that have been raised to it, and which have arisen principally from misrepresenting him, appears to me very clear and sensible.*

HERODOTUS *continues to say,* "That CHEOPS arrived to such a pitch of wickedness, as, for want of money to finish the pyramid, to prostitute his own daughter: that she complied with her father's orders, and afterwards was ambitious to leave a monument of herself; and for that purpose intreated every one that lay with her to contribute a stone towards the edifice. That out of those stones it was reported that pyramid was built, which stands the middlemost of three, and is in front of the great pyramid; each side of the pyramid she built was one hundred and fifty feet." l. ii. c. 124, 5, 6.

*The account in HERODOTUS, of the king's prostituting his daughter, has been thought so full of horror that many have doubted the truth of it: but we have had in our own country an instance of as horrid a crime, in a husband's prostituting his wife, merely for his diversion. Vide State Trials; the case of MERVIN lord AUDLEY (earl of Castlehaven) in the year 1631.*

have

have been all raised with the same intention; that is to say, to serve for sepulchres<sup>b</sup>; but their architecture,

---

<sup>b</sup> DR. SHAW *says*, "That there is not an universal consent, among the ancients, for what use or intent these pyramids were designed. For PLINY asserts, that they were built for ostentation, and to keep an idle people in employment; others, which is the most received opinion, that they were to be the sepulchres of the Egyptian kings. But if CHEOPS, SUPHIS, or whoever else was the founder of the great pyramid, intended it only for his sepulchre, what occasion was there for such a narrow, crooked entrance into it; for the well, as it is called, at the end of the entrance; for the lower chamber, with a large nich or hole in the eastern wall of it; for the long narrow cavities in the walls of the upper room; or for the two anti-chambers, and the lofty gallery, with benches on each side, that introduce us into it? As the whole of the Egyptian theology was cloathed in mysterious emblems and figures, it seems reasonable to suppose, that all these turnings, apartments, and secrets in architecture, were intended for some nobler purpose (for the catacombs are plain, vaulted chambers, hewn out of the rock) and that the deity rather, *viz.* fire, which was typified in the outward form of this pile, *and from which indeed it receives its denomination of pyramid*, was to be worshiped within.

"THE second and third pyramids, built by CHEPHREN and MYCERINUS, could not be intended for their sepulchres; inasmuch as no passage being left open into them, as into the great pyramid, they must have been pulled down, and built again after their decease, before their bodies could have been there deposited. If indeed we had any authentic tradition, that these pyramids had been built, by some pious successors, over the tombs of their ancestors, there would then be less occasion to call in question an opinion, that hath been so generally received: but if no report of this nature occurs in ancient history, if the founders made no provision in them for their enterrments (which is supposed to be the principal intent of these structures) but contrived them, as far as we know, and are informed from antiquity, to be close, compact buildings, it may so far, I presume, be disputed, that the two lesser pyramids, at least, could never have been intended for sepulchres." p. 417.

MR. GRAVES *is of a different opinion from doctor SHAW, and says*, "That these pyramids were intended for sepulchres and monuments of the dead, is the constant opinion of most authors, which have writ of this argument: DIODORUS expressly tells us, that CHEMMIS, or CEPHREN, although they designed (these two greater) for their sepulchres, yet it happened, that neither of them were buried in them. STRABO judges all those near Memphis to

as

as well in the inside as without, is extremely different, with regard to the distribution, the materials, and the grandeur.

---

have been the sepulchres of kings. *Forty stadia from the city [Memphis] there is a certain brow of an hill, in which are many pyramids, the sepulchres of kings.* And in particular he calls another, near the lake of Moeris, *the sepulchre of IMANDES.* To which also the writings of the Arabians are consonant, who make the three greater the monuments of SAURID, HOUGIB, and FAZPARINDOUN. And if none of these authorities were extant, yet the tomb found in the greatest pyramid to this day of CHEOPS, as HERODOTUS names him, or CHEMMIS, according to DIODORUS, puts it out of controversy; which may further be confirmed by the testimony of IBN ABD ALHOKM an Arabian, where he discourses of the wonders of Egypt; who relates, that after ALMAMON the calif of Babylon had caused this pyramid to be opened (about eight hundred years since) *they found in it, towards the top, a chamber, with a hollow stone, in which there was a statue like a man, and within it a man, upon whom was a breast-plate of gold set with jewels; upon this breast-plate was a sword of inestimable price, and at his head a carbuncle of the bigness of an egg, shining like the light of the day, and upon him were characters written with a pen, which no man understood.* v. i. p. 59. the learned Dr. BIRCH's edition.

DR. POOCOKE gives this account of the pyramids:

“THE most remarkable pyramids which are taken notice of by the ancients, must have been to the north west of Memphis; they are called now the pyramids of Gize, and according to the description of the ancients, are towards the brow of the hills; for the low hills extending to the south east, on the west side of the Delta, and near to his place, they here set out for about two miles to the east, and then running south, the pyramids are built towards the north east angle, the hills being computed to be about one hundred feet high above the plain, and are of such free stone as the pyramids are built with.

“HERODOTUS observes, that they made a causeway of stone, five furlongs in length, for bringing materials. He adds, that it was made of polished stones, adorned with the figures of beasts. At this time there is a causeway from that part, extending about one thousand yards in length, and twenty feet wide, built of hewn stone. The length of it agreeing so well with the account of HERODOTUS, is a strong confirmation that this causeway has been kept up ever since, tho' some of the materials of it may have been changed, all being now built with free-stone.

“THE pyramid was built, according to HERODOTUS, by CHEOPS, king of Egypt; DIODORUS calls him CHEMMIS or CHEM-  
SOME



SOME of them are open; others ruined; and the greatest part of them are closed; but there is none, but what has been damaged in some of their parts.

BES: The former says it was eight hundred Greek feet square, the latter seven hundred; STRABO less than six hundred; and GREAVES, measuring it very exactly, found it to be six hundred ninety three English feet; so that the area takes up a little more than eleven acres. The perpendicular height he found to be four hundred and ninety nine feet, the inclined plain being equal to its basis, the angles and base making an equilateral triangle. GREAVES found the measure at top thirteen feet; DIODORUS says it was nine feet; those who have made it more are not to be credited; and it is possible that one tier of stone may have been taken away. There are on the top nine stones, two being wanting at the angles, and the two upper steps are not perfect; nor could I see any sign in the middle of a statue having been fixed there. The upper tier of stones not being entire, I measured two steps below the top, and it was twenty six feet on the north side, and thirty on the west; so that either the pyramid is not square, or it inclines with a greater angle to the west and east, than to the north and south. The number of steps have been related very differently; from two hundred and seven, GREAVES's number, to two hundred and sixty, the number of ALBERT LEWENTSEIN; but as MAILLET, who also was very exact, counted two hundred and eight, it is probable the number of the steps is two hundred and seven, or eight, tho' I counted them two hundred and twelve. The steps are from two feet and a half to four feet high, not being so high towards the top as at the bottom, and broad in proportion to their height, being placed, as GREAVES observes, so as that a line stretched from the bottom to the top, would touch the angle of every step. It is thought that this, as well as the other pyramids, was cased with a finer stone on the outside, because it is said that not only the mortar has been seen in which the stones were fixed, but also some pieces of white marble sticking to the mortar, which they suppose were left on their taking away the stone for some other use; and this seems to be intimated by HERODOTUS, who says that this pyramid was built at first with steps.

"It may be looked on as a very extraordinary thing, how the entrance into the pyramid should be found out; which it is said was an enterprize of the calif MAHOMET, who lived in the year eight hundred twenty seven of the Christian æra; but without doubt this prince was informed of every thing related by ancient authors, with regard to these extraordinary buildings; that they were the sepulchres of the kings of Egypt, and that, as STRABO relates, there was in the middle of the pyramids a stone that might be taken out to open a way to the passage that led to the tombs."

p. 41.

It



It is easily conceived, that they could not have been all raised at the same time. The prodigious quantity

F. VANSLEB observes, "That all the pyramids have an entrance that leads to a low alley, which is very long; and at the end is a chamber, where the ancient Egyptians placed the bodies of those persons for whom the pyramids were built. This entrance is not to be seen in every one of the pyramids, because the wind has stopped them with sand. I saw upon some of them some hieroglyphic characters, but I had not time to write them out.

"I took notice, that all the pyramids were built in very good order; and that each of the three greatest were at the head of ten lesser, which are not well to be distinguished, because of the heaps of sand: one may yet imagine, to see the place, that in former ages there have been here an hundred pyramids, little and great.

"I took notice that they are all built upon an even rock, covered over with white sand; so that it is very probable that the stones have been taken from the place, and not brought from far, as some travellers imagine, and old writers: for the greatest is nothing but a rock cut out as a pyramid, and covered over with a wall of stone.

"I took notice, that of all the stones of the greatest, there is scarce one entire, but either worn out with the weather and time, or broken by some other accident; so that, tho' one may ascend on all sides to the top, yet not in all places with the same ease.

"I HAVE taken notice that none of the pyramids are alike, or perfectly square; but that all have two sides longer than the others. I intended to measure the greatest; for that purpose I had with me a string of about thirty land yards; but because the winds have heaped about it mountains of sand, I could not possibly draw a line strait from one angle to the other.

"THE pyramids are not built with marble, as some say; but with a white sandy stone, very hard.

"THE greatest hath but two hundred and six steps; and though THEVENOT saith it had two hundred and eight; this proceeds from his not taking notice that two steps are broken into four.

"ON the top of the greatest pyramid there was anciently a statue, or *colosse*. This appears, because it is not sharp as the others, but plain; and there are yet to be seen great pits, which were to keep fast the *colosse* from falling.

"THE sides of the pyramids are not equal; for in the greatest it is visible, and so in the others, that the north side is longer than that which stretches from east to west.

"IN all the pyramids there are very deep wells cut in the rock, square, as I have seen in more than ten." p. 84.

of

of materials, that was necessary for them, renders the impossibility extremely manifest. The perfection, with which the last are built, shews it in like manner; for they surpass greatly the first, both in grandeur and magnificence. All that can be advanced as certain, is, that their fabrick is of the remotest antiquity, and even more early than the times of the most ancient historians, whose writings have been transmitted to us. That which these authors say of the time of the building of the pyramids, is founded on traditions more fabulous than probable. It is a thing as wonderful as it is certain, that they subsist still to our time, tho' the epocha of their beginning was lost, even at the time that the first Greek philosophers travelled into Egypt.

If any one should think of maintaining, that the most ancient pyramids must have been founded at the same time as the tower of Babel, the notion would be thought a little extravagant. But the pyramids would at least have this advantage, that they subsist still at present; whereas there remain to us scarce any footsteps of that ancient tower.

It appears probable to me, that the origin of the pyramids preceded that of the hieroglyphics. And as they had no longer the knowledge of those characters, at the time that the Persians made the conquest of Egypt, we must absolutely throw back the first epocha of the pyramids into times so remote in antiquity, that vulgar chronology would find a difficulty to fix the æra of them.

If I conjecture that the pyramids, even the latest, have been raised before they had the use of hieroglyphics, I do not assert it without foundation. Who can persuade himself, that the Egyptians would have left such superb monuments, without the least hieroglyphical inscription? They, who, as one may observe every where, were profuse of hieroglyphics, upon all the edifices of any consideration? Now we perceive none, neither in the inside, nor on the outside of the  
pyra-

pyramids<sup>c</sup>; not even upon the ruins of the temples of the second and third pyramid: Is not this a proof, that the origin of the pyramids is antecedent to that of the hieroglyphics, which are however considered as the first characters they made use of in Egypt?

THERE runs amongst the people, that inhabits Egypt at present, a tradition, that there were anciently in the country giants; and that they raised, without much difficulty, the pyramids, the vast palaces, and the temples, whose remains occasion at present our admiration.

THIS fable scarce deserves to be confuted. Its falsity appears at first sight. But to destroy absolutely what might be said in its favour, I shall observe, that if the country had been formerly peopled by giants, the entrances of the caves, from whence they have drawn stones for these edifices, must have been greater than they are: that the gates of the buildings, which we have mentioned, and which subsist in our time, would have had, in like manner, more height and breadth, for the more easy going in and out of the giants; and that the passages of the pyramids, so

<sup>c</sup> F. VANSLEB observes, however, in the passage I have quoted before from him, that he saw upon some of the pyramids hieroglyphic characters, but had not time to write them out. It was in the year 1673 that VANSLEB saw those hieroglyphic characters, which it is plain were obliterated at the time that Mr. NORDEN was in Egypt in 1737. Why might not the same thing have happened to other hieroglyphics, that were originally inscribed on the pyramids? And therefore the argument is not conclusive to prove, that the pyramids were antecedent to the use of hieroglyphics. HERODOTUS mentions several inscriptions, that he saw on the pyramids, but they likewise have vanished long since; and we see every day in Westminster abby, how soon the air with moisture will deface the flattery of sepulchral inscriptions. "Justissimo casu, as PLINY expresses himself, obliteratedis tantæ vanitatis auctoribus." The antiquity of hieroglyphics, even so early as the beginning of human society itself, has been fully demonstrated by the learned Dr. WARBURTON, *Divine legation*, V. ii. and *Occasional reflections*, Part I.

narrow at present, that scarcely a man of our times can drag himself along, lying on his belly, would have been by no means proper for men of such a stature, as is supposed.

BESIDES, nothing gives us a more just idea of the stature of the men of that time, than the urn, or the sarcophagus, that we see in the greatest and last pyramid, which is the nearest to Cairo. This existing and incontestable proof destroys all the extravagant ideas, that might be formed of those giants. It determines the size of the body of the prince, for whom the pyramid has been built; and the passages of that pyramid shew, that the workmen have not been of a larger size than the prince, since the entrance and the egress scarce give sufficient room for men of such a stature as they have at present.

THE principal pyramids are at the east south east of Gize, a village situated on the western shore of the Nile, as I have already observed; and as several authors have pretended, that the city of Memphis was built in this place, it is the reason that they commonly call them *The pyramids of Memphis*.

THERE are four of them, that deserve the greatest attention of the curious; for, tho' we see seven or eight others in the neighbourhood, they are nothing in comparison of the former, especially since they have been opened<sup>d</sup>, and almost entirely ruined. The

---

<sup>d</sup> *I have mentioned before, from Dr. POCOCKE, who cites STRABO, "That there was in the middle of the pyramids a stone, that might be taken out to open a way to the passage that led to the tombs. This entrance was kept secret, and the pyramid appeared externally to be entirely closed up. The reason of these buildings being thus, without any appearing entrance, seems to have been rightly assigned by M. MAILLET. The favourite passion, says he, of the ancient Egyptians, was to make themselves in their life time sepulchres, where after their death their bodies might be secure, not only from corruption, but moreover from all the attacks that the maliciousness and violence of men might have contrived against such sacred repositories. This passion was not peculiar to*

four principal are almost upon the same diagonal line, and distant one from another about four hundred paces. Their four faces correspond precisely to the four cardinal points, the north, the south, the east, and the west. I have given two views of these ancient monuments; the one taken from *ATTER-ENNABI*, or from the great mosque of *Deiretiin*: the other drawn from the house of the *Kaimakan*, at a league distance.

THE two most northerly pyramids are the greatest, and have five hundred feet perpendicular height. The two others are much less, but have some particularities which occasion their being examined and admired.

THE situation of the pyramids, with their adjacent parts, shews in what manner they have been raised upon the rock, at the foot of the mountains. The rock not being throughout even, they have smoothed it by the chissel; as we discover in several places; and this artificial plain has a sloping on the north side, and on the east side; which favoured on the latter the making of divers causeways, that gave conveniency of transporting the materials necessary for the pyramids. This plain may have fourscore feet of perpendicular elevation, above the horizon of the ground, that is always overflowed by the Nile; and it has a Danish league in circumference.

---

the vulgar; it extended itself even to sovereigns, who, much more than their subjects, were interested, that their bodies after their death might not be exposed to any insult. The grandees and the lords of their court, who shared their esteem or their favor, had the same interest. Insomuch that we may say that in this nation, every one sought the most certain means for preserving themselves after their death, in proportion to the honours and pleasures, that their rank, their riches, their dignity and employments procured them in their life. And with regard to the design they had of securing their bodies from any insult, they could not have contrived more certain methods for succeeding in it, than those they have employed in the structure of these famous monuments.



THOUGH this plain is a continual rock, it is however almost all covered with a flying sand, which the wind brings thither from the high mountains adjacent. They find in this sand a great number of shells and petrified oysters, which is so much the more surprising, as the Nile never rises high enough to overflow this plain : besides that, though it should reach thither, it could not be considered as the cause of them, since this river neither carries, nor has throughout its whole course, any shell-fish\*. It might be asked, from whence come these shells of such kind as one finds on the pyramids themselves? Mr. SCHEUCHZER would, I think, have some difficulty to suppose, that these are remains of the universal flood. In that case he would be obliged to say, that the pyramids had been able to support themselves against so terrible a deluge. Would not the miracle be thought by him too great? I shall add that, in this quarter, one finds those famous flint stones, which, on account of the singularity of their colours, are much more esteemed

\* "ALTHOUGH there are no shell-fish in the Nile, yet they abound in the Red-sea; where MAILLET observes, there are oysters of the mother-of-pearl kind, that are of an exquisite taste." And Dr. SHAW says, "That there would be no end of enumerating the great diversity of shells which adorn the banks, or lye in the shallows, of the Red sea. The *concha Veneris* is seen in a great variety of spots and sizes: whilst the turbinated and bivalve shells of all kinds, are not only common and in great luxuriancy of colours, but are also sometimes so exceedingly capacious, that there have been found some, of the former sort, which were a foot and a half long, and of the latter, that were as much in diameter. The very furniture and utensils of their houses are furnished by them; the *nautilus* supplying the place of a cup, and the *buccinum* that of a jar, whilst the *concha imbricata* is what they usually serve up their food in." p. 387.

Now the distance of the Red-sea from the pyramids is not so great, but that violent winds, which are frequent in such countries, and carry away whole mountains of sand, might well be supposed to take up likewise some of the smaller shells, and deposite them on the pyramids.

I

than



than the agat, and of which they make at Cairo snuff-boxes, and handles for knives.

THE most northern of these great pyramids is the only one that is open ; and as it is that which we meet with the first, I shall begin my description with it : after which I shall examine what occurs the most remarkable in the others.

THE figure of a pyramid is so well known, that it would be superfluous to stop in describing it. I shall observe, however, by the by, that it is the most solid figure, that it is possible to give to the main body of a building. There is no way to ruin it, but by beginning at the top. It rests upon a basis too firm to be attacked on that part ; and whoever would undertake it, would find as much difficulty, as there was to raise it <sup>f</sup>.

---

<sup>f</sup> SIR W. TEMPLE *has elegantly applied the figure of a pyramid to forms of government, in the following manner.*

“ THE safety and firmness of any frame of government, may be best judged by the rules of *architecture*, which teach us, that the pyramid is of all figures the firmest, and least subject to be shaken or overthrown by any concussions or accidents from the earth or air ; and it grows still so much the firmer, by how much broader the bottom and sharper the top.

“ THAT government, which takes in the consent of the greatest number of the people, and consequently their desires and resolutions to support it, may justly be said to have the broadest bottom, and to stand upon the largest compass of ground ; and if it terminate in the authority of one single person, it may likewise be said to have the narrowest top, and so to make the figure of the firmest sort of pyramid.

“ ON the contrary, a government which, by alienating the affections, losing the opinions, and crossing the interests of the people, leaves out of its compass the greatest part of their consent ; may justly be said, in the same degree it thus loses ground, to narrow its bottom ; and if this be done to serve the ambition, humor the passion, satisfy the appetites, or advance the power or interest not only of one man, but of two, or more, or many that come to share in the government : by this means the top may be justly said to grow broader, as the bottom narrower by the other. Now by the same degrees that either of these happen, the stability of the figure is by the same lessened and impaired ; so as at certain degrees it begins to grow subject to accidents of wind and of weather ;

It

It is necessary to be very near this northern pyramid; and, as I may say, measure its own greatness by itself, to be able to discern the extent of this enormous mass. It is, as well as the others, both great and small, without any artificial foundations. Nature has furnished it with them, by means of the rock, which is in itself strong enough to support the weight, which truly is immense.

THE external part of the pyramid is chiefly built of great square stones, cut in the rock, which is along the Nile, and where, even at this day, we see the caves, from whence they have taken them. The size of these stones is not equal; but they have all the figure of a prism. The architect has caused them all to be cut in this manner, that they may be placed one upon another, and be as it were pasted together. It might be thought, that each range should form a step round the pyramid. But it is not so in reality. The architect has only observed the pyramidal figure, without troubling himself about the regularity of the steps.

THESE stones are nothing near so hard as might be imagined, on account of their having subsisted so long a time. They owe their preservation properly to the climate, where they are; which is not subject to frequent rains. Notwithstanding this advantage, one observes, principally on the north side, that they are rotten: so that these stones are very far from being so hard as those of Brême, and of Bentheim. Their divers external lays are compacted only by the weight itself of the stones, without lime, without lead, and without cramps of any metal. But, as to the body of the pyramid, which is full of irregular stones, they have been obliged to employ there a mortar, mixed of lime, earth, and clay. This is clearly remarked at the entrance of the second passage of the first pyramid, which has been opened by force.

---

and at certain others, it is sure to fall of itself, or by the least shake that happens, to the ground." *Essay upon government.*

ONE does not perceive the least mark, to prove that it has been coated by marble; for tho' certain travellers have conjectured so, by seeing the summit of the second pyramid coated with granite, there is so little appearance of this, that we find not in the steps the least remains of granite or of marble, and which it would not have been possible to take away in such a manner that none of it should have continued. It is true, that about this pyramid, and about some others, we perceive a great quantity of little pieces of granite, and of white marble; but that does not appear to me to be a proof, that the pyramids have been coated by them. Such sort of materials had been employed in the inside, and in some temples, on the outside: thus it is more natural to presume, that these remains are owing rather to the cutting of stones for employing them, or to the ruin of temples, than to the detached pieces of marble from the coating of the pyramids.

THE pyramid, that I am describing, is three hours voyage from Old Cairo. To go thither, when the Nile is low, you take water near the island of Rodda, and get yourself conveyed to Gize, by means of a barque. The distance from thence is no more than a musquet shot, and this you travel by land. But when the waters have swollen to their highest pitch, you may go by water from Old Cairo quite to the rock, on which the pyramids are built.

Its entrance is on the north side. At its four angles, it is easily perceived, that the lower stones are the first angular and fundamental stones; but beyond that, quite to the middle of each face, the wind has formed a slope of sand, which on the north side rises so high, that it gives a commodious ascent quite to the entrance of the pyramid.

THIS entrance, as likewise that of all the others, has been contrived under the *cymatium* of the pyramid, about forty-eight feet above the horizon, and a little more

more inclined to the east than to the west. In order to discover it, they have cut, quite to that place, the shelving of the pyramid.

THE architrave of the first passage, which begins at this opening, seems to promise a portal; but after having caused it to be cut, without finding behind any thing but stones, like to those which have been made use of for building the pyramid, they gave over the attempt of seeking any other opening, than that which they had already discovered.

THIS opening leads successively to five different passages, which, tho' running upwards and downwards, and horizontally, tend all towards the south, and terminate into two chambers, the one underneath, and the other in the midst of the pyramid.

ALL these passages, excepting the fourth, are almost of the same size, namely three feet and a half square. They are likewise all of the same kind of fabric, and lined on the four sides, by great stones of white marble, so polished, that they would be unpassable, had it not been for the artifice they have used. And even though we find there at present, from step to step, little holes cut for resting the feet in, it costs still a great deal of trouble to advance forwards; and he that makes a false step, may depend upon it that he will fall backwards, in spite of his endeavours, quite to the place from whence he set out.

It is pretended, that all these passages have been closed, and filled up by great square stones, which had been introduced thither, after the whole work was finished. This at least is certain, that the extremity of the second passage has been stopped up; for we see still two great square pieces of marble, which cut off the communication between that and the first passage. But, to say the truth, it is not large enough at the entrance, for a man easily to pass; and still less for introducing so great a quantity of large stones as were necessary for stopping up the other passages.

WHEN you have passed the two first, you meet with a resting place, which has on the right hand an opening, for a little passage, or well<sup>s</sup>, in which one finds nothing but bats, and another little resting-place. After having suffered there a good deal of inconvenience, you have the disagreeableness of not seeing its outlet, on account of the sand which stops it up.

FROM the first resting-place, which I have mentioned, the third passage leads to a chamber of a moderate size, half filled with stones, that have been taken from the wall on the right, in order to open there another passage, which terminates not far distant in a niche. This chamber has a sharp-raised vault, and is throughout coated with granite, formerly perfectly polished; but at present extremely blackened by the smok of torches, that are made use of for visiting this chamber.

AFTER having returned, by the same way, you climb up to the fourth passage, which is furnished with a raised way on each side. The passage is very high, and has an arch that is almost *sharp-raised*.

THE fifth passage leads to the upper chamber; and before you arrive at it, you find in the middle of the passage a little apartment, which is somewhat higher than the passage, but not wider. It has on each side an incision made in the stone, probably in order to introduce there those stones, which were designed to close up the entrance of the chamber, which, like the

<sup>s</sup> " In pyramide maximâ est intus puteus octoginta et sex cubitorum, flumen illo admissum arbitrantur." PLIN. l. xxxvi. c. 12.

" THIS well, says GREAVES, may have been the passage to those secret vaults, mentioned but not described by HERODOTUS, that were hewn out of the rock, over which this pyramid is erected. By my measure, sounding it with a line, it contains twenty feet in depth; and has been since PLINY's time so choaked with rubbish as to occasion the different mensurations."

M. MAILLET imagines, " That this well was only a passage for the workmen at the time of the building the pyramid."

preceding, is coated, and covered with great stones of granite.

ONE finds, on the left side, a large urn, or, to speak more properly, a sarcophagus of granite, which has merely the figure of a parallelepiped, without any ornament besides. All that can be said of it is, that this piece is very well hollowed, and that it sounds like a bell, when you strike it with a key.

To the north of the sarcophagus, you perceive a very deep hole, made since the building of the pyramid was finished. The reason of it is not known: It is however to be presumed, with a great deal of probability, that there was underneath some cavity; for it looks as if the pavement had fallen of itself, after the foundation of the chamber had sunk in.

THERE is nothing else to see in this chamber, unless it be two very little passages, the one on the north side, the other on the south. It is not possible to determine their use, nor their depth, because they are choaked up with stones, and other things, which the curious have thrown into them, in order to know how far they go.

THE three other great pyramids, as I have already remarked above, are situated almost on the same line as the preceding, and may be about five or six hundred paces one from another.

THAT which is the nearest to the first, and which is commonly called the second, appears to be higher than the first; but that is owing to the foundation, which is more elevated; for in other respects they are both of the same size. They are likewise entirely alike<sup>h</sup>, and differ only in this, that the second is so

---

<sup>h</sup> “ PLINY makes the difference in their height to be considerable; for assigning eight hundred and eighty three feet to the former, he allows to the side of the basis of this but seven hundred and thirty seven.” l. xxxvi. c. 12.

According to Mr. GREAVES's observation, “ The stones are of  
I 4 well



well closed, that you perceive not the least mark which shews that it has been opened. Its summit has been coated, on the four sides, with granite, so well joined, and so well polished, that the boldest man would not attempt to go up it. We see, it is true, here and there, some incisions in the stones; but as they are not made at equal distances, and do not continue very high, it is enough to take away the desire that any one might have of attempting to ascend it.

On the eastern side you see the ruins of a temple, the stones of which are of a prodigious size; and on the western side, at about thirty feet deep, there is a passage hollowed in the rock, upon which the pyramid rests; which shews that it was necessary to lower the rock so much for forming the plain.

THE third pyramid is not so high as the two former, by an hundred feet; but in other respects it resembles them entirely as to the structure. It is closed like the second, and is without any coating. We find to the north east a number of great stones; but it is probable, that they have served rather for the temple than the pyramid. This temple, situated on the eastern side, like that of the second pyramid, is more distinguishable in its ruins, than the other. The stones of it are likewise of a prodigious size; and you perceive, that the entrance was on the eastern side.

As to the fourth pyramid, it is still one hundred feet less than the third. It is likewise without coating, closed, and resembles the others, but without any temple like the first. It has however one particular deserving remark; which is, that its summit is terminated by a single great stone, which seems to have served as a pedestal. It is, moreover, situated

---

a white colour, nothing so great and vast as those of the first and fairest pyramid; the sides rise not with degrees like that, but are all of them plain and smooth."

out

out of the line of the others, being a little more to the west.

THESE four great pyramids are furrounded by a number of others that are smaller, and which, for the most part, have been opened. There are three of them to the east of the first pyramid; and two amongst them are ruined in such a manner, that one discerns not in them even the chamber. To the west of the same pyramid, we find a great number of others, but all likewise ruined.

OPPOSITE the second pyramid, there are five or six of them, which have likewise been all opened; and, in one, I have observed a square well, thirty feet deep. All the rest is filled with sand and stones.

ABOUT three hundred paces to the east of the second pyramid, you see the head of the great and famous SPHINX, which I have taken care to delineate<sup>i</sup>.

---

<sup>i</sup> DR. POCOCKE *observes*, "That this SPHINX is cut out of a solid rock. This extraordinary monument is said to have been the sepulchre of AMASIS, though I think it is mentioned by none of the ancient authors, except PLINY, l. xxxvi. c. 12. I found by the quadrant that it is about twenty seven feet high, the neck and head only being above ground; the lower part of the neck, or the beginning of the breast is thirty three feet wide, and it is twenty feet from the forepart of the neck to the back; and thence to the hole in the back, it is seventy five feet, the hole being five feet long; from which to the tail, if I mistake not, it is thirty feet; which something exceeds PLINY's account, who says, that it is one hundred and thirteen feet long. The sand is risen up in such a manner, that the top of the back only is seen; some persons have lately got to the top of the head, where they found a hole, which probably served for the arts of the priests in uttering oracles; as that in the back might be to descend to the apartments beneath." p. 46.

Terruit Aoniam volucris, leo, virgo, triformis

Sphinx, volucris pennis, pedibus fera, fronte puella.

AUSONIUS.

M. MAILLET *is of opinion*, "That the union of the head of a virgin, with the body of a lion, is a symbol of what happens in this country, when the sun is in the signs of Leo and Virgo, and the Nile overflows." *The wings were probably added to the Sphinx, as emblematical of the fuga temporum.*

WE

WE discover likewise, in the neighbourhood of the pyramids, some sepulchral grottos; and upon some of them I have observed hieroglyphics, which prove that these sepultures were not made till long after the foundation of the pyramids. They are all open, and stripped of all that had been deposited in them. I visited several of them, and found nothing but the half of a little idol, made of earthen ware, and such as we find at present in great quantities in the neighbourhood of the pyramids near Saccara, in the quarter that is called *the mummy country*.

To go and see these pyramids, as indeed the other antiquities of Egypt, they choose the winter season, that is to say, from the month of November to the middle of April. That is the most proper time; the country is then every where dry; whereas in summer, the inundation of the Nile renders the greatest part of the antiquities inaccessible, because they want, in that country, little boats commodious for going wherever you have a mind.

ANOTHER reason, moreover, renders the visiting the antiquities difficult and even hazardous during the summer; which is, that the Arabs descend, in that season, from the mountains, in order to encamp along the Nile; and as justice has not the liberty at that time to approach them, they make no scruple of plundering strangers.

WHEN you undertake, in the winter, to go and visit the pyramids, you endeavour to form a company, as well to make the tour with more agreeableness, as to be in a condition to observe every thing in a better manner. Those that have already been there, give an emulation to the stranger by their discourses, and assist him to make more exact researches, than he would do if he was alone. Indeed, one is exposed to hear sometimes some absurd reasonings; yet there is always some advantage to be got by a person that is able to make a due distinction of what is told him.

Is

IF you set out from Cairo, you make this tour in one day, or two; and supposing that you would make it in two, you are mounted upon asses, for every one of which you pay eleven parats. You then go across the city; pass afterwards the calisch, which at this season is dry; go across likewise the island of Rodda, where, on the left side, and behind the Mekkias, you take a barque, in which are carried likewise the asses. You are landed at Gize, a village directly opposite Cairo. You do not stay there: but continue your journey a league further, where you lodge in the house of the Kaïmakan, who has always some chambers to spare. You pass the night there, though very indifferently; for you find neither beds, nor any other conveniencies; besides that, you are pestered there by bugs; but a night is soon passed over, and you make shift as well as you can.

THE next day in the morning, after having paid a sequin for so miserable a lodging, you set out for the pyramids. Before you arrive there, you pass through another little village, near which there is commonly a camp of Arabs. You take with you two of them, that have a knowledge of the pyramids; and continue on your journey, till you are arrived at the foot of the mountains, near which the pyramids are situated; you then alight, to walk the rest of the way.

WHEN you are got to the entrance of the first pyramid, you discharge some pistols, to fright away the bats: after which you make the two Arabs enter, and remove the sand, which almost entirely stops up the passage.

AFTER these necessary preliminaries, you must have the precaution to strip yourself entirely, and undress even to your shirt, on account of the excessive heat, that there constantly is in the pyramids<sup>k</sup>. You enter,

---

<sup>k</sup> *The following anecdote from Mr. GREAVES will not be unacceptable, I imagine, to the reader; as it contains the conversation he had on this subject with the incomparable Doctor HARVEY.*

in this condition, into the passage; and every one has a wax candle in his hand; for the torches are not lighted till you are in the chambers, for fear of causing too much smoak.

WHEN you are arrived at the extremity of the gallery, where the passage is forced, you find an opening,

---

“THAT I and my company should have continued so many hours in the pyramid, and live (whereas we found no inconvenience) was much wondered at by Dr. HARVEY, his Majesty's learned physician. For, said he, seeing we never breathe the same air twice, but still a new air is required to a new respiration (the *succus alibilis* of it being spent in every expiration) it could not be, but by long breathing we should have spent the aliment of that small stock of air within, and have been stifled, unless there were some secret tunnels conveying it to the top of the pyramid, whereby it might pass out, and make way for fresh air to come in at the entrance below. To which I returned him this answer: that it might be doubted, whether the same numerical air could not be breathed more than once; and whether the *succus* and aliment of it could be spent in one single respiration; seeing those *urinatores*, or divers under water for sponges in the Mediterranean sea, and those for pearls in the *sinus Arabicus* and *Persicus*, continuing above half an hour under water, must needs often breathe in and out the same air. He gave me an ingenious answer, that they did it by the help of sponges filled with oil, which still corrected and fed this air; the which oil being once evaporated, they were able to continue no longer, but must ascend up, or die: an experiment most certain and true. Wherefore I gave him this second answer, that the fuliginous air we breathed out in the pyramid, might pass through those galleries we came up, and so through the strait neck or entrance leading into the pyramid; and by the same, fresh air might enter in and come up to us. For as for any *tubuli* to let out the fuliginous air at the top of the pyramid, none could be discovered, within or without. He replied, they might be so small, as that they could not easily be discerned, and yet might be sufficient to make way for the air, being a thin and subtile body. To which I answered, that the less they were, the sooner they would be obstructed with those tempests of sand, to which these deserts are frequently exposed; and therefore the narrow entrance into the pyramid is often so choaked up with drifts of sand (which I may term the rain of the deserts) that there is no entrance into it; wherefore we hire Moors to open the passage, and to remove the sands, before we can enter into the pyramid. With which he rested satisfied.”

which

which has barely a foot and a half in height, and two feet in breadth. It is, however, through this hole, that you are obliged to pass, by creeping. The traveller commonly lays himself on the ground; and the two Arabs, that went before, take each one of his legs, and drag him thus through this difficult passage, over sand and dust. Luckily this passage is no more than two ells in length: otherwise this toil would be insupportable to any one that was not accustomed to it.

AFTER having passed this streight, you find a large place, where you commonly take breath, and make use of some refreshments. This gives courage for penetrating into the second gallery, which is well worthy of observation.

THESE passages, as I have already mentioned, are very slippery. Luckily they have cut, from step to step, round holes, which cause you to advance commodiously enough, though always stooping.

AT the end of the second passage there is a resting place; at the right hand of which is the opening, which gives an outlet into the well; not by means of any steps, but a perpendicular pipe, and pretty much as chimney-sweepers descend in a chimney.

AT the extremity of the resting place begins the third gallery, which leads to the inferior chamber. It runs horizontally, and in a strait line. You find, before the chamber, some stones, with which the way is embarrassed; but you get over that difficulty, although with a little trouble.

ALL the inside of the chamber is, in like manner, covered with stones; and whoever would undertake to examine the way, through which they have drawn them, would expose himself to the same ceremony that is practised in passing from the first gallery to the second; for it is a forced passage, narrow, and little frequented. There are but very few that have the curiosity to enter into it, as it is known that the way  
does



does not reach far, and that there is nothing to see in it but a niche.

WHEN you have visited the lower chamber, you return back again, along the horizontal passage, to get to the resting place, which deprives the fourth gallery of its acute angle, by which it joined the second gallery, and obliges you to ascend upwards, by fastening your feet in some notches, made on each side of the wall. It is by this means that you arrive at the fourth gallery, that goes with an ascent. You advance on with crouching. For though it is twenty-two feet in height, and has a raised way on each side, it is, however, so steep and so slippery, that if you happen to fail of the holes, made for facilitating the ascent, you slide backwards, and return, in spite of yourself, quite to the resting place.

THESE difficulties surmounted, you repose yourself a little at the end of the gallery, where you meet with a little platform. You must afterwards begin again to climb. But as you presently find a new opening, where you can keep yourself erect, you soon forget that trouble, by contemplating a sort of a little room, which at first is no more than a palm's breadth larger than the galleries, but it enlarges itself afterwards on both sides; and at length, by stooping yourself for the last time, you pass the remainder of the fifth gallery, which leads, in an horizontal line, to the upper saloon, of which I have before given the description.

WHEN you are in this saloon, you commonly make some discharges of a pistol, to give yourself the pleasure of hearing a noise, that resembles thunder; and as there is then no hope of discovering more than what others have already remarked, you resume the way by which you came, and return in the same manner, as well as with the same difficulty, chiefly on account of the quantity of stones and sand that embarrasses the entrance.

As soon as you are got out of the pyramid, you dress  
your-

yourself; wrap yourself up well; and drink a good glass full of strong liquor; which preserves you from the pleurisy, that the sudden change from an extremely hot air to a more temperate, might occasion. Afterwards, when you have regained your natural heat, you mount up to the top of the pyramid, in order to have a prospect from thence of the country round about, which is charming to behold. You there perceive, as well as at the entrance, and in the chambers, the names of abundance of persons, that have visited, at different times, this pyramid, and who were willing to transmit to posterity the memory of their travels.

AFTER having well considered this first pyramid, you take leave of it, and approach the second, which is very soon dispatched, because it has not been opened. You see there the ruins of a temple, that it has on the east side; and, descending insensibly, you arrive at the SPHINX, whose enormous size attracts your admiration, and at the same time you conceive a sort of indignation at those, who have had the brutality to disfigure strangely its nose. You visit likewise the other pyramids, both great and small, and the adjacent grottos.

If you want any other subject to satisfy your curiosity, you need only approach two antique bridges, which are situated to the east a quarter *rhumb* north of Gize, and to the north a quarter *rhumb* west of the pyramids. They are raised upon a plain, every year overflowed, at the time of the increase of the waters of the Nile, at about half a league from the mountains, and at the same distance from the first pyramid.

THE first of these bridges extends north and south, and the second east and west. They know not at present the use of them. Their situation, in a tract of country that is not more exposed to the waters, than the other plains, gives some surprize; and it is not possible to conceive the reason of their foundation,  
unless

unless we suppose, that there was formerly a califch in that place.

THEIR fabrick, and the inscriptions that we read on them, shew, that they are the works of the Saracens. That which extends from the north to the south has ten arches upon two hundred and forty one feet in length, and twenty feet four inches in breadth. Their height above the horizon is twenty two feet. They are built with great free-stones, almost as soft as that of Bentheim.

THESE two bridges, distant from each other four hundred paces, have adjoining a wall of bricks, in the manner of a mole, and which begins at each extremity of the two bridges, but terminates in nothing.

WHEN you have finished the examination of all these antiquities, you return back to the city, in the same manner as you went, except that you make the rout all at once without stopping any where.

THEY always take care, in this tour, to be accompanied by a janissary. Tho' he does no great service, yet his presence occasions in the people certain respects, and serves at least to spare you the trouble of turning out of the way, to give it to those that you meet. You pay him, for this journey, a fendoucli, or a sequin. The Arabs, that have accompanied the travellers, are well paid when you give them twenty parats a man; insomuch that this tour may cost in all four sequins for the whole company, without including in it provisions, which it is necessary not to forget to furnish yourself with; for it is a chance, if you find in the villages any thing but butter and eggs.

IN case you have a mind to make the tour in one day, the thing is feasible. It is necessary for that purpose to set out very early in the morning from Cairo, and not to stop by the way. You may visit commodiously every thing that there is to be seen, and return even in good time to Cairo. The expence then will not amount to much more than the half. I have

practised both these methods of travelling it; and the last has pleased me most. For though we have not so much time on our hands, as when we make the tour in two days, yet there is still enough; and there is nothing but what a traveller may perform in one day. For my part, I should chuse rather to go thither twice in this manner, than once in the other.

THAT I may not resume the subject again, I shall add here the description of the pyramids of Dagjour, a name that they give to all the pyramids that are to the south of those of Memphis, though the one are nothing else, properly speaking, but a continuation of the others.

THE pyramids of Dagjour terminate near Meduun, where there is the most southern of all. The more distant you are from it, the more it strikes the sight; but when you approach it near, it does not seem of great consequence, being built only of large bricks, hardened by the sun; which is the reason that the Arabs, and the Turks, call it commonly *The false pyramid*. You discover it at a great distance; and so much the more distinctly, as it is not so near the mountains, nor in the neighbourhood of the other pyramids. It is elevated upon a little hill of sand. Its four sides are equal, and descend with a slope to the horizon, in form of a glacis. It has three or four degrees or steps, the lowest of which may have twenty feet of perpendicular height.

THIS pyramid has not been opened; and it will, without doubt, continue secure from this insult, because it makes but very little appearance. I imagine that no one will have a desire of attempting the destruction of it, which would occasion too much expence and hazard.

AMONGST the other pyramids of Dagjour, of which the greatest part is situated near Sakarra, there are only two that deserve any attention; for the others are not very large. The one of these has been opened;

K

but

but as you can examine with more security, and more conveniency, the inside of the great pyramid near Cairo, there are few travellers, that would expose themselves to go and visit those of Sakarra. They reckon about a score of them there, both great and small, and which present no unpleasing prospect.

THESE pyramids are all situated at the foot of the mountains; and it looks as if nature had expressly contrived in this place a plain for that purpose. In effect, we find not in all Egypt the like; for not only is it of vast extent, but it is likewise so elevated above the ordinary horizon, that the Nile never overflows it. When you consider well the situation of it, you will be easily convinced, that it is at least very near the place where the ancient city of Memphis was built, and I could almost dare to conjecture, that the pyramids, of which I am speaking, were contained in the inclosure of that capital.

HOWEVER that may be, the pyramids of Dagjour do not differ from those that are opposite to Cairo. They have, however, suffered more, since they are much more damaged: from whence one may presume, that they are more ancient. There are two of them, which are not inferior in grandeur to that of Cairo; but their fabrick is not so neat, nor so well contrived, as that of the others. Some are built perpendicularly, and as it were by steps or stories; it would not, however, be possible to mount up by them, on account that each step, or story, is between thirty and forty feet high.

LETTER from Mr. F. L. NORDEN  
to MARTIN FOLKES, Esq.

SIR,

I HAVE the honour to address to you the REMARKS annexed, which I have made, during my late expedition, on the *Pyramidographia* of Mr. GREAVES. They are written without any ornament, and even without the assistance of my *designs*, which I had sent away before I embarked. I have not taken notice of his measures, which I find for the most part exact; and in those places where he is mistaken, it is occasioned solely by his aiming at greater exactness than was possible. In general, I consider him as an author of merit; and what I have written on his *Pyramidographia*, rather tends to add than to diminish. Besides, I have applied myself only to those things that I recollected perfectly well; and have passed over in silence those, concerning which I had the least doubt, and wherein it would have been necessary for me to consult my papers. As you, SIR, are an excellent judge in these matters, I give up my *Remarks* entirely to your judgment; entreating you only to believe, that it gives me the greatest pleasure to find an opportunity of assuring you of the respect, and perfect esteem, with which I am, &c.

Portsmouth, October 11, O. S.  
MDCCXL.



*REMARKS upon the Pyramidographia of Mr. JOHN GREAVES, formerly professor of astronomy at Oxford.*

PAGE 1<sup>a</sup>. *Authors or founders of the PYRAMIDS.]*  
 Although all the ancient authors, that have written of Egypt, have different opinions, with regard to the time and names of those, that were the founders of the pyramids; yet I think that the epochas of the building of these enormous masses, must be carried back much further than has been supposed. We shall see, by the reasons which I am going to alledge, the changes that may be admitted to have happened to them.

PAGE 2. *Whereas all these pyramids consist of stone.]*  
 This shews that Mr. GREAVES has not gone very far into the Upper Egypt, to see the pyramid, built of large bricks, hardened in the sun, the same undoubtedly that HERODOTUS makes CHEOPS the founder of, and which is situated at four leagues distance from Cairo<sup>b</sup>.

---

<sup>a</sup> N. B. The references are made to the learned Dr. BIRCH's edition of Mr. GREAVES's works.

<sup>b</sup> MR. NORDEN is mistaken in citing the pyramid built by CHEOPS, for that was entirely built of stone, according to HERODOTUS; the brick pyramid was built by ASYCHIS, and had this remarkable inscription engraven on a stone:

*Let no one disparage me, by comparing me with stone pyramids; for I excel them as much as JUPITER does the other gods. In turning up the bottom of a lake, whatever mud stuck to the pearch, being collected together, was formed into bricks; and by this means I was made.*  
 HEROD. l. ii. c. 136.

DR. POCOCKE observes, "That the pyramid of unburnt brick was doubtless built near the plain, on account of the brick. It seems to be made of the earth brought by the Nile, being of a sandy black earth, with some pebbles and shells in it; it is mixed up with chopped straw, in order to bind the clay together, as they now  
 A<sub>2</sub>

As to what concerns the works, on which the Israelites were employed in Egypt, I admit, that I have not been able to find any ruins of bricks burnt in the fire. There is indeed a wall of that kind, which is sunk very deep in the ground, and is very long, near to the pyramids, and adjoining to the bridges of the Saracens, that are situated in the plain; but it appears too modern, to think that the bricks, of which it is formed, were made by the Israelites. All that I have seen elsewhere of brick building, is composed of the large kind of bricks, hardened in the sun, such as those of the pyramid, of which I have been speaking.

PAGE 13. *Certain sepulchre, being a quadrilateral pyramid . . . . . DIODORUS relates, that over the sepulchre there was a circle of gold, of three hundred and sixty-five cubits compass, and a cubit in thickness, in which the days of the year were inscribed, and divided into a cubit a-piece, with a description, according to their nature, of the setting and rising of the stars, and also their operations, after the Egyptian astrologers.* The sepulchre, that is here mentioned, and from whence, according to DIODORUS

---

make unburnt bricks in Egypt, and many other eastern parts, which they use very much in their buildings. I found some of these bricks thirteen inches and a half long, six inches and a half broad, and four inches thick; and others fifteen inches long, seven broad, and four inches three quarters thick. I observed on the north side, the bricks were laid lengthways from north to south, but not every where in that direction; however, I particularly took notice that they were not laid so as to bind one another. It is much crumbled and ruined; but as it is, I measured it, and found it to be an hundred and fifty seven feet on the north side, and two hundred and ten on the west side, it being much broke away on the east and west sides, for at the top it measured forty three feet by thirty five; it is an hundred and fifty feet high. By what I could judge from the present shape of it, I concluded that it was built with five degrees, like the pyramid at Saccara, each being about ten feet broad, and thirty deep; so that the ascent to it is easy, as the bricks are crumbled away. As there is gravel and shells in the bricks, it is not probable that this is the pyramid built by that extravagant king ASYCHIS." p. 53.

SICULUS, CAMBYSES carried away a circle of gold, is that of OSIMANDYAS. It is not in the pyramid, as Mr. GREAVES conjectures, founded on the text of STRABO; but, according to all appearances, it is that, which subsists at present quite intire at Lukkoreen, and amongst the ruins of ancient Thebes. The walls of this sepulchre, and those of the temple, where it is placed, are covered with figures, that represent the funeral procession, and the sacrifices, which were made at the death of this prince; as the ruins of the palaces and of their porticos contain the wars, and great exploits of the same monarch. This is enough to prove that it is there, and not in the pyramid, that we must place his sepulchre.

PAGE 23. *Of the time in which the pyramids were built.* I pass over all conjectures, both ancient and modern; and confine myself only to two points, which persuade me, that the time of the foundation of the pyramids is much more remote, than that to which they commonly fix it.

I. In no pyramid whatever we do find, either within or without, any hieroglyphical figure. We know, however, that the Egyptians never omitted them: all the other ruins are a convincing proof of it, and are covered with hieroglyphics, both without and within. There is reason therefore, I think, to conjecture, that the pyramids, even the most modern, were built before this sort of writing had been invented. This being supposed, and that, in the time of CAMBYSES, they had already lost the knowledge of those characters, I leave it to be conjectured, how far back it is necessary to place the epocha of their building. At least it cannot be disowned, that they were built before any of the temples or palaces were raised, whose prodigious ruins are the wonder of the present time.

THIS sentiment once admitted, it must likewise be agreed, that the pyramids were built before any residence was established at Memphis, and even before  
that

that great city was founded. The reason is, because Memphis was, in a great measure, formed out of the ruins of Thebes, which, according to our supposition, and on account of the hieroglyphics, with which its edifices were adorned, must have been posterior to the pyramids.

II. THE second proof of their antiquity is taken from the granite marble, of which the sepulchral urn is made, and that is seen in the first pyramid; from the granite, with which the sepulchral chambers are lined; and from that, with which the top of the second pyramid is covered. All these stones are not only without hieroglyphics; they are also without the least polish; which is a certain mark, that, at the time when the pyramids were raised, they had not yet the art of polishing this sort of marble.

It cannot be objected, that, through a spirit of religion, they would not perhaps admit any polish; for all the other marbles, which are employed on a religious account, are polished with the utmost perfection. It follows, therefore, that the pyramids have been erected before all the obelisks, before all the sepulchral urns which have been transported to Rome, and before the chests of mummies, which were made of granite; since all these works, excepting a very small number, were made of polished granite.

I CONFINE myself to these two arguments, which have had a great influence upon me. I know not what effect they may have upon others. But I shall avoid adopting those wild conjectures, which have no other foundation, than the reports of Egyptian priests: reports very false in themselves, as has been very justly remarked by those who follow their traditions.

PAGE 59. *For what end or intention the pyramids were erected.*] I agree with Mr. GREAVES, that the Egyptian religion was the principal cause of the foundation of the pyramids; but I believe, at the same time, that ambition contributed greatly towards it. In either of

these views they could not have raised monuments more vast, or more solid. No sort of architecture is comparable to it; and where do we see any that costs as much pains to destroy as to raise? One is sometimes surprized in observing, that this mountain produces nothing but a mouse; and that a whole pyramid contains only some chambers, and some low and narrow passages. But when it is considered, that they had not then the art of making arched roofs; and if we attend, at the same time, to the enormous burthen, that the cavities had to support, we shall easily conceive, that the duration, which they designed for the pyramid, did not permit them to mine much into the solid, which was not composed of a material very strong for supporting itself; but which had rather need of being supported by the great pieces of free-stone, with which the outsides of the pyramids are furnished.

To be convinced that this reasoning is just, and that it may even be demonstrated, you need only cast an eye upon the little pyramids, that surround the great ones. As they are the greatest part open, you see that they are entirely built of free-stone; and that they have, by their smallness, this advantage, that their chambers and their passages were capable of having more extent in proportion, than in the greater pyramids, which, with regard to their reciprocal heights, are perpendicularly in the proportion of 500, to 30, or 40.

PAGE 80. *The Egyptians were careful to provide conditories, which might be as lasting as the body, and in which it might continue safe from the injury of time and men. That occasioned the ancient kings of Thebes in Egypt to build those which DIODORUS thus describes: "There are, they say, the wonderful sepulchres of the ancient kings, which, in magnificence, exceed the imitation of posterity. Of these in the sacred commentaries forty-seven are mentioned; but in the time of PTOLOMÆUS LAGI there remained but seventeen. Many of them, at our being in Egypt*



*Egypt in the one hundred and eightieth Olympiad, were decayed."*

ONE must, I think, reckon amongst those superb monuments, that of OSIMANDYAS. I have seen another of them, opposite *Medinet-Habu*, and I dare say, that the little temple of granite of Thebes was of the number. FATHER SICARD pretends to have seen those that are in the grottos. For my part, I have sought for them with care; I have entered into a great number of grottos, but could never discover them.

PAGE 81. *And this might occasion also those others recorded by STRABO, which he calls Ερημια, or mercuriales tumulos, seen by him near Syene, in the upper parts of Egypt, very strange and memorable. "Passing in a chariot from Syene to Philæ, over a very even plain, about one hundred stadia, all the way almost, of both sides, we saw in many places mercurial tombs: a great stone, smooth and almost spherical, of that black and hard marble out of which mortars are made, placed upon a greater stone; and on the top of this another, some of them lying by themselves: the greatest of them was no less than twelve feet in diameter, all of them greater than the half of this."]* It would be very difficult to agree on this article with STRABO. I have gone the same road as he; I have travelled it five or six times; and have observed with attention those stones, which he calls *mercuriales tumulos*. It is not by art, that they are heaped one upon another. They are the mere work of nature, which has placed them, as I imagine, in this manner from the beginning. It must be observed, that the rocks of granite differ from others in this, that they are not a single mass; and that they are as it were great heaps of large flint stones, placed one upon another. The workmen, that have formerly cut this granite, have taken away the pieces that most suited them, and have left others standing, here and there, either to serve as limits, or for some other use. This is, in my opinion, the origin of what are called *bills, or tombs of Mercury*.  
What



What confirms me most in this notion, is that, besides some hieroglyphics, which we see there engraven, one finds, all about, an infinite number of stones of the same kind, cut, and some only sketched: others almost finished; and all in the same condition, in which they were left by the workmen, when, probably, the calamities of war obliged them to retire. It is proper to observe also, that it is but at a small distance from thence, that we find the obelisk, which is but just begun; and that all that plain, which STRABO mentions, was almost entirely formed by taking away the granite, which, without doubt, was of a better kind than that on the borders of the Nile, since they preferred it to the latter; which, being on the borders of the river, would have been the more easily transported. We observe, however, on the border of the Nile, some few places, where the stones are loaded with hieroglyphics, like those we have been speaking of; and there are seen likewise, in the adjacent parts, some stones of the same kind, which they had begun to cut. The design of the ruins of Syene represents two of this kind; and there is another opposite the island of Philæ.

PAGE 82. *Many ages after, when the regal throne was removed from Thebes to Memphis, the same religion and opinion continuing amongst the Egyptians, "That so long as the body endured, so long the soul continued with it;" not as quickening and animating it, but as an attendant, or guardian, and as it were unwilling to leave her former habitation: it is not to be doubted, this incited the kings there, together with their private ambition and thirst after glory, to be at so vast expences in the building of these pyramids.]* The conclusion, which Mr. GREAVES draws in this passage, cannot be admitted. Those *tumuli mercuriales* could never have given the idea of building the pyramids. Their shape and their size are so different, that there is no conformity between the one and the other. Besides that, the hieroglyphics, with  
which

which the *tumuli mercuriales* are adorned, prove that the pyramids are more ancient, and that the former consequently could not have been their model. Moreover, I can assure the reader, that there is nothing but the hieroglyphics, in which art has had any share; for in other respects the stone is quite rough, and such as nature has formed and placed it.

PAGE 91. *A description of the first and fairest pyramid.*] This pyramid, which is commonly called the *first*, should rather pass for the *last* of those, that have been built of the like materials. You see divers things in it, which shew that it has not been entirely finished; and it is sufficient to cast your eyes upon it, to be convinced, that it has a newer look than the others, which are adjacent. With regard to those, that are situated higher up, they have the superiority, without doubt, in point of antiquity. Time has made much more impression on them. Although they are in a climate less subject to rains and winds, yet they have not avoided suffering more than the first; which can be attributed only to the great number of years they have subsisted.

PAGE 98. *The ascent to the top of the pyramid is contrived in this manner. From all the sides without we ascend by degrees; the lowermost degree is near four feet in height, and three in breadth. This runs about the pyramid in a level; and at the first, when the stones were entire, which are now somewhat decayed, made, on every side of it, a long but narrow walk.*] Our author certainly did not give a sufficient attention to it: for it is not the injury of time, which alone occasions the inequality of the degrees of the pyramids. You need but measure one of them, in different parts of its height, and it will be found, that the size of the stones, which form the degrees, differs four, five, and sometimes even ten inches. These kinds of steps were not designed for mounting up, nor for descending. They have sought regularity in them, no further than was necessary

sary for the general shape of the pyramid, and for the facility of the work. I am much deceived, if this inequality of the stones has not been the occasion, that so many travellers, who have counted the degrees of the pyramids, differ always with regard to the number.

PAGE 99. *For that latitude, which HERODOTUS assigns to the admirable bridge below, of which there is nothing now remaining.]* I cannot comprehend how a traveller, so exact as Mr. GREAVES, could have neglected a thing so worthy of remark; since there remains still a sufficiently considerable part of that admirable bridge, to form a just idea of its whole structure, and of the use they made of it. There are likewise at the east of the third pyramid some remains of another bridge.

PAGE 10. *Upon the flat top, if we assent to the opinion of PROCLUS, it may be supposed that the Egyptian priests made their observations in astronomy.]* The top of the second pyramid, still covered with granite marble, cut so smoothly, that no one can ascend it, decides absolutely, that the pyramids were not built to serve as observatories. Although the others are not so finished as the second, yet it cannot be doubted, but the intention of those, that were the masters, and of the architect, was to have finished them, if the expence, or time had permitted it.

PAGE 102. *The air of Egypt is confessed, by the ancients, to be often full of vapours.]* From Alexandria quite to Feschne, the air is often foggy, and the sky overcast. It rains likewise there very frequently. But at Feschne, and beyond, in the Upper Egypt, the sky is always clear and serene. I have however experienced at Meschie a very violent rain, accompanied with thunder, for the space of a whole hour.

PAGE 103. *Hewn (according to HERODOTUS and DIODORUS) out of the Arabian mountains.]* A great  
part

part of the stones, that have been employed in the building of the pyramids, were taken out of the grottos, that we see in great numbers near those pyramids. The rest was drawn directly opposite, from the other side of the Nile; and when the waters of that river were high, they conveyed those stones to the bridge, which HERODOTUS mentions; and afterwards, by means of the same bridge, they transported them to the mountain, where they designed to erect the pyramid.

PAGE 104. *The relation of HERODOTUS and POM-  
PONIUS MELA is more admirable, who make the least stone  
in this pyramid to be thirty feet.]* The temples, which  
we see in the east, and quite near the pyramids, have  
been built with very great stones. It is surprizing,  
that few travellers have spoken of them, though they  
are in fact extremely remarkable. They seem to have  
been uncovered at the top. Their great circumference  
did not permit the finding stones large enough to reach  
from one wall to another. Neither is there the least  
mark of columns; and I dare say, that they did not  
know how to make use of them, at the time of build-  
ing the pyramids. Who knows, likewise, whether the  
invention of the pyramids was not owing to that ig-  
norance they were in; since they had not any other  
method for covering a great circumference, before the  
art of arching, and that of employing columns, to  
support a roof, were invented?

PAGE 113. *On the north side, ascending thirty-eight  
feet, upon an artificial bank of earth, there is a square and  
narrow passage leading into the pyramid.]* This bank of  
earth on the north side, is not made by the hands of

---

\* It is a mortifying consideration, that the most durable works  
in architecture have been owing to ignorance: thus the famous  
aqueducts of the ancients, the remains of which are the wonder of  
the present times, were owing to their ignorance, that water would  
rise up nearly to the same height as that from which it falls.

men. Time and wind have formed it, by means of the sands, that have been driven against the pyramid. The three other sides, and those of the other pyramids, have the like elevations, which are not however so high. That on the north side of the first pyramid is superior to the others, on account of the north wind, which prevails there the most, and because the entrance is exposed to that wind. If it be asked, why this elevation does not rise still higher, and even to shut up the entrance of the pyramid? I shall answer, that the Arabs, who are sent commonly to clean the entrance, take care to hinder this progress: besides, the passage is too much frequented, for the sand to gain any more.

PAGE 116. *Through the mouth of which . . . .*] It is very surprizing, that the author should pass over in silence the counterfeit portal, or rather the frontispiece of the first passage. I have measured it with all the exactness that was possible; which will enable me one day or other to give a particular description of it, and to enquire the reason they had for making it in that manner.

PAGE *ibid.* *Having passed, with tapers in our hands, this narrow streight, we land in a place somewhat larger.*] This place, to which Mr. GREAVES does not so much as deign to give his attention, deserves however to be well considered: and I am certain, that this learned man would have taken more account of it, if he had known what it contains. It is there we discover clearly the manner, in which the first passage has been closed up, by means of three rough pieces of oriental marble, which join so well the sides of the passage, that one has a difficulty to introduce within the joints the point of a knife. It is there, likewise, that the sight can penetrate, as I may say, into the bowels of the pyramid; for as this place has been forced, we perceive there clearly, that the solid part of the pyramid is composed of great stones, thrown at random, and  
joined



joined by a kind of mortar, which cements them so well, that they appear to make but one single mass.

PAGE 119. *The walls within are covered with a sort of plaister.] It is the same crust as that we see the walls covered with, both in the ancient thermæ, and baths at Rome, and in the reservoirs of Pouzzol.*

PAGE *ibid.* *The reason of the difference between PLINY's observation and mine, I suppose to be this; that since his time it hath almost been dammed up, and choaked with rubbish.] The difference does not arise from the reason alledged by Mr. GREAVES. It is owing rather to this, that at the end of twenty feet of depth the well goes slanting for a certain space; and afterwards resumes the perpendicular line, which at last loses itself in the sand, without having any other outlet.*

PAGE 120. *The stones are very massy, and exquisitely joined. I know not whether of that glistening and speckled marble I mentioned in the columns of the cisterns at Alexandria.] It is all a white oriental marble: there is not the least doubt about it.*

PAGE *ibid.* *The walls are entire, and plaistered over with lime.] All the sides of this chamber, as well as the triangular vault, are of square pieces of granite marble, unpolished, and which is not at all covered with plaister.*

PAGE *ibid.* *On the east side of this room, in the middle of it, there seems to have been a passage leading to some other place. Whether this way the priests went into the hollow of the Sphinx.] This forced and extremely narrow passage subsists still at present, and terminates in a kind of niche. It could never lead to the Sphinx, because it is in the third part of the pyramid, above the horizon.*

PAGE 129. *Venetian, a man very curious, who accompanied me thither, imagined, that this sort of marble came from Mount Sina.] All that I have seen, and touched, of granite marble, which they had begun to cut at Essouaen, formerly Syene, does not permit*  
me



me to believe that they transported this marble from Mount Sina to the pyramids, by such difficult roads. They may have taken from that mountain some stones for the edifices in its neighbourhood; but as for the granite, which they employed in Egypt, I am satisfied it was taken in the place I have mentioned.

PAGE *ibid.* *Which may also be confirmed by BELLONIUS's observations, who describing the rock, out of which, upon MOSES's striking it, there gushed out waters, makes it to be such a speckled kind of Thebaic marble: Est une grosse pierre, massive, droite, de même grain et de la couleur, dont est là pierre Thebaine.]* There is shewn at Venice, in the church of St. MARK, a square piece of marble, that was brought from Mount Sina, and which they pretend to be the very stone that MOSES struck. It is a granite, of so fine a grain, that it comes very near to the porphyry. We find many of the like kind in Egypt<sup>d</sup>.

PAGE 134. *The ingenious reader will excuse my curiosity, if, before I conclude my description of this pyramid, I pretermitt not any thing within, of how light a consequence soever. This made me take notice of two inlets, or spaces, in the south and north sides of this chamber, just opposite to one another; that on the north, was in breadth seven hundred of a thousand parts of the English foot, in depth four hundred of a thousand parts, evenly cut, and running in a strait line six feet, and farther, into the thickness of the wall; that on the south is larger, and somewhat round, not so*

---

<sup>d</sup> DR. CLAYTON, bishop of Clogher, in his *Vindication of the histories of the Old and New Testament*, in answer to lord BOLINGBROKE, breaks out in a rapturous exclamation, pag. 139. lett. ii. on the pretended discoveries by Dr. SHAW, and the prefetto of Egypt, of the identical rocks that MOSES struck. But by Mr. NORDEN's account, they have been in possession of one of these rocks in the church of St. MARK at Venice, a long time. And from his observation, that there are many of the like kind in Egypt, I am afraid, we are in some danger of having the identical rocks multiplied, like relicks in the Romish churches.

*long as the former, and, by the blackness within it, seems to have been a receptacle for the burning of lamps.]* They appear to me vent-holes, to give air to the chamber. The blackness that they have, is come since, and is the effect of the smoak of torches, which the curious have made use of for seeing the inside. They are at present almost filled up with stones, that have been thrown in, in order to see how far they might go.

PAGE 139. *A description of the second pyramid, of which, besides the miracle, the ancient and modern writers have delivered little.]* This pyramid, however, is as great, and as beautiful as the first; and what we can see of it, in some measure even exceeds the first.

PAGE 140. HERODOTUS *says it hath no subterraneous structures.]* HERODOTUS, whom our author cites, speaks only from hearsay; for, the pyramid being closed, it was not possible for him to examine, himself, the thing that he describes. This manner of speaking renders the descriptions of ancient authors extremely obscure. What must we think of STRABO's and PLINY's description of the well of the first pyramid; especially of their saying, that the water of the Nile entered into this well? Did they see it themselves? Did they hear it said by any others? For my part, I know not what to think of it; inasmuch as there is no way of reconciling their descriptions with the present condition of the places.

PAGE 140. *By my observation, the stones are of colour white, nothing so great and vast as those of the first and fairest pyramid; the sides rise not with degrees like that, but are all of them plain and smooth.]* I should be very much at a loss, if it was necessary for me to follow, step by step, the narration of our author. He goes very wide of the truth, and entirely neglects what is the most remarkable. I am apt to think, that this Venetian companion, on whom he relied too much, may have deceived him; and that he himself was too much fatigued with the examination of the first pyramid, to

L

give

give a proper attention to the second. This is certainly as large as the first. If the degrees do not appear in it distinctly, yet we perceive, very plainly, that they have been there, and that they are still there from the top to the quarter towards the bottom of the pyramid. The reason, that the others have disappeared, is the violence which has been used, to take away the granite marble that it was cased with, and with which the quarter towards the top is still covered, as my *designs* shew.

PAGE 141. *This pyramid is bounded on the north and west sides with two very stately and elaborate pieces.*] This has been owing to very natural causes, seeing they were obliged to make smooth the rock, by the hammer and chissel, in order that the pyramid might rest upon a level. As this has been made by a rule, the two perpendicular borders of the slope of the mountain seem to have been cut expressly for making chambers within. But those, which we find there, are in reality nothing but quarries, from whence they drew stones for the building of the pyramid; and which, like the others, that we see in the neighbourhood, and in all parts of the upper Egypt, after having served as habitations for the workmen, were at length converted into sepulchral grottos. This could not have happened, till long after the building of the pyramids; and not till hieroglyphics were invented; for we find, very frequently, in the grottos, inscriptions of that sort.

PAGE 148. *So that I shrewdly suspect, that DIODORUS hath borrowed most of his relation from HERODOTUS; and STRABO and PLINY from DIODORUS, or from them both; and the more learned moderns from them all.*] There are certainly errors in what these different authors have written. All speak as if it was the third pyramid, of which the half was built of basaltis: whereas it is the fourth pyramid. If our learned author had taken the trouble to go near it, he would have been easily able  
to

to reconcile all those authors. He would have seen, that the fourth pyramid has been made, towards the middle, of a stone more black than the common granite, and at least as hard. I dare not, however, ascertain, that it is the basaltis; for it differs from the material of which the beautiful vase is made, that I have seen at Rome, in the palace of cardinal ALEXANDER ALBANI, and which they give out for the basalto<sup>f</sup>.

THE stones, that are wanting to this pyramid lye upon the ground, at the north east corner. They there make a very great heap. Mr. GREAVES, however, is in some measure excusable, for not having observed this pyramid. It is situated in such a manner, that, if you do not see it at a certain distance, you do not easily perceive it, even though you are near, because the others conceal it. Its summit is of a yellowish stone, and of the quality of that of Portland; and it is likewise the same kind of stone, that the other pyramids are built with. I shall speak elsewhere of its top, which terminates in a cube.

THE existence of this fourth pyramid is, moreover, indubitable. It makes a *series* with the three others; this is a matter I can aver. My lord SANDWICH has very justly observed it, and my *designs* attest the same truth.

PAGE 150. *Though it cannot be denied, but that close by, on the east side of it, there are the ruins of a pile of building, with a sad and dusky colour.*] These remains of buildings, that Mr. GREAVES here speaks of, are the same as those, which I mentioned before. He says, that the stones are of a dark colour; but it is the same yellowish stone, of which the degrees of the pyramids have been formed. It is nothing but time that has, here and there, a little blackened them, as ~~it has~~ blackened all the rest. These stones are more-

<sup>f</sup> PLINY says, that the basaltis is, *ferrei coloris atque duritiæ*.

over of an enormous size ; and the temples, or edifices, on which they have been employed, must have had something very respectable, as I have already remarked above. This pyramid has not inscriptions, nor hieroglyphics, any more than the others. Time could not have effaced them ; for if they had put any there, they would not have committed them to a stone of sand, but to a hard one, which would have certainly preserved them to the present age. It is very difficult to give credit to what HERODOTUS and DIODORUS SICULUS assert, namely, that they were content with putting upon these pyramids a mere name, or a slight inscription. This practice would have been contrary to the nature of hieroglyphics. The monuments, and edifices, where they were employed, are almost entirely covered with them. It happens, that we perceive not any upon the pyramids ; and even though we should find some, would there not be reason to doubt, whether they had not been placed there since, at the time when such hieroglyphics were engraven in the grottos adjacent ?

PAGE 154. *Of the rest of the pyramids in the Libyan desert, which are (excepting one of them) but lesser copies, and as it were models of these ; and therefore I shall neither much trouble myself, nor the reader, with the description of them.]* Those pyramids, of four and five degrees, or stories, and each degree of thirty to forty feet of height, are surely well worthy the attention of a traveller ; and I am at a loss to comprehend, why authors, as well ancient as modern, have not spoken of them. It seems to me, however, that they are sufficiently remarkable, to deserve being mentioned. My lord SANDWICH and I concur in our sentiments. This nobleman, curious in antiquities, has carefully observed them, and I have drawn the *designs*. We have remarked there, though at different times, a pyramid, which has never been compleated, and which surely would furnish great lights, for knowing in what manner



ner the architects undertook to raise these great and wonderful piles.

THE two largest of these pyramids, are in nothing inferior to those of Memphis. The one has something particular with regard to its shape : the other is open. It must be owned, that we cannot forbear adjudging the pre-eminence to the pyramids of SAKKARA, since they have been built the first; and that it is from them the model has been taken, and refined on, for building the others.

PAGE 155. *There are three in that part, which is opposite to Fostat or Cairo.*] Here, as elsewhere, the author omits the fourth pyramid. Travellers do not so much as deign to cast an eye upon it, any more than on the small ones, which are open, and which are very numerous in the parts adjacent, and very near those of Memphis. They might, however, be capable of furnishing likewise a great number of lights.

PAGE 156. *In what manner the pyramids were built.*] I imagine that we shall, one day or other, be able to give a very just idea of the method made use of for building the pyramids. We need only, for that purpose, to collect together all the observations that have been made upon this subject, and particularly to trace very closely what has been remarked in those of Sak-kara, especially in the place where the first pyramid has been forced open, as well in the passage, as in the sepulchral chamber, &c. But this exceeds the bounds of mere remarks. I dwell therefore no longer upon it.

*Remarks*



## REMARKS upon the OBELISKS.

I HAVE already mentioned two OBELISKS, in speaking of Alexandria. I must observe to the reader, that there are others likewise in all parts of Egypt. These precious monuments have appeared to me worthy to be placed after the pyramids, and to deserve some general observations, as well with regard to the material of which they are made, as with respect to their shape and use; but I declare, at the same time, that I did not make these observations, till after my return from Egypt.

THE material, of which they are made, secures their preservation, and gives them the advantage of a long duration. They are commonly of granite; which enhanced their value. It is easily perceived, that it was difficult to find such; for the granite very rarely furnishes pieces so large as were necessary for this purpose.

THEIR shape and their embellishments placed them likewise in the number of precious things, and proper to serve as majestick ornaments. They seem more especially to have been designed for decorating the gates of temples, palaces, or the extremity of a colonade<sup>a</sup>. They are quadrangular, rising up in form

---

<sup>a</sup> PLINY assigns another use of the obelisk placed in the Campus Martius, and which he gives the honour to AUGUSTUS of having been the first to apply an obelisk to; namely, to serve as a gnomon to a sun-dial. "Ei, qui est in Campo, divus AUGUSTUS addidit mirabilem usum, ad deprehendas solis umbras, dierumque ac noctium ita magnitudines, Strato lapide ad magnitudinem obelisci, cui par fieret umbra, brumæ confectæ die, sexta hora, paulatimque per regulas (quæ sunt eorum inclusæ) singulis diebus decresceret, ac rursus auferceret: ceterum cognitu res & ingenio secundo mathematici." PLIN. *Nat. Hist.* l. xxxvi. c. 10. edit. Har- duin. fol.

of a pyramid to a certain height, tapering almost to a point, and terminating like true pyramids.

EACH of their faces is commonly adorned with hieroglyphical figures, that are contemplated with admiration for their beauty; but at the same time with regret, because we are deprived of their explication, and without hope of being ever able to arrive at the understanding of them.

I do not believe that there are any found elsewhere than in Egypt; except in those places, whither they have been transported, after having been taken from this kingdom: and indeed the number of them is not very great.

---

*The late learned MARTIN FOLKES esq. has explained this passage of PLINY, in the following manner:*

"FROM this description, I understand that there was laid down, from the foot of the obelisk, northward, a level pavement of stone, equal in breadth to the breadth of the obelisk itself, and equal in length to its shadow at noon, upon the shortest day; that is to say, that its length was to the height of the obelisk, almost as twenty-two are to ten; and that into this pavement there were properly let in parallel rulers of brass, whose distances from the point, directly under the apex of the obelisk, were respectively equal to the lengths of the shadow thereof at noon, on the several days of the year; as the same lengths decreased from the shortest day to the longest, and again encreased from the longest day to the shortest."

AFTER which the author mentions, in a passage greatly corrupted, and therefore now almost unintelligible, "That one MANILIUS, or MANLIUS, had added to the top of the obelisk a gilded ball, whose use was to make the shadow of the extremity the more observable, as the middle part of the shadow of that globe could readily be estimated; whereas the shadow of an apex would, at so great a distance, be intirely imperceptible." *Vide Dr. MARTYN's abridgement of the philosophical transactions, vol. x. p. 1380.*

THE passage I have cited above from PLINY, occasioned a great contest amongst the gentlemen of the French Academy of sciences, who applied to the Academy of Belles lettres to decide it. The decision of that academy may be seen in vol. i. of *Histoire de l'academie des inscriptions & belles lettres*. The contest arose chiefly from the false reading in the original, mentioned above by Mr. FOLKES.

ALL

ALL the obelisks are not of the same height; but they are all alike with respect to their form, except that the summit is sometimes wanting in them. Neither are they all made by the same masters, nor with the same materials, tho' for the most part they are of granite marble.

We find them in Egypt, from one end of the kingdom to the other. I observed the first at Alexandria, and the last at the island, that is called at present Giesfret-ell-heiff, which seems to be the Philæ, that ancient authors have so often mentioned.

THEY are, or at least they were originally made of a single piece; and their pedestal is a cube, which commonly does not exceed more than two or three feet the breadth of the obelisk. This pedestal, and even a part of the obelisk, are most usually buried under the ground.

I HAVE seen two obelisks in the island of Giesfret-ell-heiff. The one is of white marble and standing; but without any hieroglyphics: the other, which is of granite, lies upon the ground; and has a row of hieroglyphic figures on each face. The summit of the first, which terminates the column of the western gallery, is shortened. It is no more than eight feet in square, and sixteen in height. The second has likewise eight feet in square; but twenty two feet of height. It seems to be more modern, than all those, that I have had the opportunity of seeing: at least it has been better preserved.

IN the ruins near Essouan, there is an obelisk, which was made upon the spot; we see no hieroglyphics upon it, and it is broke in two. Each face has three feet of breadth; but the length cannot be measured, because it is concealed, in great measure under the sand.

AT Lukoreen, which is considered as a part of the ancient Thebes, there are two obelisks, of which each face has six feet eight inches and a half. Their height is in proportion. That which is situated towards the  
east,

east, is higher than the other. Both are standing before the portal, or at the entrance of the magnificent ruins, which are admired in this place; and, without doubt, they are the utmost that art could ever execute with regard to obelisks.

NEAR Carnac, where we perceive the continuation of those that are admired at Lukoreen, they reckon still four entire, and situated in the place where they were erected at first.

IN the front of the great hall, which is near Carnac, and at its entrance, there are two other obelisks standing, placed in a diagonal line. They are pretty nearly of the same size, and of the same beauty, as those of Lukoreen. The two others, which accompanied them, without doubt, appear no more. We see, before a little temple, two other obelisks; but much less than the preceding. They may have about eleven or twelve feet of height; and their faces have no more than a foot and a half of breadth. As to the material, it is granite, and of so fine a grain, that it approaches very near to porphyry. They have served, in all probability, as pedestals to two idols; and they are adorned with hieroglyphics, painted in divers colours; and these hieroglyphics represent, for the greatest part, figures that embrace one another.

AMONGST these same ruins of Carnac, we find, moreover, divers great masses of a whitish stone, and which, joined formerly together, have formed obelisks of a prodigious size. These last, as well as all the others, were only of a single piece; but when they were thrown down, they were probably broken in the fall. They have been entirely filled with hieroglyphics, coloured, and adorned, by compartments, with different figures, that have a very agreeable effect.

IN the neighbourhood of Matareen, a village situated near Grand Cairo, there is an obelisk still standing, of a well proportioned size, and of the height of that of CLEOPATRA, situated at Alexandria; but, as to its

hieroglyphics, though they may pass for being well done, yet they are inferior in that point to those that are admired near Carnac and Lukoreen.

I HAVE represented the southern side of this obelisk, because it is the best preserved. The other sides are alike, excepting that of the north, where there is a small difference, which is marked in the plate. You may there see, likewise, how all the figures look in different directions. I ought, however, to mention, that the bottom of the obelisk, on the east side, is almost entirely ruined, inasmuch that we can scarce discover on it any longer the hieroglyphics. I have marked likewise upon the same plate how high the Nile ascends. See PLATE III.

THERE remains nothing more to speak of, except the two obelisks of Alexandria, of which the one is commonly called the obelisk of CLEOPATRA; but as I have already given a circumstantial description of these two monuments, I shall say no more of them.

The END of VOL. I.

# TRAVELS

IN

E G Y P T

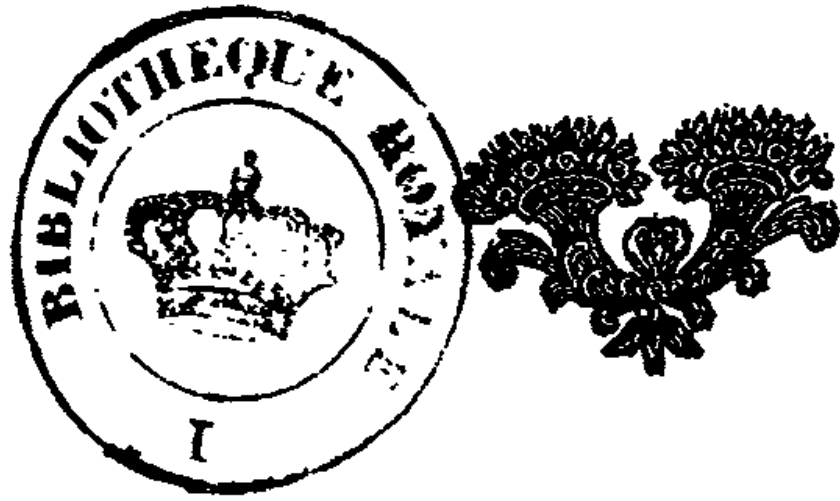
AND

N U B I A.

---

V O L. II.

---



---

L O N D O N:

Printed for L. DAVIS and C. REYMERS,  
against *Gray's-Inn-Gate, Holborn.*

M.DCC.LVII.



---

# TRAVELS

IN

## EGYPT AND NUBIA.

---

Journal of the author's voyage, from CAIRO to  
GIRGE, Capital of the UPPER EGYPT.

**I**N the former volume of this work, which contains my rout from Alexandria to Cairo, I have given a circumstantial relation of all that I have seen and thought worthy the attention of the reader. I was obliged to continue in this capital above three months; for I arrived there the 7th of July 1737; and I did not depart till the 18th of November the same year, when I undertook the voyage of the Upper Egypt.

So considerable a delay was occasioned by reasons of a various nature: besides the ordinary obstacles, and the prejudice, which generally bewitches the people of the country, and gives them a suspicion of all the Franks, who shew a desire of going farther: a prejudice, which has hindered so many persons, that have been sent by divers courts of Europe, from making discoveries in the Upper Egypt; I had the vexation to meet with two other impediments, which

concerned me in particular, and necessarily retarded my departure.

ONE of these impediments arose from the rebellion, which, at that time, continued to put the whole country in disorder. Though they had not ceased to cut off heads every day, and to butcher, without mercy, all the rebels that the government was able to seize, yet there still remained a considerable number, who had joined themselves to the Arabs: even the ringleader of them, whose name was SALEM CACHEF, and who was reported to be dead, in order to quiet the populace, had escaped the most diligent search that could be made, and had married the daughter of an Arab schech. Under the shelter of this protection, he plundered and murdered all that came from Cairo, insomuch that if we went with the caravans, the passage was absolutely insecure; and if we took the method of going upon the Nile, the barks did not run a less hazard.

THE second impediment to my journey was occasioned by a sickness, which I did not take much notice of at the beginning. I imputed it solely to the air of the country, which I imagined to disagree with my constitution: I flattered myself, however, in a little time to reconcile myself to it. But the affair became at length very serious: in a few days the disorder shewed itself to be a true peripneumony. It confined me to my bed for more than two months, and gave me great disquietude: more particularly, because I was lodged in an inn, that was notorious for troublesome riots. I am going to mention one, that had like to have cost us dear; but which had a more happy success than could be expected.

WHEN a stranger arrives in Egypt, they prescribe to him two fundamental rules, the observance of which is necessary to all the Franks, in order to be secure in the country. The first enjoins, to avoid all occasions, where the Turks may have the least pre-  
tence

tence for coming to a quarrel; and rather to bear slight insults, than to venture an engagement with them: the second requires, that in case you cannot avoid having a contest with a Turk, you ought to take great care how you defend yourself; for if, unluckily, you happen to kill one of them, you will certainly be destroyed. It would be impossible to escape the fury of those who will endeavour to revenge his death, and who will be always assured of the aid of the greatest number, and of the support of justice, not to say of injustice itself.

I HAD always applied myself so carefully to the observance of the first of these rules, that I had never been in a situation to have need of the other. Yet a certain fatality destined all those, who lodged in the inn where I was, to be one day under a necessity of making use of both these rules: and even they would not have been able to have preserved the whole house from destruction, if it had not been for the courage of a lady, who defended herself in such a manner as was indeed something strange and comical, but which happily succeeded so well, that she alone preserved all that were in the house.

THIS adventure happened on occasion of a public procession, or festival of circumcision; which, as was given out, would be more solemn than the greatest part of the others, that we see here so often walking the streets. This was enough to excite the curiosity of some attendants of a lord, with whom I had made an acquaintance in Italy, and with whom I was going to make the tour of the Upper Egypt. They had taken it into their heads to have a view of this ceremony from a terras, situated directly opposite to some apartments of the palace of OMER bey. This palace was not commonly inhabited; but the desire of seeing this procession had drawn thither that day one of the wives of OMER, who being offended, according to the usage of the country, to see herself

exposed to the view of these strangers, made her eunuchs at first throw some stones at them. Our people perceived very well the insult; but not knowing by whose direction it was, and the noise in the street stunning them, they were not alarmed at this first assault. They had very soon a much warmer attack to sustain. The wife of OMER, scandalized at their obstinacy, caused some pistols to be fired at them, with the design of making them quit the place; and as this second warning was not better understood than the first, she took their ignorance for an affront so heinous, that, as soon as the procession was ended, she sent to the inn, where we were, eight janissaries to seize those indiscreet spectators.

I KNEW nothing of the whole adventure. My disorder kept me in bed, and I was extremely weak. I saw, however, four of those janissaries go across my chamber, to enter into another, which led to the terras I just now mentioned; but they made so little noise, and moreover I was so accustomed to the like passing to and fro, that I did not give much attention to it. I saw, in like manner, without troubling myself much about it, two of those janissaries return; who passed back through my chamber, after they had forced our domesticks to continue under an arrest, guarded by the two other janissaries.

THE master of these servants was no more apprized of the affair than I was. But he had very soon tidings of it. The four other janissaries, who had hitherto continued quiet at the entrance of the house, seeing that the first attempt had succeeded so happily, and finding no one upon the defence, imagined that they might undertake any thing. They entered into the apartment of the master; and whilst two of them threw themselves upon him, the two others seized his spouse, and put a cloth over  
her

her head, with a design of conveying her into a kind of cellar, which was nigh.

THESE violences did not please either husband, or wife. Both with emulation armed themselves with courage. She throws down one of her assaulters with a kick; at the same time stabs the other with the point of her scissars in the breast, and by this means forces both to quit her. The husband, at the same instant, disengages himself from the hands of the two men, that had thrown themselves upon him, leaps to a carabine well loaded, takes it in one hand. with the other seizes a sabre, and threatens to kill any one, that offers to attack him.

THIS was enough to intimidate these wretches; insomuch that they went out of the chamber in the utmost hurry: but the affair was not yet over. The two comrades, that had passed back through my chamber, in their return, and were gone to call assistance, appeared immediately with fifty men well armed.

THE combat then begins a-new. The field of battle was precisely opposite to my chamber. Here it was the succours joined the first combatants. The carabine, above all, put them into a consternation. They cried out, that if it was not laid down, there should be no quarter given to any one; one amongst them, seeing that the summons was not obeyed, fired a pistol, the ball of which passed over the head of him who held the carabine.

AT the discharge of the pistol, I got out of my bed, to see what was the matter; and I opened my door precisely at the instant that our heroine was in the greatest perplexity, how to withdraw her husband from the danger that threatened him. She did not hesitate long upon the method she had to take. She pushes him dextrously into the chamber, bolts immediately the door, and returns back to make head against the enemy.

THIS dexterity, as much as her resolution, was a decisive stroke. It is certain, that the husband, who was going to fire the carabine, could not have forbore to hazard so fatal a blow; especially if he had seen, afterwards, with what fury they put the poniard to the throat of his dear spouse. Whilst he was thus in a kind of security, though against his inclination, and in the greatest disquietude in the world, she alone faced so great a number of enemies, not indeed with more moderation, but however with less danger. One of the enemies retired, bewailing a part of his beard that she had torn off; another having received a kick from her foot, took to his heels; she made a third feel the point of her scissars; she gave a fourth a taste of a box on the ear, well applied; a fifth was regaled with a salute of the same kind. There was something for every one; and you would have said, in seeing the dexterity with which she attacked and defended herself, that it was not the first time that she had been at such an entertainment.

At length, fortified with the help of a janissary, who, from an enemy that he was before, declared himself for her, in the space of less than half an hour, she cleared the inn of more than fifty men armed, who were come to seize her, together with her husband.

THE bashaw informed of this bravery, and of the innocence of our domesticks, deigned, from that day, to secure us from other like insults, by a protection distinguished in a very extraordinary manner; but which we should never have obtained, if any Turk had been killed in the fray.

At the end of more than three months abode at Cairo against my inclination, I had the satisfaction to perceive, that all the obstacles, which had hindered my departure for the Upper Egypt, were no longer unsurmountable. Thanks to God! I was cured of my peripneumony; the fever had left me; and  
though



though still weak, I flattered myself that I should recover, from day to day, the strength that was wanting to me, to be able to say that I was in perfect health. On the other hand, the rebellion in the country, that had made so much noise before, died away by degrees, at least so far as was necessary for the security of a bark, which we had determined to make use of, for performing the voyage upon the Nile. As to what there was to be feared from the general prejudice against Europeans, the strongest recommendations by the heads of the government, as well as of the soldiery, addressed to divers governors, of the provinces, and to several Arab schechs, seemed to promise us all sorts of security and facility for our voyage.

In these circumstances, we hired a bark, which was to convey us quite to ESSUAEN. The price was fixed at thirty fendouclis; with a new suit of cloaths, on condition that it should not be permitted to take on board any but those of our company, which was increased by a Copti priest, and two missionary fathers from Rome. The acquisition of one of these was so much the more advantageous to us, as he understood very well the Arabic; thus he might be useful to us, in case the Maronite and the Jew, that we had engaged for our common interpreters, should happen to fail us.

WE had, moreover, required a second condition of the reys, or captain of the bark. He had engaged himself not to take on board any merchandize, for fear that the traffick which he would make should retard our navigation; but he had been before-hand with us, and had already embarked, under-hand, what he had a mind for; insomuch that it was necessary afterwards to give up this second article.

ALL the preparatives of our voyage being settled, we embarked, Sunday the 17<sup>th</sup> of November, in the afternoon. In a little time we had left Old Cairo, where

where our bark had been fastened, opposite to the Mokkias, and near the Grand Bazard. We did not advance; however, that day, more than a canon shot distance, because the reys was not yet come on board. Our voyage did not begin, therefore, properly speaking, till the next day; and I am now going to describe the success of it.

I SAHLL acquit myself of this task, by giving, day by day, a faithful relation of what I have seen, and of the accidents which have happened to me in the voyage, from Cairo quite to Derri, (see PLATE I.) where we were obliged to take the resolution of returning back, in spite of the extreme desire that I had of going further. I shall use the same method when I am to describe my return to Cairo.

THIS relation shall be drawn up faithfully from the journal that I wrote, during my voyage. I shall change nothing in it, except that, because I would not resume it again, I shall add, from time to time, in the places where I had already touched some subject, certain particularities which I did not remark till my return. I shall take care, in like manner, to clear up the subject, here and there, by some observations, in proportion as the objects shall appear to me more or less interesting. As to this last article, which I call *less interesting*, I should touch it only so far as will be necessary for the instruction of those, who hereafter shall have the curiosity to undertake the same voyage. But with regard to the former, I shall give a much greater attention to it, especially when the subject shall be the magnificent remains of antiquity, which have offered themselves to my sight. In a word, I will do my utmost not to forget any thing that can give satisfaction to the reader, as I have neglected nothing, so far as circumstances permitted me, that things capable of giving illustration should not escape my researches.

MONDAY,

<sup>a</sup> MONDAY, 18<sup>th</sup> of NOVEMBER, 1737.

Our reys did not come on board till the afternoon. We set sail immediately; and we saw, on the east side of the river, the town of *Deriminna*: The Copti have here a convent; we cast anchor about a quarter of a league above it, below the great mosque, named *Atter-Ennabi*: There has been already mention made of this place, in the preceding volume, as well as of *Deir-Etiin*, another town, with a Copti convent, and a mosque, which is three quarters of a league higher. We had on the right *Giesiret-Edakab*: That is to say, the *Golden Island*. You see a village there with the same name, together with a mosque. It is situated at a league and a quarter above the island of Rodda, at a quarter of a league's distance from the western shore of the Nile, opposite to *Sakkietmekki*, a town surrounded by some villages, which bear the same name. This town has a mosque, and in its neighbourhood a calisch. Its name is Arabic, and signifies a *mill with ropes of pitchers*, a sort of engine proper for raising water.

In continuing to go up the river, we advanced on the left, towards *Bassatiin*, a town about a league above *Deir-Etiin*. The Mahometans have there a mosque, and the Jews of Cairo a burying-place: Directly opposite, on the western shore, you perceive *Abunumerus*, a town ornamented with a mosque, and whose name is that of a greyish coloured bird, which is found on the Nile.

At two leagues above *Bassatiin*, you perceive *Ell-kallaba*, a fort situated in the mountains, at a league and half distance from the eastern border of the Nile.

---

<sup>a</sup> As this part of Mr. Norden's work, seems to be chiefly calculated for the service of those, who may be induced to undertake the same voyage, the reader will not be displeased, perhaps, with passing on to December 11, where the author begins his description of ancient Thebes.

This

This fort has a Turkish garrison, and a mosque. There is nothing, however, but its situation, that renders it considerable ; for its fortifications are very indifferent.

ALMOST opposite Ellkallaha, you have, on the western side, *Manjelmusa*, a village accompanied with a mosque. Between this place and Abunumerus we see a great pyramid, built five stories in height, and of which I have given a view amongst my designs. PLATE VI. FIG. 4.

AT a league and half higher, and on the same western shore, is situated *Menakuad*, another village, adorned with a mosque. You see there the second pyramids, called the pyramids of Dagjour.

ALMOST opposite Menakuad, you discover, on the eastern shore of the river, *Ellgharaffi*, a town, where the Turks, besides a mosque, have a burial-place. They have chosen this place, because the ground is high enough not to be overflowed at the time of the increase of the Nile.

ABOUT a league further, but on the other side of the river, you see *Mugna*, a village that has nothing remarkable ; and on the other side, upon the eastern shore, you discover *Deir Ell Adovia*, where there is a convent of Copti. This convent, which is very irregular in its buildings, has not any beauty at all.

WE passed, about a league higher, in front of two other convents of Copti, situated, the one on the right, the other on the left of the Nile. That on the left is named *Deir Ell Hadie*. The other, which was on our right hand, is called *Deir Abusaisfeen*. These two convents have nothing that can make them distinguished more than that of *Deir ell Adovia*.

ABOUT a fifth part of a league higher, you meet with *Schech Atmaen*, a village of little importance, to the west of the river ; and opposite *Turrag*, a village, where there is a mosque, and a little above a great calisch that advances into the country.

AT

At half a league from Turrage, the Calisch running between, is *Mahsara*, a mere village, whose name signifies a *press*; but a little higher, on the other side of the river, and at three quarters of a league distance from its western shore, appears the town of *Sakarra*. It is not only accompanied with a mosque; but it is also famous for the commerce of mummies, which its inhabitants dig out in the plain of the mummies. You see there likewise the labyrinth, where they formerly buried birds, and other animals embalmed<sup>b</sup>. The different pyramids, that are near *Sakarra*, excited more particularly my curiosity, as well in going up the river, as in coming down. Though I have already mentioned something of them, when I described the pyramids, I cannot forbear adding here a few remarks, that may serve to illustrate the sixth plate, which contains the designs of the three principal pyramids of this quarter.

THE first of them is situated toward the north, and built in four different stories, which grow less in proportion as they rise higher, as the first figure shews. PLATE VI. FIG. I.

WITH regard to the second, (FIG. II.) its construction does not differ from that of the pyramids of Memphis, and it has pretty nearly the same height. But it appears much more damaged: and it is open. As this place is very little frequented by strangers, the passages of the pyramid are filled with sand;

---

<sup>b</sup> Dr. Pococke says, "That the catacomb of birds is about thirty feet deep, and about eight feet wide. These catacombs are much more magnificent than those for human bodies, being the sepulchres of those birds and other animals they worshiped; for when they happened to find them dead, they embalmed them, and wrapped them up with the same care as they did human bodies, and deposited them in earthen vases, covered over and stopped close with mortar. In one of the irregular apartments I saw several larger jars, which might be for dogs and other animals; of which some have been found, but are now very rare." Page 54.

which



which gives a great deal of difficulty to those that have a mind to enter it.

THE third (FIG. 3.) which seems to be a little higher than the second, is of a very singular figure; and the design, that I give of it, will make it much better perceived than any description. Of all the pyramids, it is that which appears to have suffered the most, though it is not open; and I should have no hesitation to conclude from thence, that it is the most ancient of all the great pyramids. I must observe, that neither this, nor the others, have the least appearance of having been ever covered with granite.

THESE observations being made, I resume the thread of my relation. After having seen the pyramids of Sakarra, we got to *Helovan*, a village on the eastern shore, and whose name signifies *mildness*. It must be owned, however, that it is neither more mild, nor more beautiful, nor more agreeable than *Schiim*, another village, situated on the western shore. We arrived there about ten o'clock at night. The air was then so calm, that there was no possibility of making way against the current of the river; which obliged us to cast anchor till the next day.

#### TUESDAY, 19<sup>th</sup> of NOVEMBER.

THE wind was north, and strong enough to overcome the current. We weighed anchor therefore, at eleven o'clock in the morning; and we got very soon before *Giesiret Terfaye*: It is an island situated very near the eastern shore. It has but one village, and that of no great importance.

We left, directly opposite its southern point, and to our right, *Mesguna*, a town surrounded by five or six little villages, of which some are at a small distance from the Nile. *Tebbiin*, a village, situated near two leagues and a half above *Giesiret Terfaye*; but it is nothing near so considerable as *Dagjour*, a town



town, which has a pretty appearance, on account of its mosques; but which is still more to be valued, on account of the pyramids that are in its neighbourhood, and which present a very agreeable prospect, between Dagjour, Mesguna, and Shiim.

At a little more than a league above Dagjour, we had to our right the village of *Schoback*; we had at the same time to our left, *Gamase El Kebira*; that is to say *Gamase the great*. This village has a mosque.

We had likewise at a league and a quarter higher two other villages; namely to our right *Kofferloyad*, and to our left *Lagsas*. Just above those two villages begins an island, of three quarters of a league in length, situated almost in the middle of the river; but I know not whether it has any name.

We find a league further *Missanda*, a mere village, and *Gamase Ellogaira*; that is to say *Gamase the little*: A town, which is properly a cluster of five villages. I landed there, and took particular notice of the ploughs, which led me to observe how very little credit is to be given to the relations of those authors, who would persuade us, that the Land is not ploughed in Egypt, and that it is sufficient to scatter the seed immediately after the inundation is over.

TOWARDS the evening our barque was stranded, between *Gamase Ellogaira* and *Gieziret Ella Zale*. They comprehend under this name a string of seven little islands, very close one to another, a little nearer the western shore than the eastern; they occupy a space of about four leagues; and each has its village.

THERE are two other villages on the border of the river, directly opposite the third of these islands. That which is to the east, is named *Essoff*; and that which is to the west, is called *Menjelkarag*. On the eastern side are two other villages, namely *Hæoddi*, situated directly opposite the northern point of the fifth island, and *Gubbeaad*, opposite the seventh island, which has, on the opposite side of the river  
*Rigga,*

*Rigga*, a village on the western shore of the Nile.

There arose in the night a little wind, which induced our sailors to leap out into the water, and to lighten the barque. We advanced, however, but very little.

WEDNESDAY, 20<sup>th</sup> of NOVEMBER.

WE had all that day a great calm, and a very strong current; which may be attributed to the islands that contract a little the bed of the Nile in this place. We could not advance without the assistance of a cord, with which they towed the bark, between the islands on the right, and the villages of Essoff, Huoddi, and Gubbebaad on the left.

At three quarters of a league above Gieziret Ella Zale, we meet with a string of three other islands; the two first are small, and the third of three quarters of a league in length, named Eutfeeg, and of which I shall speak presently.

DIRECTLY opposite the first of these little islands, there are two villages of little consideration, the one named *Salchie*: we had it to our left: the other, called *Udwab*, was to our right. We had a great deal of difficulty to arrive thither.

OPPOSITE the northern point of the island of *Eutfeeg*, which has a village accompanied with a mosque, we perceived, on our right, but at half a league within land, the village of *Soft*, situated to the north east of *Mednun*, a village likewise, that is a good league distant from the western shore of the Nile. It is between these two places, but a little nearer to the last than the first, that we find the most southern of all the pyramids of Dagjour, and even as I imagine of all Egypt. I have already spoken of it in my first volume; and I have there given the reason why the people of the country call it *the false pyramid*. I shall only add here, that though it is built of bricks hardened

## AND NUBIA.

ed in the sun, yet it is of a very beautiful stature. has been so well preserved, through so many ages that we can scarce observe in it any decay. owes its beautiful appearance principally to its situation upon a square hill, whose four sides with a gentle ascent terminate so exactly at the foot of the pyramids that, from a distance, they appear to make but one continued body.

As the great calm, which continued, did not permit us to advance any further, we tied our barques near a great plain covered with Turkey wheat, which began to be ripe.

We saw that day abundance of camels; but they did not come near enough for us to shoot them<sup>b</sup>.

In the evening we were surrounded by those boats that seek their food upon the Nile.

DURING the night, we kept a good guard. Every four hours we fired a musquet, to let it be known that we could not be taken by surprise, and we continued this method all the rest of our voyage.

### THURSDAY, 21<sup>st</sup> OF NOVEMBER.

THE calm and the current continued all that day which obliged us still to stay there. More than a hundred barques, which came from the Upper Egypt, passed before us in a row, and descended by means of the current, to go to Cairo. They were all extremely loaded.

THE leisure that we had, invited us to land. Our people fired upon abundance of pigeons, and killed some; but they were out of season and so hard that we could not eat them.

THEY found their account better in killing a few

---

<sup>b</sup> In the original it is *chameaux d'eau*; whether they are a particular species of camels, or a different kind of animals, I do not know.

of partridge; that was delicious, and of the size of our red partridges. They had feathers like those of the Guinea hens, and the tail like a swallow. Their flesh has an aromatic taste, and a great deal of flavour. There was no one in our barque that knew them.

We gathered likewise a great deal of purslain amongst the corn.

FRIDAY, 22<sup>d</sup> of NOVEMBER.

No wind in the morning. In the afternoon there arose a very high wind; but it came from the south; in-  
so-much that it obliged us to continue where we were. To this high southerly wind succeeded another calm, which was followed by a gentle wind from north west. We set sail in order to take advantage of it; but it did not last long, and the calm, which returned, reduced us to tow the barque against the stream. This sort of working the vessel did not forward us much: we made but very little way with a great deal of trouble: for which reason we determined to fasten the barque to the eastern shore of the Nile.

SATURDAY, 23<sup>d</sup> of NOVEMBER.

STILL a great calm in the morning. We landed in order to seek for some provisions: but we found none, and returned aboard. A little while after, we were able to set sail, by means of a gentle wind at north west. It did not however last long; and we were obliged to have recourse to the cord, of which we made use till noon, when the wind became strong enough to make us advance forward and even to break our mizen yard. This accident occasioned us to return back to Salchie, where, whilst they put us up a new yard, we got in provisions of eatables for some days. We afterwards set sail, and advanced about a league; but the wind, which was north east, became

became so violent, that it obliged us to reef all our sails. We were then directly opposite *Giesfret Eutfeeg*. It is an island situated near the eastern shore of the Nile : It has a village of the same name, with a mosque and a grove, which, though small, contributes to render its situation very agreeable. There are opposite *Giesfret Eutfeeg* two villages ; that which is to the east is called *Soll* ; and that which is to the west, is named *Edfu*. Towards the evening, the wind having become more tractable, and northerly, gave us the opportunity of advancing forwards. We passed before two villages, the one opposite to the other ; namely *Brumbul*, upon the eastern shore, and *Huasta*, upon the western shore. The name of this last signifies *the mediator*.

We discovered almost at the same time two islands, towards the eastern shore of the river. The first, which has no more than a quarter of a league in length, is named *Giesfret Ell Gurmand*. The other, which may have double the length, is called *Giesfret Barrakaed* : they are separated the one from the other by a narrow passage ; and they have each a village.

In the night, we made fast the bark before *Sauvied-Elmafluub*, a town upon the western shore of the river, opposite *Giesfret Barrakaed*. It is accompanied with a mosque ; and its name signifies *the watering place of the cross*.

#### SUNDAY, 24<sup>th</sup> of NOVEMBER.

I WENT again to see, early in the morning, the false pyramid, of which I have made mention before. I was at a pretty great distance from it ; but I got near enough, however, to judge of its construction, and to remark the bricks that have been employed in it.

At my return to *Sauvied-Elmafluub*, we received

the visit of Mustapha, brother of *Kiaja*, or colonel Osman-Bey. He made us a present of two sheep, of thirty hens, of an hundred eggs, and of a basket of bread. In return, we gave him some Candian wine, strong liquors of divers sorts, sherbet, and some other trifles. He was an acquaintance that we had made at Cairo.

AFTER having taken leave of him we set sail about ten in the morning. We had little wind and a great deal of rain, which did not hinder us from going beyond *Komgeride*, a place situated at a little distance from the western shore of the Nile. It might be called a town, and it is even pretty large. It has a great mosque, surrounded by several others that are smaller.

Soon after we found, on the same side of the river, *Bennebedder*, a mere village. It has, almost opposite to it, *Dirmimund*, a Copti convent, which has but a very little extent of arable ground. Around this convent are planted seven palm trees, which the people of the country esteem a kind of marvel, because, from whatever side you look at them, you can never count them all at once.

VERY near the convent of Dirmimund, we see the tomb of a pretended Mahometan saint. On the other shore of the Nile, we discover *Meimund*, a town, whose mosque has a very pretty appearance.

AT about a league higher, we found *Eschmend Ell Arrab*, a village situated in such a manner, on the border of the Nile, that the waters of this river carry away, almost every year, some part of it.

THOUGH its houses are of as bad a structure, as any of those that we find between Cairo and this place, they have however this in particular, that the top is always terminated by a pigeon-house, which, at a distance, gives a very agreeable sight. From *Eschmend Ell Arrab*, quite to the first cataraft, they observe exactly this manner of building; and there is in some places



places even a law, which does not permit any man to marry, and to keep house, unless he is in possession of such a dove-house. The reason of it is, that the dung of these birds is the only thing they have for manuring the ground; for they preserve carefully the dung of other animals for burning; and the soot, which comes from it, serves to make the sal ammoniac.

THESE houses are almost every where built in such a manner, that whilst the pigeons inhabit the top, the proprietor with his family occupies the lower part. Yet, notwithstanding the agreeable prospect which they present at a distance, you no sooner approach, or enter them, than you immediately perceive nothing but poverty and misery.

AFTER we had stopt an half hour at Eschmend Ell Arrab, we got our boat towed in order to double a point, which advances a little way into the Nile; and this point being doubled, we were able to make use of our sails. The sky was overcast; but there blew a north wind, strong enough to make us pass by two great villages situated on the western shore, and which have each a mosque. The one is *Benniali*, that is to say *the son of Ali*; the other is *Zeitun*, a word which signifies an olive tree.

WE passed by successively three other villages, much less considerable, and of which I shall content myself with giving the names, *Schenduie*, *Buuscb*, and *Mankaritsche*. The other border of the river is a desert. At two leagues above the convent of Dirnimund, the mountains approach so near the border of the Nile, that in a space of twenty-five leagues, we see scarce any arable lands; we discover there only an infinite quantity of ruins of ancient edifices.

In the evening, at eight o'clock, we cast anchor before *Benesoef*, a city situated on the western shore of the Nile. It is a kind of capital, at thirty-eight leagues distance from Cairo, and the place of resi-

dence of a bey, who is the governor of it. The mosques give it a grand look.

We perceive, directly opposite Benesoef, *Beyjadie*; a place, which is properly nothing but the retreat of a band of Christians, who, to the disgrace of the name they bear, are all highwaymen. There would be no safety in passing a night there. You would risque both your goods and life. It is easy to judge, that the greatest part of the places, which I have hitherto mentioned, subsist only by their communication with Cairo, whither they send their commodities. Their greatest commerce consists in fowls, and eggs, which they keep till some bark passes, to which they sell them in wholesale. This is the reason, that a stranger, who travels in the country, cannot, without a great deal of difficulty, purchase his provisions in those places. In order to have a dozen eggs, it is necessary sometimes to go and seek for them in four different houses; and so of the rest.

#### MONDAY, 25<sup>th</sup> of NOVEMBER.

HASSAN bey, formerly a slave, and afterwards a favourite of Osman bey, who is the chief of the soldiery, was governour of Benesoef; and we had letters of recommendation to him; but he was gone to visit some places of his demesnes; and we thought it not proper to stay till his return. I went, however, on shore, as well to see the town as to purchase there some powder, and shot. The gunpowder cost me twelve parats the rotal; and I paid for the shot at the rate of six parats the rotal.

As soon as I came on board again, we set sail with a good north wind; and very near Benesoef, we saw two barks, that had been cast away lately, and their cargoes lost.

At a little league above Benesoef, and on the same side, we saw *Tismend*, a village accompanied with a mosque

mosque. At half a league above, *Hallabie*, a mere village: half a league higher, *Mellagbie*, which is nothing but a village likewise. At half a league higher also *Taba-Ana*. Afterwards, at a quarter of a league further, *Baranga*; next at like distance, one from another, *Tanza*, *Benebgasein*, and *Kombusch*. All this quarter is very much peopled. In going up as far as the monastery of saint MICHAEL, of which I shall speak presently, we find that the places are no more than a quarter of a league distant one from another. In return, the eastern shore is almost a desert. The mountains there run quite to *Neslet-Abonuur*, a village situated opposite *Baranga*; and the name of which signifies *the descent of the father of light*, which are very remarkable. We see there amongst others the representation of a rock, that the Turks call *Schiamed*, or the Camel, and of which they take such account that they never fail to shew it to travellers, as something very singular. It is, however, nothing but a piece of rock, that in length of time has taken of itself a figure, which appears to them to resemble that of a camel.

In continuing our voyage, we saw the village of *Bebe*. It was to our right. This village has a mosque.

We afterwards passed by three little villages: the one named *Elfugaye*; the other called *Scirce*; and the third bears the name of *Bedaeg*. This last is at about a quarter of a league from the border of the river. A little further, we saw *Feschbn*, a town that has a mosque. It is situated on the western shore of the Nile, and almost opposite a village named *Abuseid*; which signifies *father of the Seid*. We had it on our left; for it is situated on the other side of the Nile.

ADVANCING a little, we reached at first the village of *Ababe*, which we had on the right; and afterwards that of *Tent*, which was on the same side.

This last seemed to be a little more considerable than the former; but that might be the effect of its mosque.

AFTER having passed Tent, we approached near two little islands, which lie north, and south, and are separated only by a narrow passage. The first, or the most northern, is named *Scherona*. It is nearer the eastern shore than the western, where there are two villages that make but one, named *Mayana* and *Hallabia*. On the other side of the river, there is likewise a village called *Sauvied Ell Tschiedami*. The second island, which is nearer the western shore, than the eastern, is situated opposite the villages of *Magaga*, *cechsiath*, and *Abbaed*, of which the second is the most considerable, and has a mosque.

THERE are, in like manner, on the eastern shore of the Nile, opposite this second island, three villages placed in this order: *Scherona*, *Scherarbie*, and *Bene-gamet*. The first is the most remarkable; because it was near this village, that Schierres-Bey, and Soliman-Bey, had an engagement. This place is still the common field of battle, when there is any difference between the *Senschiacs*. The weakest party retires then into the Upper Egypt. Its adversary pursues them to this place, where at length the quarrel is decided with the sabre in hand.

WE passed successively before five other villages, near one to another, and all situated on the western shore; namely, *Giendie*, a mere village; *Abutschorsche*, where there is a convent of Copti; *Bénémasaeg*, a mere village, *Gees*, a town with a mosque; and *Kufr Solaw*, where there is a convent of Copti.

IN all the space occupied by these five places, there is, on the other side the Nile, but one single village, named *Abuschikaff*; and even that has no great appearance.

WE saw afterwards, on our right, the four following villages, *Nexlet Tobasis*, a mere village; *Mattai*, situated

situated within land, at about a quarter of a league from the border of the Nile : *Kufr Benembammed*, that is to say, *the antiquity of the children of Mahomed*. It derives its name from *Benembammed*, situated opposite to it, on the eastern shore, and which is composed of two villages, distant half a league the one from the other ; but which are comprehended both under the same name. *Kufr Benembammed* lies a little above it, and on the same side the village of *Collofano*. Advancing insensibly, we passed by successively three other places, namely *Magfara*, a mere village ; *Samalud*, a village with a mosque ; and *Schereina*, a mere village.

WE had at the same time, on our left, four other places, ranged at equal distances ; namely *Dulab*, *Serrerie*, *Tschebbat*, and *Teir*, or *Deir*.

THE last of these villages appeared to me the most considerable, you see there a Copti convent, under the name of Notre Dame ; but it is at present inhabited only by some private Copti Christians ; and it is built wholly of clay.

THERE are also the ruins of abundance of houses and palaces, built of free-stone ; but which have been so ill treated, that at present we discover in them nothing but the compass of ground they took up. The tradition of the country is, that they are the remains of a place called formerly *Sciron*, and which was built by a magician.

You may remark stairs made pretty regularly in the rock. We lose sight of them, about the middle of the height of the rock ; but a little further towards the north, they appear again, and continue quite to the border of the Nile.

THERE is a kind of aqueduct, for conveying the water of the Nile, which was drawn up by means of an engine. It appears very ancient, and is built of great stones.

LASTLY,



LASTY, you see the entrance of the stairs from whence they have drawn stone for building.

I CANNOT conceive for what purpose it was made, unless as a way to descend to the river.

THIS entrance appears pretty large; but it is not possible to discern any thing else in it.

THE Stairs terminate at the bottom of the rock; it was not possible for us to go up them, on account of the stones, which often fall down, and render the passage very dangerous.

THERE are abundance of other quarries and grottos; but as they are not distributed in any order, I did not think it possible to discover in them any thing remarkable.

IN our return from this place, we saw persons advancing towards us, upon their having heard several discharges of a gun, which we had fired at some birds.

AT eight o'clock in the evening, we passed before *Ell Burtchen*, a place composed of two little villages adjoining to each other. We had them on our right.

WE advanced again, as far as *Sohorra*, which may be at half a league higher, on the same side. Our purpose was to continue our voyage the whole night. An accident hindered us. Our barque struck so violently against a bank of sand, that we had a good deal of difficulty to get it off.

I MUST not omit to observe, before I finish the detail of the voyage of the 25<sup>th</sup> of November, that I perceived, after having passed *Benesoef*, the bed of the Nile contracts itself greatly; and that, from the morning to the evening, we remarked, on our right, a tract of country, pretty large, and well cultivated; whereas on our left, we discovered scarce any thing but mountains, sandy for the most part, and which extended themselves quite to the border of the river.

DIRECTLY opposite *Sohorra*, there is an island of the same name, situated, however, near the eastern shore of the Nile; and this island has a village.

TUESDAY.



TUESDAY, 26<sup>th</sup> of NOVEMBER.

WE continued sailing, with a very good north wind; and the weather was very agreeable. In the morning we passed by three villages, situated on the western border of the Nile. The two first were *Tagbel*, and *Amuden*, they are adjoining one to the other. The third is called *Ebne-Ghaziim*. At noon we came near to *Menie*. They reckon this place the half way between Cairo and Girge. It should be said pretty near the half way; for Girge is at an hundred leagues distance from Cairo; and Menie is only at forty-seven leagues; so there are wanting three leagues of its being the half way. The vessels, that go down the Nile for Cairo, are obliged to stop at Menie, and to pay there some duties. The place appears pretty considerable. You see in it more than one mosque; and I observed there amongst others a great number of granite pillars.

WE see, opposite Menie, on the eastern border of the Nile, *Sauuada*, a village, whose name signifies *Chaste*. We see there divers sugar mills.

AT half a league above Menie, and to the west of the river, you observe *Benembammed*, composed of three villages, situated a quarter of a league one from another.

WE reached afterwards to *Ell Mottaghara*, or *Metaghara*. They call by this name, an extent of country, which comprehends six villages; three on the right, and three on the left of the Nile, together with an island of the same name, situated near to the western shore of the river. The forest of palm trees here, is three leagues in length, and extends itself along the eastern shore, between *Ell Mottaghara*, and *Sauuada*.

AFTER having passed Mottaghara, we met with *Bennebassein*. It is the name of five villages, situated on the eastern shore of the Nile, and which are very

very near one to another. A portion of lands that are on the other side of the river belongs to these villages, of which the first, besides the general name of Bennehassien, bears likewise that of *Girgares*. The mountains of this quarter are famous, on account of the grottos of holy hermits, that have formerly made their abodes in them.

We passed by successively the villages of *Segale*, *Kirkar*, *Meschiel Dabes*, *Sakiedmusa*, *Garanduul*, and *Rodda*, all situated on the western border of the Nile, excepting *Garanduul*, which may be three quarters of a league within land.

A LITTLE above *Rodda*, there is a calisch, called *Bagher Fufef*. On the other side of the river, appears with its mosque the city of *Schek Abade*, formerly *Antinoë*, the capital of the lower Thebais. We perceive there divers antiquities, in which they did not employ those enormous stones, that the edifices of the ancient Egyptians are composed of; but stones of a moderate size, and pretty much like those which were made use of for building the triumphal arches at Rome. We remark principally, amongst its ruins, three great gates, of which the first is adorned with columns of the corinthian order, fluted: the two others, which correspond to the first, have much fewer ornaments. These ruins of the ancient *Antinoë* are at the foot of the mountains, and bordering on the Nile. The walls of the houses were built of bricks, that are at present as red as if they were but just made. There is a great probability, that the village of *Rodda*, which I mentioned a little above, was the *Mokkias* of *Antinoë*.

On the other side of the river, we discover, at about half a league within land, and at a quarter of a league from the calisch, the Copti convent of *St. Michael*. A little higher, and on the border of the Nile, we saw a small village, named *Beyjadie Ell Kebira*.

*Kebira*. Here, the villages begin again to be a little more distant one from another.

At eight o'clock in the evening, we got before *Nezlet Ell Raramu*, a village situated on the western shore of the Nile. It is customary for barques to stop before this village, when they arrive too late to be able to pass by day-light before Monfaluut. At my return I perceived there more than twenty barks, which formed a kind of caravan.

On the other border of the Nile, opposite *Nezlet Ell Raramu*, you see a Copti convent, named *Deir Abuichbanna*. The breadth of the land cultivated on this side is no more than a quarter of a league. Continued mountains occupy the rest of the country; but along the western shore there is nothing but arable lands, as far as the sight can extend itself; and you have even a difficulty to discover the mountains.

#### WEDNESDAY, 27<sup>th</sup> of NOVEMBER.

THE weather being very fine, and the wind favourable, we sailed the whole night; and past at first before *Ell Berschell*, we had this village on our left, and *Achemuneim* was on our right. It is in this place, or near it, that the ancient Hermopolis stood, which AMMIANUS MARCELLINUS reckons amongst the most famous cities of the Thebais.

ABOUT a league further, we perceived, at half a league within land, *Mellavi*, a town of an handsome appearance, and where there is a mosque and a cashief.

STILL further on, and on the same side, we saw *Magfara*, a village situated almost opposite to *Stableantor*; they give this name to a deep grotto, where we see abundance of pilasters, or square props, saved out of the rock. *Derut Ell Scheriff* presented itself afterwards on the west. This village has a mosque.

A LEAGUE further, and on the same side, but  
pretty

pretty near half a league within land, we perceived the village of *Galaniseb*. There is scarce any safety in this place for barques, that are not armed. The Arabs of this quarter are real pyrates; and they maintain themselves in this practice, in spite of the government. We were told, that the Senschiak, having sent thither, one day, his barks to seize the chief of these pyrates, they brought him the head of a Christian slave, whom they murdered in a barque, that was by chance near their shore. They made him believe that it was the head of their chief; and the Senschiak, being highly delighted with the present, paid for it bountifully. He discovered, however, the cheat the next day, and caused the authors to be severely punished. In advancing continually, we made up to the village of *Fasara*, and afterwards to that of *Misara*. They are both on the western shore of the river; and the last is opposite to *Beneamraen*, or *Omarne*. They comprehend under this name an extent of country, wherein are situated four villages very near one to another.

On the western side we perceived two villages, the one named *Senabo*; the other called *Ell Gusia*. The first is, however, placed at a league within land. Each of them is accompanied with a mosque. Their inhabitants have the character of being extremely wicked; insomuch that it is necessary to be on our guard, when we approach their country.

In the morning we reached two places, situated on the borders of the Nile, the one on the right, the other on the left. That which is to the west is named *Um Ell Gusuer*; the other is called *Ell Kgusuer*. It is a convent of Copti.

In this quarter, the mountains, which extend along the east of the Nile, approach so near the water, that you have a difficulty to pass on horseback upon the border of the river. These mountains are, in this place, full of grottos; some great, and others small.

They

They all served as retreats for the workmen, who formerly worked in these quarries, from whence they drew stones for the edifices they were to erect. Above Ell Kgufuer rise the mountains of *Abuffode*, which are properly nothing but rocks, very high, and very steep, and which extend along the Nile. We had them all the whole day on our left.

ONE can no where find mountains, which give more evident proofs of the universal deluge; for you remark in them, from the summit quite to the foot, the impressions that the water made in sinking.

THERE are, in different places of these rocks, echoes so distinct, that they lose not a single syllable. We find there, on the border of the river, an infinite number of grottos, where holy hermits have dwelt, and which are occupied at present by a sort of Arabs, that follow the profession of pyrates upon the Nile. They have a schech; but they do not obey him any further than they please. Neither do they trouble themselves about the Turkish government, which often pursues them, to punish their robberies; but they have the art to shelter themselves, by retiring into the mountains. We saw a dozen of their barques fastened in a little creek, which the Nile forms at the foot of the rocks.

AT eleven in the morning, we passed before the village of *Schugeria*, upon the western shore; and an hour after, we arrived before *Monfaluut*, a city situated on the same side, and at some distance from the river. It is a sort of capital; its mosques give it a beautiful appearance, and it is the see of a Copti bishop.

THE adjacent country is very fertile. You find there all sorts of fruits, and in abundance, even to apples.

THE vessels that go up the Nile, pay a custom-house duty at *Monfaluut*. Every traveller, that is led by curiosity alone, will do well in not permitting  
to

to take on board his barque any sort of merchandizes; for that exposes one to abundance of oppressions and inconveniencies. We had experience of it here, and in other places.

OPPOSITE this town there is, on the eastern border of the Nile, a Copti convent, absolutely inaccessible. Those that would enter into it are obliged to get themselves raised up in a basket, by means of a pulley, which has given to the monastery the name of *the pully convent*.

NEAR the neighbouring mountains there dwells a Bedouin, whose name is HASSER ABUAFFI. He has the artifice to maintain himself there without the permission of the government of Cairo. He sows and plants there; he even levies a tythe upon the crops of his subjects. Every time that the Senschiak goes to Monfalut, a report is spread that it is determined to make war on him; but the affair is always accommodated by means of some purses, or other presents that he makes.

TOWARDS the evening, we reached an island, situated between two villages: the one to the east, named *Ell-Maabda*. The other to the west, called *Tava*. The passage is very dangerous in this place; and we found there in fact a barque run aground, and sunk.

ABOUT a league further, we find another island, where the passage is still more perilous; its name is *Giesiret Vuladbaggid*. This second island, which has half a league in length, is likewise situated between two villages: the one, to which it is very near, is called *Ell Mabamadie*. The other, from which it is further distant, and which is on the western shore, is named *Netschascbiellava*. Afterwards, having passed *Schack Tamisch*, a village situated also on the western shore, we made fast the barque at a quarter of a league from the village of *Sallaem*, situated likewise on the same side.

WE



WE saw that day the first crocodile. It was extended upon a bank of sand, that the decrease of the waters of the Nile had occasioned above the level of the river. When he saw our barque approach, he threw himself forwards and hastened, though heavily, into the water. We judged him to be ten feet in length.

THURSDAY, 28<sup>th</sup> of NOVEMBER.

FOR want of wind, we this morning got our barque to be towed by our sailors. It was a hard work for these poor wretches; for it was very cold weather, and they had scarce any thing to cover them. It was necessary, however, to resolve upon it, that we might be able to double the elbow, that the Nile makes between *Benuup Ell Haman*, a village, which was on our left, and *Sallaem Ell Odder*, another village, that we left on our right.

THE elbow that the Nile makes in this place, is so considerable, that from *Sallaem Ell Odder* to the point of *Siuut*, that is to say in the space of more than three leagues, our rout was from north to east. At half way we found two villages, the one to our right, named *Mangabar*; the other to the left, called *Ell Ekrat*. There is, between these two villages, an island of three quarters of a league in length. Notwithstanding all our care, it was not possible to prevent our barque from striking several times opposite this island; but as we had fine weather we got off without much difficulty.

IN the afternoon, we doubled the point of *Siuut*. This town has the figure of another capital. It has a caschef, and some mosques; and it is the see of a Copti bishop. This place is the rendezvous of those that have a mind to be of the caravan, that sets out from *Siuut* for *Sennar*.

THESE grottos, named at present *Sababinath*, are  
 VOL. II. D made

made in the mountain called *Tschebat ell Kofferi*. You go up it for two hours, before you arrive at the first gate, to which the way up the mountain leads. You enter, through this gate, into a great saloon, supported by hexagonal pillars, contrived in the rock itself. The roots are adorned with paintings, which we distinguish extremely well even at present; and the gold that was employed there glitters on all sides. The pavement is covered with sand and stones; and this is all that one can remark in this saloon. We perceive, indeed, here and there some openings, that lead to other apartments; but as they are filled with rubbish, and the passages are likewise embarrassed with it, no one chuses to venture himself there. Above, there is an apartment, to which you may arrive by climbing up on the outside with a great deal of difficulty. It is not so great as the first, and it has no pillars; but it is painted like the other. On each side of this second saloon, you perceive a tomb of the same stone as the mountain with which they make a continued body. The one of these tombs is open, and the other closed; but almost buried in the sand. This superior saloon communicates likewise with other apartments; but the communication between them is not free; and you find the same impediments as in the inferior saloon.

THAT part of the mountain, where we see seven openings, on the same line, is named the *seven chambers*. There is, amongst the Turks, and amongst the Arabs, an ancient tradition, that these chambers were inhabited by seven virgins. However that may be, there is no doubt but these grottos are as magnificent as those I have mentioned; and it is pity that no traveller has yet entered into them. I had an extreme desire of going up, to consider things nearly; but the way was too long to travel on foot; and it was not possible for me to find a beast to carry me. I was obliged to be content with the description

tion of it, that a person of our company gave me. He had been there the year before ; and I have done nothing but repeat the account I received from him.

THERE was formerly, at Siuut, a calisch, called *Ell Maafrata*. It went quite to Senabo, but is at present wholly filled up.

A LITTLE above the town of Siuut begin the habitations of the Arabs, known under the name of *Hawarra*. They possess likewise lands on the other side of the Nile. They call them natives of the kingdom of Maroc. They are the best kind of Arabs. They are governed by a schech ; and they are all gentlemen, pretty much like the Polanders.

THE wind was favourable ; we took advantage of it, for pursuing our voyage, and passed very soon between two villages *Benimuur*, which we had to our left ; and *Schiub*, that we left on the right.

AT a good quarter of a league higher we saw *Catea*, a village situated on the same side ; and almost opposite to it there was another named *Ell Motmar*.

#### FRIDAY, 29<sup>th</sup> of NOVEMBER.

To the west of the Nile, the border of the river is all covered with trees, from *Catea* quite to *Ell Nechbeelee*. We did not enjoy however the beauty of this view, because we continued the whole night, to sail. There is, opposite *Nechbeelee*, another village called *Sachet*, about which we remark divers calischs maintained by the proprietors of the lands ; but as the government does not oblige them to keep these calischs in repair, they are often changed, and indeed are of no great importance.

TOWARDS the morning we were becalmed, and the current became very strong, which obliged us to continue the whole day near *Sachet*.

A COPTI priest, whom we had taken into our barque at a little distance from Cairo, took leave of us here.

No one regretted this loss. As plain as he was, he carried it however pretty high : insomuch that he dared to tell us, more than once, that he could not take us for Christians since not one of us had offered to kiss his hands : whereas the Copti ran, every day, in crowds round him, to shew their respect by such marks of submission.

Our people went ashore to get in some provisions, which were wanting to us ; and they killed abundance of pigeons. They saw a great number of other birds, but the difficulty was to get near them. They killed, however, a goose of the Nile, and whose plumage was extremely beautiful. But what was still better, it was of an exquisite aromatic taste, smelt of ginger, and had a great deal of flavour. Its craw was full of Turkey wheat, and of a root that grows on the border of the Nile when the water is low. It was from this root that the flesh received its taste and its flavour ; for nothing resembles ginger more than this root.

THE Arabs of the adjacent parts were then at war, and killed each other daily. This did not hinder us however from going ashore ; and we were not exposed to any insult.

WE saw Arabs cutting their harvest in a neighbouring plain. They cut at one time no more corn than their cattle could consume of the straw in one day ; and as soon as they had cut this corn, they began to plough the land, in order to prepare it for a fresh sowing.

#### SATURDAY, 30<sup>th</sup> of NOVEMBER.

THE calm and the great current continued ; insomuch that we remained still that day in the same place. In the morning, I went to Nechcheele, as well to see the place, as to take advantage of the market that was kept there on that day. I found  
that


it was nothing but a mere village. The bazar was nevertheless pretty well stocked with provisions and with some few iron wares. The whole at a low price; though there was not an abundance of any thing. This market, or bazar, is kept every week. They bring thither what they have been able to save in the course of the week; and as poverty reigns generally in these quarters, that which is brought to the market consists usually of three or four hens, half a dozen eggs, some little wheat, pumpkins and other like commodities. Every one comes in person to the market with his little effects. They have not sufficient confidence in their neighbours, to trust them in their hands; which is the reason that there are commonly almost as many men as commodities.

MONEY is rare in this country; so that four parats there will pass for five. They purchase two fat sheep for an hundred and ten parats: two hens for five parats; twenty eggs for one parat; and the rest in proportion.

OUR people had that day good success in game. They brought, amongst other things, three *coramanes*, a sort of bird of the size of a woodcock, of a delicious taste; but still more esteemed on account of its fine note. The Turks give for them eight or ten sequins, when they are taken young and have been taught to sing. With regard to their beauty, it consists only in their large eyes; for their feathers do not differ from those of the wild duck.

#### SUNDAY, 1<sup>st</sup> OF DECEMBER.

A GENTLE wind sprung up, which permitted us to sail, and brought us, about eight o'clock in the morning, before *Abutische*. It is a pretty considerable town, upon the western shore of the Nile. It has some mosques.

WE passed afterwards before *Denesle*. They name  

thus

thus a village, situated on the same side, but retired near a league within land. The principal business of its inhabitants consists in making eunuchs. Directly opposite, on the other side of the Nile, is the village of *Buet*. About a league and half further, we find two other villages; namely *Scherck Seliin*, on the eastern border of the river, and *Bennifées*, on the western border.

A LITTLE higher, and on the same side, we see *Sylfa*, a village, which is the place of residence of an Arab schech. *Dueer-Ait* appears afterwards a little higher; and at near half a league within land.

A THIRD village shews itself afterwards, and is named *Kardous*. There are two others opposite to it, namely *Merreschis*, and *Ell Bedari*, which are almost contiguous.

AT a league higher, but on the western shore of the river, we see *Neslet Ell Hemma*; and at a like distance, still higher, *Tamé*. Between these two villages is situated an island, named *Giesiret Toma*. It may have half a league in length; and is nearer the eastern border than the western. It derives its name from the village *Toma*, situated on the east of the Nile, at some distance from its border. *Berdenis* is another neighbouring village, situated on the same side, as likewise *Gau Scherkie*, which has succeeded to the *lesser Diospolis*. We see there an ancient temple, that has nearly sixty paces in length, upon forty in breadth. It seems to be covered only with a single stone, which rests upon columns; and its roof is so well preserved, that you still distinguish on it very clearly the hieroglyphics, with which it had been loaded. It has nothing else remarkable. The Arabs pay so little regard to it, that they lodge their cattle there: and indeed it is almost wholly filled up with sand and dung.

THE sides of this temple are not closed. The  
colonnade



colonnade which is there, is entirely open, and serves sometimes as a passage.

I RECEIVED this information from the same person that I mentioned above, and who had been upon the spot the year preceding.

THERE is, near Gau Scherkie, a calisch, which runs on the north side. It does not appear, however, to advance further than half a league within land, probably because it has been neglected. It was bordered on each side with a bank of free stones; but these banks are almost demolished by the Nile, which has carried away the greatest part of them.

ON the other side of the river, we find successively *Gau Ell Gerbie*, *Meschte*, *Schachtura*, *Schech Seinetdien*, and *Benge*; five villages that have nothing singular, except that the third, and the fifth, are a little retired within land. As soon as you have passed this, you get before *Tagta*, a town of an handsome appearance, situated on the west of the river and accompanied with mosques. We left it at four o'clock in the afternoon, and at the distance nearly of a league, we reached, on the same side, *Sou Ama*, a village, where begins on the west of the Nile the territory of the prince of Achmiin, as *Rejeyna*, another village, that is opposite, makes the beginning of the same territory on the east side of the river. I have given a view of *Rejeyna*. This village is situated at the foot of the mountains of the greatest Thebaïs; which is the reason that its soil is not very fertile. The few lands that they cultivate there are parched. In some places, however, the palm trees appear there rising out of the sand. The greatest ornament of this place is owing to its pigeon-houses, which at a distance make a very pretty appearance. Its inhabitants subsist principally on the navigation they follow on the Nile, in their barques; for they have a very great number of them. Besides, they have the reputation

of being extremely wicked. They often rebel against their Emir, who is the prince of Achmiin.

At seven in the evening we passed before *Taberbuur*, a village to the east of the Nile, and afterwards before *Maraga*, a pretty town, on the west of the river, situated in a delightful plain, where they reap the best wheat of all Egypt; but the lands about it suffer a great deal from the inundations of the Nile, which every year carries away something.

When we had doubled the point, about four leagues in extent, formed by the shore of the Nile, which makes an elbow towards Maraga, we advanced thro' a like space to an island, named *Tschiefret Schendouib*; it may be a small league in length; and at about the like distance from the western shore of the river, we discover within land, the village of *Gilfan*. The Nile makes in this place a second elbow, a little less, however, than the preceding; and it makes again a third, opposite the village of *Subaedsch*, situated to the west of the river; and above which there is a grand califsch, that bears the name *Ell Subaedschia*, and which runs from east to west.

Almost opposite to Shuaedsch, we see *Schech Haridi*, a place famous for the tomb of a pretended Turkish saint. This tomb is in the form of a little cupola, raised above the mountain.

They make, in the country, too much noise about the miracles of this saint to pass them over in silence. I informed myself about them with as much care as I could; and I am going to mention what they related to me.

The Arabs affirm, that *schech Haridi*, having died in this place, was buried here; and that God, by a particular grace, converted him into a serpent, that never dies, and who procures the healing of diseases, and bestows favours on all those that implore his aid, and offer him sacrifices.

---

<sup>a</sup> The folly of this story is glaring at first sight to the reader, on  
It

It appears, however, that this miraculous serpent makes some distinction of persons. He is much more propitious towards the great lords, than towards the inferior people. If a schech is attacked with any disorder, the serpent has the complaisance to let himself be carried to his house; whereas for the common people it is necessary, that the patient should shew a desire of his visiting him, and make a vow to recompense him for his trouble. And even in that case he does not go out, without a particular ceremony. It is absolutely requisite, that a spotless virgin should be commissioned with the embassy; for the *virtue* of the fair sex alone has any influence over him; and if *that* of the ambassadress has been the least sullied, he would be inexorable.

As soon as she comes into his presence, she makes him a compliment, and intreats him, with the most humble submission, to vouchsafe to let himself be carried to the person who wants his assistance. The serpent, who can refuse nothing to the virtue of the fair sex, begins at first with moving his tail, and makes some leaps. The virgin then redoubles her intreaties, and makes him new sollicitations. At length the serpent leaps upon her neck, places himself in her bosom, and there keeps himself very quiet; whilst he is carried in state, with great hallows and huzzas, to the house of the person who has requested him.

No sooner is he arrived thither, than the patient begins to find himself relieved. This miraculous physician does not withdraw for all that. He is

---

account of its novelty, and because it has not the prejudices of education in its favour: but in reality is it more absurd than the vulgar belief amongst the Romans, attested by very credible authors, of *Æsculapius* entering into a serpent, and, under that form, being brought by a solemn embassy to Rome, and curing a pestilence? We read in history, and may see it verified every day, that the most absurd stories have become religious tenets, in defence of which mankind are ready to cut one anothers throats, and have deluged the world with blood.

very

very desirous to remain some hours with the patient, provided that, during the whole time, they take care to regale his priests, or his saints, who never quit him.

ALL this goes on marvelously well, in case that no disbeliever, or Christian, come in the interim. His presence would disturb the feast. The serpent, who would perceive him, would immediately disappear. In vain would you search for him; he is no where to be found. Should he have been carried to the other side of the Nile, he would be able to return invisibly to the tomb, which is his ordinary retreat.

THE Arabs dare moreover to assert, that, if this serpent was cut in pieces, the parts would join again upon the spot, and that this attempt upon his life could not put an end to it, since it was destined to be immortal.

THE Christians of the country, who think themselves more wise than the Arabs, reason very differently upon this subject. They decide the case according to the spirit of their religion. They believe, very piously, that this pretended saint is the Devil himself, who, by a just judgment of God, has the power to mislead this blind and ignorant people; and what confirms them still more in this belief is, that they have amongst them a tradition, that it was to this place the angel *Raphael* banished the Devil *Asmodi*, which is mentioned in the book of *Tobit*, chap. viii. ver. 3.

FOR my part, I believe, that both the Arabs and Christians offend against the rules of reason. Before we consider a thing as miraculous or supernatural, it is necessary to examine the capital point, which is to know whether the fact be real; whether the circumstances are such as they are given out to be; and whether fraud has not a great share in it.

I AGREE that the serpent is there; it cannot be denied. But is he immortal? This is what I should be very cautious of granting. He dies, undoubtedly,  
like

like other serpents; and the priests who serve him, and draw a profit from him, have the artifice to substitute another of the same kind, when he happens to fail them.

IN the delicacy, that is attributed to this animal, of being unwilling to be touched by any but a virgin, and of not stirring from his place, if her virtue has received the least taint, I perceive nothing supernatural in it. Whoever has seen the mountebanks, that play every day such tricks in the great square, which is before the castle of Cairo, must have been struck with things much more remarkable than this. Is there any thing more easy than to make a serpent tamed<sup>e</sup> obey certain signs; and as to the virginity of their ambassadresses, they are always sure of not being deceived in that; since they chuse her so young, that she is safe from all suspicion. Besides, it is known that serpents are attracted by certain odours and herbs. The girl might have been rubbed with them; they might have prepared her by baths: At least she is adorned with chaplets, and garlands of flowers, and herbs, wherein they take care not to forget such as are capable of making an impression upon the serpent.

If it be asked, how it is possible, that he should disappear from the sight of so many people, and get back to his tomb, even tho' he has the Nile to pass? I answer, that this is no more difficult than the rest. It is sufficient to conceive that these priests, or saints, who serve the serpent, and accompany him, are excellent jugglers; and there will be no difficulty in conceiving that they are capable of filching away the serpent, in the presence of a great number of spectators, without the most attentive and quickest-sighted being able to perceive it. Their Legerdemain being thus

---

<sup>e</sup> PAUSANIAS says, "That all the dragons or serpents are consecrated to ÆSCULAPIUS, but principally those of a certain species, that are of a brownish colour, who let themselves be tamed, and are found only in the territory of Epidaurus.

played,



played, they feign to follow their saint, return back to his tomb, with a crowd of people, who, out of respect, dare not approach before the priests have entered, and replaced, as they think proper, the serpent in his tomb.

To cut the serpent in pieces, and to see the parts join again, would be an incontestable proof of its immortality. But they were never to be brought to that; and when the emir of Achmiin ordered them one day to make this tryal in his presence, the priests excused themselves from the experiment. And they will never be brought to that extremity.

I am not at all surprized to see Arabs and Christian Copti run blindfold into a pious fraud, destitute of all probability. Their mutual ignorance makes them give into the snare; but what I can scarcely pardon, is, that people of good understanding, and who would be thought incapable of being imposed on in this article, have not forbore to believe, that there was some mystery in so ridiculous a fable.

#### MONDAY, 2<sup>d</sup> of DECEMBER.

WE found ourselves, in the morning, between *Schech Flaeck*, a village on the eastern border of the Nile, and a Copti convent called *Deir Ell Abbiat*, on the west of the river; and at about a league within land. Some persons of our company, that had been formerly to see this convent, told us, that they had found there a cross, which was a relick of an ancient church built under the invocation of St. *Helena*.

In continuing our rout, we saw at our right *Barasbura*, a village, where there is a mosque, and further on we saw two other villages, namely *Bibar*, upon the eastern shore of the Nile, and *Ell Sarvie*, upon the western shore. The wind was favourable; but the elbows, that the Nile makes, obliged us often to have recourse to the cord, to make the barque advance



advance and be able to arrive at *Achmijn*. This town, situated on the eastern shore of the Nile, is the residence of the prince of the same name. It is large, and is adorned with several mosques. The Copti have there a convent, and the fathers *de propaganda fide* an hospital.

OPPOSITE to this town is that of *Meschie*, situated on the western shore of the river. We arrived there at night, and we fastened our barque to land, because our design was to stop there some time.

ALL the barques, that come from Cairo, in order to go to the cataract ; as likewise those that come from the cataract with a design of going to Cairo, stop here, to take in provision of bread and other things, of which they have need. It is in effect the most convenient place for that purpose ; for this town lies at half way, and all things are sold there very cheap.

WITHOUT the town there was a pretty large encampment by the bey of Girge, who was going to visit his territories. Wherever he stops, the adjacent places are obliged to furnish him with a certain quantity of bread, and other provisions ; and in order that one place might not be more burthened than another, they have fixed the days that he may continue in each place. He does not return to Girge till towards the end of December ; and even then he is obliged to encamp without the town ; for though it be his residence, it is not permitted him to continue there longer than three or four months every year.

HIS tent was distinguished from the others by forty lanthorns suspended before it, in form of checker work. There were among us some persons, who had letters of recommendation to present to him ; but they did not make use of them, because we had no want of any thing, and we were informed that he was to depart the next day.

TUESDAY

TUESDAY, 3<sup>d</sup> of DECEMBER.

WE remained all that day at Messchie. Our reys went thither, as soon as it was light, to get some bread made for himself and his crew. We took care likewise to provide ourselves with some, because our provision of biscuit began to fall short. One does not find bread ready made. When you would have any, it is necessary to take this method, namely, to purchase corn at the bazar, or *market*, and to send it to a horse mill, to get it ground. If this mill cannot dispatch it fast enough, because it is already engaged to grind other corn, you send it by bushels to private houses, where they grind it by hand mills, with which almost every house is provided. After having taken away your meal, you give it to certain women, whose business it is, and they take care to sift it and make bread of it. They dispatch it very quickly, though their bake-house is not the most commodious, nor in the best order. Their ovens particularly are very small, built of mortar, and heated with straw alone. This does not hinder them from making pretty good bread, though in somewhat an awkward manner: and indeed the shape of their loaves is not very regular. They keep the dough very moist, and you never complain that the bread is too much burnt. It succeeds very well when it is in the form of cakes; and it is a tolerable good food, when it is new; but it is good for nothing any longer than a day; after that you must have a good appetite to eat it with relish.

I WENT to see the bazar; and I found it better furnished than those that I had hitherto met with elsewhere. In effect the ordinary arrival of the barques contributes to render Messchie a place of trade. They bring thither, every market day, commodities from all the neighbouring places, because they are constantly sure of a sale. By this means all things

things there are very reasonable. We had a sucking calf of a buffalo for forty parats; hens for two parats a-piece; and so with regard to the rest.

THIS place is also famous for a sort of sweet meat, that they make in great abundance, and which the Turks and Arabs are very fond of on account of its sweetness.

As I was walking in the bazar, I met with two of their pretended saints, whom the market had drawn thither. They were entirely naked, and ran like mad men through the streets, shaking their heads, and crying out with all their might. A courtesan was come thither likewise, to embellish the festival with her presence. She had her face unveiled, as likewise her bosom, and her shift was white; whereas that of other women is blue. Her head, her neck, her arms, and legs, were adorned with abundance of trinkets; but all these embellishments did not characterise her so well, as her impudent air, and lascivious gestures. One would think, that this sort of persons must, in all countries have a common mark to distinguish them. This lady however had an extraordinary one, which was, that she infinitely exceeded all others in ugliness.

BEFORE I quit Meschie, it is necessary to say in its praise, that it has very fine pigeon-houses, and that they are in very great abundance. It is likewise accompanied with a mosque; and we see there a very large church-yard, where one may remark the different monuments, with which they honour the memory of the dead. It owes this last distinction to the height of its situation which is the reason that they bring thither the dead of all the neighbouring places, that they may not be exposed to the annual inundation of the Nile. The Christian Copti, as also the proselytes *de propaganda*, have in this town, and likewise through all the extent of the states of the emir of Achmiin, very great privileges. They are  
not

not afraid here to strike a Mussulman ; whereas in other quarters, as soon as they are gone from hence, they run a risque of being murdered.

THE two days that we stopped at Mechies, we saw a great number of barques arrive there. They came thither with the same intention as we ; that is to say, to get in provisions.

WEDNESDAY, 4<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

OUR provisions being got, we set sail about eight o'clock in the morning ; and as soon reached to two villages which are to the west of the Nile ; the one named *Gharafee* ; the other called *Ell Haigua*. But this last is pretty near a league within land.

WE passed afterwards between four other villages, namely, *Galefmund*, and *Tug*, both to the west of the Nile. The two others situated to the east of the river, are named *Ell Asauvie*, and *Ell Haurvie* ; it is a little above this last village, that the eastern part of the states of the prince of Achmiin terminates.

WE had afterwards to our right the village of *Afferat* ; and afterwards that of *Ell Ghoraen*, above which the western part of the states of the same prince terminates.

DIRECTLY opposite *Ell Ghoraen*, we perceive *Deir Melac*, where the Copti have a convent ; and where there is a burial-place for the Christians of Girge.

AT length we found ourselves between two other places, of which the first is nothing but a village called *Scharaque*. It is however pretty famous, because it commonly gives a secure retreat to the Turkish malecontents of the government, or to such as have other reasons for retiring thither.

THE Arabs, who dwell there, maintain so well their liberty, that they pay no tax but by their schech. There are in the neighbourhood of *Scharaque* divers  
grottos

in the mountains, but it was not permitted me to go and see them.

THE other place that we had at our right was *Girge*, or *Tschirsche*. I landed to see this city, which may pass for a large one: and indeed it is the residence of the bey, or governor of the Upper Egypt, of which it is the capital. The Turks have there several mosques. It is the see of a Copti bishop; and the fathers *de propaganda* have an hospital, in which they maintain themselves by their practice of physic, that renders them necessary to the Turks. This does not secure them, however, from being exposed to continual oppressions, and sometimes to real persecutions.

It must be observed, that though *Girge* bears the title of capital of the Turks in the Upper Egypt, it is, in some measure, the bounds of their dominion. If you go higher up, you perceive that their power is on a very weak foundation. The Arabs there do not fear to give, openly, their protection to those who have offended the Turkish government.

The continuation of the voyage of the author, from  
GIRGE to ESSUAEN.

THURSDAY, 5<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

WE had sailed with a favourable wind, on the 4<sup>th</sup> in the evening, at our departure from *Girge*; but a calm came on in the night; and we took the opportunity to land some of our people, to whom we gave orders to go and seek for wood, and to take care to join us again, at *Bagjura*, which might be ten leagues higher. We continuing our voyage, as much as the slackness of the wind would permit, saw on our left the mountains called *Scherck Uladiackchia*: They begin at *Scharaque* to approach

VOL. II.

E

quite

quite to the border of the Nile. They occupy a vast extent of country, independent of the Turks, and which is governed by the chiefs of the Arabs, who are its sovereigns; insomuch that they pay tribute to no one. If any malecontent of Cairo, or of any other places of Egypt, take refuge amongst these Arabs, he there finds a sure protection; for no one would dare to go, and search for him, in this quarter, where the Turks themselves are afraid even to go on shore.

ON our right, we passed by two villages *Neslet Affcherif*, and *Sau-Adne*. These two villages are very little considerable. Afterwards we got to *Bardis*, a town, which has a pretty appearance. It is adorned with a mosque; and it has, to the south, a calisch, which advances a good way within land, and goes to Barasbura, to Ell Turaet, and to Ell Kebira, &c.

WE had likewise on our right *Ell-Magasch*, *Bellienne*, *Bennier-Akaep*, *Schech Bereech*, *Schenine*, and *Sambuud*. These are so many villages, of which the last is near a league from the border of the Nile. Bellienne was formerly a town, that made some figure, and which had a mosque; but it is at present entirely ruined.

ON the other side of the river, almost opposite to Samhuud, we saw *Ell-Bellabiisch*, a mere village, above which we find the island *Giesfret-Abdelkadir*: It may have two leagues in length, and lies north and south. We remarked there a village, opposite which there is another named *Nerarnisch*; it is situated on the eastern shore of the Nile.

DIRECTLY opposite the southern point of *Giesfret-Abdelkadir* are two other villages, *Baganes*, and *Beniberfa*. The first is situated upon the western shore of the river; the second upon the eastern shore.

AFTER having passed, with a good deal of difficulty, *Beniberfa*, on account of the banks of sand, which were very high at this season, we saw upon  
our



our left *Ell-Umbiir*, a village accompanied with a mosque; and in pursuing our voyage, we perceived four other villages, namely *Schechmebadir*, and *Ell Gouasa*, situated also to the east of the river, and *Alkilluug* and *Sauaggel*, both to the west. A little higher, and on the same side, is the village called *Sagh Ell Bagjura*. Between this village and that of *Sauaggel*, there is a calisch, named *Maharakka*, and close to *Sagh Ell Bagjura* we find the town itself of *Bagjura*. This town, situated at a little distance from the border of the Nile, is pretty large, which is owing in a great measure to the nearness of the calisch of *Maharakka*; and it has a mosque. Our people joined us again at *Bagjura*, and brought us some wood; which gave us a good deal of pleasure, because we had a scarcity of it. At the time we were at *Bagjura*, fifteen janissaries went to our barque, and demanded a passage in it. The reys, however, refused it them, alledging, that by the agreement he had made with the Franks, who had hired him, it was not permitted him to take any one into the vessel, without their consent. The janissaries laughed at this answer, and said that they were going to seek for their clothes; and that if admittance into the barque was refused them, they would enter it by force. The reys informed me of it, as soon as we were arrived; and we made him immediately put off from shore. By this means, we preserved ourselves, without doubt, from very bad company; and perhaps avoided some fatal accidents.

FRIDAY, 6<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

WE sailed the whole night, and passed first *Giesiret Nejagbeye*. This island, where there is a village, may have three fourths of a league in length. It is situated opposite to *Attariff*, a village, upon the eastern shore of the Nile, and where begin the mountains of

*Tschibel Monna*. Opposite the same island Giesiret Nejagheye, we perceived to the west of the river, but a good league within land the town of *Farstuut*; it has a mosque, and the mission *de propaganda* maintains there an hospital.

We had afterwards, on our left, two villages, *Ellakluraes*, and *Selemie*. They are opposite to two others, named *Dirp*, and *Hau*. In the morning we found ourselves before *Schaurie*, another village, to the west of the Nile. As we were becalmed, I proposed to myself to take advantage of it, by going to see the ruins of a temple, which was reported to be near to *Hau*; but I learned, that there was an assembly held there at that time of three or four hundred of the pretended Mahometan saints; and that this had drawn thither a great concourse of people. There was no need of such crouds to hinder me from exposing myself there; so that I could not satisfy my curiosity. A janissary came to *Schaurie*, and begged of us a passage, which we granted him. He fled for having killed one of the fifteen janissaries who wanted to seize his barque. He was himself grievously wounded. He was, however, a very brave fellow, who more than once did me a great deal of service, when the Arabs would have hindered me from looking on the antique ruins, which I thought proper to draw.

THE wind was then very favourable; so that we set sail, and continued our voyage. The Nile is, in this quarter, very irregular, as well with respect to its bendings, as its breadth; but with regard to its bottom, we found it very clear: so that we passed, without much difficulty, the four following villages, *Ell Gaesser*, *Gasserusejaed*, *Jasenie*, and *Fau*. These four villages were to our left; and we passed at the same time on our right, three others, namely *Reiesie*, *Netzche Ell Abiid*, and *Dinedera*. Near this last place we saw several crocodiles, extended upon banks  
of

of sand, which the running off of the waters of the Nile had left dry. We came up successively to three other villages, situated on the same side, and which are named *Cassarna*, *Senaepfi*, and *Ell Wokf*. The last is remarkable, because it is in its neighbourhood that the territory of the Arabs called *Hauara* terminates; and the second has, opposite to it, another village, named *Dischne*, or *Debeschne*. This name, which signifies *admiration*, was given it from hence, that the Arabs, who went up the Nile, here found themselves at a loss to know on which side they should turn, when they would pray. They had regulated themselves before, according to the course of the Nile, which they knew to go from south to north. They had by consequence the rising sun to their left, and the setting sun to the right. But it was no more so when they were in this place. The Nile here makes an elbow, which was the reason that they saw the sun rise on the right<sup>f</sup>. They were in a great amazement at it; which occasioned the name of *Debeschne*, or admiration, to be given to this place.

NEAR this same place, we saw several floats, formed of earthen pots, tied together by twisted osiers. It is the ordinary manner of conveyance, and there need but two men to govern such a float. At eight in the evening we were becalmed. We perceived that the current carried us backwards; so that we cast anchor on the western border of the river, where there runs a great barren plain, covered with sand, and some brambles. The nearest village to us was *Meraschdeb*. We had opposite, on the other side of the Nile, the village of *Saeida*.

---

<sup>f</sup> It was probably owing to a like change of situation by their migrations, that the Egyptians thought, according to HERODOTUS, that the sun had four times changed its rising and setting; so as to rise where it now sets, and to set where it now rises. HERODOTUS, book ii. cap. 142.

SATURDAY, 7<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

OUR people went, very early in the morning, ashore, to seek for some game ; they found nothing but a prodigious quantity of sparrows. They shot several of them, and picked up about a hundred amongst the brambles. They were, however, extremely meager, and of a bitter taste.

AT eight o'clock in the morning, we quitted this unfruitful land ; and we soon got to the village of *Dar*, situated on the eastern shore of the Nile ; and directly opposite is *Magdscher*. This is a name that they give to a great road, which goes from east to west.

WE passed afterwards on our left the village of *Ell-Gaesser* ; after which we arrived before the town of *Dandera*. This town has a mosque, and it is without doubt the remains of the ancien *Tentyra*, which is mentioned by STRABO, PLINY and other authors<sup>s</sup> : I was told also, that there was still to be seen an ancient temple ; and I had a great desire to go thither ; but I could not prevail upon our reys to put us ashore, which deprived me of a fine opportunity that I much regretted<sup>n</sup>.

---

<sup>s</sup> PLINY speaks of *Tentyra* as an island ; which it might very well have been in his time, since the Nile is continually making new islands, and probably deserting the former. The inhabitants of *Tentyra* were famous of old for their intrepidity and artifice in subduing crocodiles : PLINY carries his description of them to a perfect extravagance. " Quin et gens hominum est huic belluæ adversa in ipso Nilo Tentyritæ, ab insula, in qua habitat, appellata. Mensura eorum parva, sed præsentia animi in hoc tantum usu mira. Terribilis hæc contra fugientes bellua est, fugex contra insequentes : sed adversum ire soli hi audent. Quin etiam flumini innatant : dorsoque equitantium modo impositi, hiantibus resupino capite ad morsum, addita in os clava, dextra ac læva tenentes extrema ejus utrimque, ut frenis in terram agunt captivos : ac voce etiam sola territos, cogunt evomere recentia corpora ad sepulturam. Itaque uni ei insulæ crocodili non adnatant : olfactuque ejus generis hominum, ut Pphyllorum serpentes, fugantur." *Lib. viii. cap. 25.*

<sup>n</sup> THE reader may see an account of this temple in LUCAS, and in MONTFAUCON's supplement à l'*Antiquité expliquée*. THE

THE town of Dandera is situated very agreeably. For the space of two leagues, along the course of the Nile, and likewise very far within land, you see nothing but continual rows of fruit trees, and of all the various sorts that Egypt produces. All these trees, were in verdure, and some were loaded with blossoms, as in the spring.

A LITTLE higher we found, on the eastern shore, the village of *Kenauvie*. But, at two o'clock in the afternoon, there came on a calm, which obliged us to land on the same side, a little below *Giene*, or *Kiene*, a town, which is not at present very considerable, but which has however a mosque. There was formerly in this place a great commerce; for they had made a road, which led to Cossir, a port of the Red-sea; and in three days they crossed the deserts of the Thebais. But at present this rout is not secure, on account of the robbers.

I HAD been told much of the antiquities of this place, which engaged me to go thither; but I found nothing there. The inhabitants themselves of the place could give me no account of them. In vain did I seek for the ancient canal that was dug, for conveying merchandizes to the Red-sea, and for bringing others from thence by this means. I did not perceive the least mark of it, neither in the town, nor in the adjacent places<sup>1</sup>. It is in this town they celebrate, every

---

<sup>1</sup> HERODOTUS gives the following account of this canal: "NECUS the son of PSAMMITICHUS was the first that attempted to make a canal leading to the Red-sea, which DARIUS the Persian afterwards sunk deeper. The length of it was four days sail. The breadth of it was such, that two three oared vessels could be navigated with their oars at the same time. The water came into it from the Nile a little above the city Bubastis, near Patumos, a city of Arabia. It terminated in the Red-sea.

"A hundred and twenty thousand Egyptians were destroyed in digging this canal, in the reign of king NECUS. NECUS desisted in the midst of the work, on account of an oracle which foretold him, that he was working for a Barbarian; for the Egyptians call all

year, the great festival, at which the bey of Girge is commonly present ; but not without having first obtained permission from the Arab princes or schechs.

I PERCEIVED that all the neighbouring places of Giene were covered with all sorts of plants, such as pompions, coloquintidas, and others, which were, for the most part, unknown to me. As I did not see any corn there, I imagined that they had cut it ; and that the plants, which I perceived, were the second product of the ground.

THERE were in the neighbourhood of the town divers ponds, in which water was preserved after the inundation ; but it was not good for drinking. It had a brackish taste, which it takes from the soil itself ; and indeed the inhabitants do not use it for any other purpose than watering their grounds, and giving drink to their cattle.

SUNDAY, 8<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

WE had set sail in the evening, at nine o'clock, and continued our voyage the whole night ; dur-

---

Barbarians that do not speak the same language as themselves." *Lib. ii. cap. 158.*

*The account given by DIODORUS SICULUS is this :*

"THE canal reaching from the Pelusiac mouth of the Nile to the Sinus Arabicus and the Red-sea was made by hands. NECUS the son of PSAMMITICHUS was the first that attempted it ; and after him DARIUS the Persian carried on the work something further, but left it at length unfinished : for he was informed by some, that in thus digging through that isthmus he would cause Egypt to be drowned ; for they shewed him, that the Red-sea was higher than the land of Egypt. Afterwards PTOLEMY the second finished the canal, and in the most proper place contrived a sluice for confining the water ; which was opened when they wanted to sail through, and was immediately closed again ; the use of it answering extremely well the design. The river flowing through this canal is called the PTOLEMEAN, from the name of its author, Where it discharges itself into the sea it has a city named Arsinoë." *l. i. 21.*

ing



ing which we passed before three villages, situated on the eastern shore of the Nile, namely *Affalie*, *Eb-benuut*, and *Ell-Baruut*. Opposite to the last of these places we find *Tiuraet* a mere village. It is pretty near to this place that commence the habitations of the Arabs called *Schoraffa*, which signifies princes, or gentlemen.

A little higher the Nile makes a great elbow; and when we had passed it, we found ourselves, in the morning, between two other villages, of which the one called *Schech-Hie* is to the east, and the other named *Ell-Ballaes* is to the west.

At about a league further we found two other villages, namely *Haradschie*; it was to our left; and *Toug*; this was to our right. We landed near this last, which we went to see; but as we found nothing remarkable in it, we continued there no longer than half an hour: after which we re-embarked, and put off from shore. Almost immediately we perceived, on the eastern shore of the river, the village of *Koft*; a little after, that of *Kos*; there is in this village a mosque. It is situated on the same side; we reached afterwards to the village of *Ghattara*, situated on the western shore; and about four o'clock in the afternoon, we found ourselves before the village of *Ell-Hella*, is was to our left, whilst we had to our right *Nagadi*, a town which may pass for large, and which has some mosques. When we were arrived there, the Arab schech sent for our reys, to ask him who were the Franks that he conducted. His answer was, that we were merchants, protected by *OSMAN* bey, from whom we had even letters of recommendation. The schech having replied, that he did not believe any thing of it, and that he had heard divers reports with regard to us and our intentions, which were not the most favourable for the country; the rey endeavoured to justify us from this reproach in the best manner that he could; but all that he alledged was

was not listened to, till one of our drogmans, or interpreters, whom we sent to the schech, had presented to him one of the letters of OSMAN bey. When he had read it, he contended himself with saying, "That he could never have believed, that OSMAN bey would have furnished us with recommendations, by which we might go into places, where it was not permitted to the Franks to enter.

THERE are several Copti at Nagadi, and likewise they have a bishop there. They are not however very obliging towards the Franks, and they even play them villainous pranks, when they find the opportunity for it. We continued all the night in the town, as well as a part of the following day.

#### MONDAY, 9<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

WE were this day plagued with a croud of Christian Copti, that brought with them abundance of Arabs. They placed themselves directly opposite to our barque, and appeared at first to observe us with a good deal of surprize. But when they saw, that no one attempted to drive them away, they became more bold; and at length so insolent, that they dared to enter into the barque, where they searched every thing, even to the victuals that were in the pot. Our barque was like a market place, where some were continually coming and others going. We could not comprehend from whence such a curiosity should arise, inasmuch as we had seen nothing like it in any other place. But our reys, coming on board, unveiled the mystery to us. He made us to understand, that all those people, in seeing our coffers and kitchen utensils, had judged, that the first were filled with gold and silver; and that all the brass and pewter which we had, were, in like manner, of the one or other of those metals; that they had concluded from thence, that we had with us immense riches; that the report  
of

of it was spread throughout the whole town, and that there was no safety for us if we advanced any further. Upon that, he offered to conduct us back again to Cairo. "They will kill us, both you and me, added he, to seize the treasure that they imagine you have. They will spread the report of it through the whole country; and if you escape in one place, you will certainly perish in another. The Arabs are wicked enough to go to such excesses."

Our reys, who had taken fright, and entirely lost the Tramontane wind, insisted still a long time, that we should return back to Cairo. But all these discourses made no impression upon our Minds. We told him, to comfort him, that we had nothing to fear; that we were well armed; that no one should do either him or us the least mischief, without paying for it immediately with his life; and that we were resolved to advance, and to go to the cataract. Our obstinacy, and the assurances that we gave him of defending his life, as our own, quieted him a little; and he contented himself with answering us by an *In-schallah*! that is to say, "God's will be done!" To say the truth, the Copti gentleman had done us a very ill office. From that time, we could not land without being beset with a croud of people. The reports, that they began to spread at Nagadi, always went before us; inasmuch that we should have been exposed to a great number of accidents, if we had not kept ourselves very much upon our guard. The worst of all was, that our reys was become so fearful, that he trembled whenever we mentioned to him the putting us on shore. We were obliged to force him to it, in those places where there was any thing to see. The reader will perceive, in effect, by the continuation of this journal, that we had a great number of difficulties to surmount.

At length, at five of the clock in the evening, we quitted Nagadi; we put off from shore, and very soon

soon reached to an island, that lay to the east. They call it *Giesiret Metera*, it has a village, and may be three quarters of a league in length. But what renders it more respectable, is, that it is the ancient island *Tabenna*, where saint Pachôme built the first monastery of his congregation, and the ruins of which are still seen opposite to the village of *Meneschia*, situated on the western shore of the Nile.

At about half a league higher, we found ourselves between two other villages, namely *Demfig* and *Gierajoes*. The first was to our right, and the second to our left. The wind then being too slack, we landed near to *Gierajoes*.

TUESDAY, 10<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

THE calm obliged us to continue, all the night, in this place; but as there arose a little wind at day break, we set sail, but without much success; for the wind soon ceased, and we caused our barque to be towed to *Soes*. It is a village situated to the west of the Nile. In advancing further we were often aground, and without suffering, however, any damage, except that our people were extremely fatigued, and this obliged us to stop again. Our reys, who had not got rid of this fright, cast anchor near some islands, which the sinking of the Nile had placed above the level of the water. We were very near the village of *Gamola*, situated on the western shore of the river, and opposite another village, which is on the eastern shore, and that is named *Sebenuer*. It happened, that three or four crocodiles had chosen for their repose the little islands, near which our barque was at anchor. We fired upon these animals, of which two darted immediately into the water; and one appeared to be motionless. We thought we had killed it, or at least much wounded it; infomuch that we caused the barque to advance, and seizing some perches, and other instruments.

ments, that we had at hand, we made up to it, in order to demolish it, in case it was not dead. But we were scarce got within fifteen paces of him, before he awaked at the noise that we made, roused himself, and threw himself into the water, as the others had done. He might be thirty feet in length. We met also that day twenty other crocodiles, extended on banks of sand; and they were of different sizes, namely, from fifteen to fifty feet.

THE lands of this quarter appeared to us extremely well cultivated. We remarked there, among other things, Turkey wheat, sugar canes, lupines, &c.

WE saw also that day a float of straw, supported by gourds, and governed by two men.

### WEDNESDAY, 11<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

WE did not set sail till about noon. The wind that blew, was not strong, but it was favourable; inso-much that we soon found ourselves between *Ell Kerne* and *Damamin*; two villages, of which the first is to the right, and the second to the left.

At a league further, we saw to our left *Magdscher*, a mere village; and a little time after, we perceived on our right the ruins of a town named *Medinet Habu*; it was at about half a league within land.

In advancing a little further, we found ourselves between two villages, of very little importance, which are *Kurnabilal* and *Ghosaem*. The first is on the western shore, and the second on the eastern. Afterwards we approached to the village of *Ell Akalita*, situated to the west, and almost opposite to *Carnac*, a name that is given to a vast extent of country, situated to the east of the Nile, and where one discovers, almost at every step, some very considerable ruins, which continue for the space of more than three leagues square, quite to *Luxxor*, or *Lukoreen*. That  
I might

I might not resume the subject again, I shall treat of these ruins all at once.

It was four o'clock in the afternoon, when I began to perceive, on the east side, an obelisk; and a little after I discovered a great quantity of peristyles, some gates, and antique edifices, dispersed confusedly here and there through the plain.

THESE marks did not permit me to doubt one moment, but that what we saw were the remains of the ancient Thebes. I ordered our reys to land me there; but I could not obtain it, neither by good words, by promises, nor by menaces. He did not alledge at this time the fear that he had of the Arabs. All his excuse was, that there was no possibility of landing, on account of the islands, and banks of sand, which hindered it; and he swore by his beard, that it was not possible to get thither, without going a good way about by land. As I was then persuaded that there was no possibility to satisfy my curiosity, I endeavoured to catch at a distance all that I was able. I drew those magnificent antiquities in all the situations that it was possible for me; and as they offered themselves to my sight. But, at my return, I landed at CARNAC, and I did my utmost to add to my designs what might be wanting to them<sup>k</sup>.

---

<sup>k</sup> DIONORTUS SICULUS gives the following account of the ancient Thebes.

"It is said that OSIRIS built the city of an hundred gates in the Thebais of Egypt, to which city he gave the name of his mother; but that succeeding ages called it Diospolis (that is, The city of Jupiter) and that some called it Thebes. The founder of this city, is a subject of dispute, not only amongst historians, but even amongst the priests of Egypt themselves. For many say, that Thebes was not built by OSIRIS, but many years after him by a certain king, of whom I shall give a particular account in its proper place." *Lib. i. 9.*

"AFTERWARDS it is said that BUSIRIS succeeded the throne, and eight of his descendants; that the last of them, who bore the name as his great progenitor, built the city called by the Egyptians the great Diospolis, but by the Grecians, Thebes. That he appointed its circuit to be an hundred and forty *stadia*; that he adorned



In PLATE IV. are represented different views of the antiquities of Luxxor.

it wonderfully with magnificent buildings, with beautiful temples, and with other donations. That he built also houses for private persons, some of four and others of five stories in height: and, in a word, made it the most opulent city not only of Egypt, but of the whole world. As the report therefore of its excessive opulence and power was every where spread and known, it is said that on that account the poet has taken notice of it in the following lines:

ἰδ' ὅσα Θήβας

Αἰγυπτίας ὅθι πλεῖστα δόμοις ἐν κλήματα καίται,  
 Αἱ δ' ἐκατόμυλοι εἰσι. δινκόσιοι δ' ἄν' ἐκδῶν  
 Ἄνθρωποι ἐξοιχνεύσι σὺν ἵπποισιν καὶ ὄχεσθιν.  
 Iliad, lib. ix. ver. 381.

“ Not all proud Thebes’ unrival’d walls contain,  
 “ The world’s great empress on th’ Egyptian plain,  
 “ (That spreads her conquests o’er a thousand states,  
 “ And pours her heroes through a hundred gates,  
 “ Two hundred horsemen, and two hundred cars,  
 “ From each wide portal issuing to the wars.)”      Port.

*It is a little surprising that so judicious a critic as the late doctor CLARKE, should imagine that this description of Thebes might serve for conjecturing the time that HOMER lived. For HOMER was so exact a writer with regard to chronology, as indeed in every thing else, that in a speech of ACHILLES he would necessarily speak of Thebes as it was in the time of the Trojan war.*

DIODORUS continues his account of Thebes, by saying, “That some report that the city had not an hundred gates, but only many and great porches of temples, from which it was called ἐκατόμυλοι a finite for an indefinite number. That in reality twenty thousand chariots issued out of it to the wars; for there were an hundred stables along the side of the river between Memphis and Thebes, each stable receiving two hundred horses: the foundations of these stables are still shewn.

“ We have heard that not only this king, but that many of those who succeeded him, were ambitious to improve the city with many and great presents of silver and gold, with ivory, and a multitude of colossian statues; that besides this there was no city under the sun so adorned with obelisks of an entire stone. Of four temples that were built, amazing for their beauty and bigness, there was one the most ancient of all, whose circumference was thirteen stadia, its height forty five cubits, and the breadth of its walls twenty four feet. Suitable to this magnificence was the ornament of its dona-

I HAD

I HAD a great desire to draw also the hieroglyphics, with which the greatest part of these pieces of anti-

tions in the inside, wonderful for their sumptuousness, and still more for the delicacy of workmanship. The buildings indeed have remained to modern times, but the silver and gold, and all the costly ivory and precious stones, were pillaged by the Persians, when CAMBYSES set fire to the temples of Egypt."

"It is said that the Persians, having transferred this opulence to Asia, and having carried with them artists from Egypt, built those renowned palaces at Persopolis, Susa, and others in Media. They say that so great was the multitude of riches at that time in Egypt, that from the rubbish collected together after the plundering, and burned, there was found of gold more than three hundred talents, but of silver, something less than two thousand three hundred talents." Lib. i. c. 30.

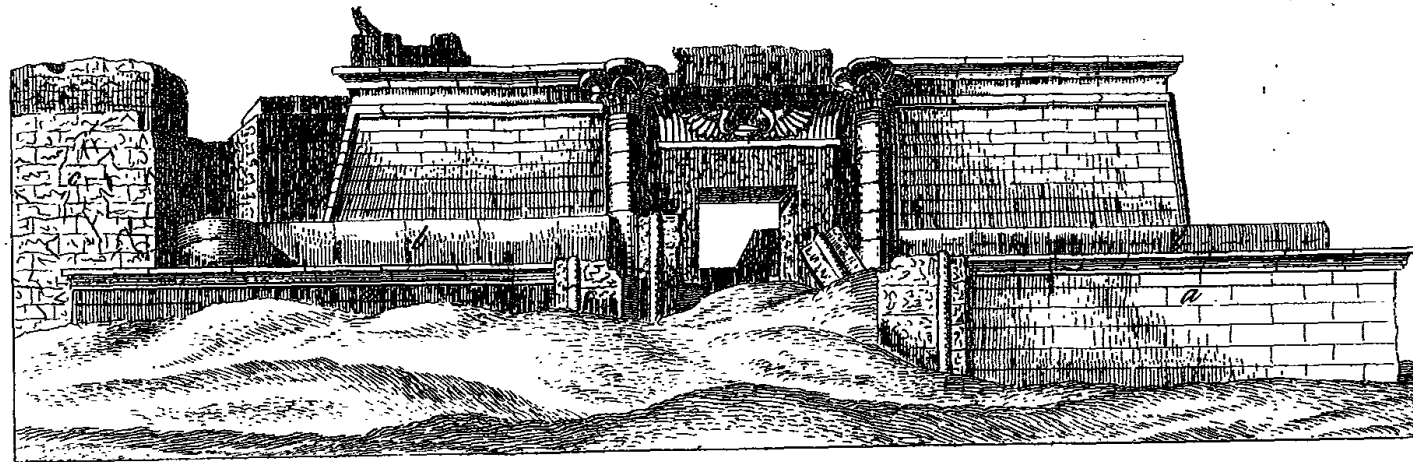
POMPONIUS MELA *observes on this passage of HOMER*: "Thebes, ut HOMERO dictum est, centum portas, sive ut alii aiunt, centum aulas habent, totidem olim principum domos: Solitasque singulas, ubi negotium exegerat, dena armatorum millia effundere."

*It is remarkable that HERODOTUS should have given no account of the ancient Thebes, but contents himself with mentioning*, "That in the reign of PSAMMENITUS the son of AMASIS, there happened a very great prodigy to the Egyptians; for it rained at Thebes, which it had never done before nor since, to the time that HERODOTUS was there, as the Thebans told him." Lib. iii. cap. 10.

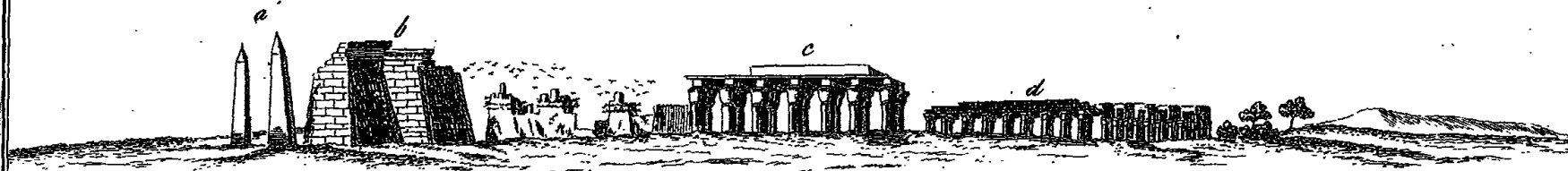
*He observes also*, "That the name of Thebes was formerly given to all Egypt, the circuit of which was six thousand one hundred and twenty stadia." Lib. ii. cap. 15.

*The vast sepulchre of king OSMANDYAS at Thebes, is described by DIODORUS in the following manner*:

"At its entrance is a gate-way of various stones, its length two hundred feet, and its height forty five cubits. Having passed through that, you come to a square stone peristyle, each side being four hundred feet. Instead of pillars it was supported by figures of animals sixteen cubits in height, each cut out of a single stone, and carved in an antique manner. The whole roof twelve feet in breadth, and consisting of a single stone, was variegated with stars on a bluish ground. After this peristyle, there was again another entrance, and a gate-way, in other respects resembling the former, but more abundantly wrought with all kinds of sculpture. At this last entrance there are three statues, all cut out of one entire stone, the *syenites*; and one of these statues in a sitting posture, is the largest of all in Egypt. Its foot in measure exceeds seven cubits. The two others placed at its knees, the one on the right, the other on the left, are the representations of the daughter and mother, in  
quity



*An ancient Portal full of painted Hieroglyphics a. First Wall. b. Second Wall. c. Third Wall.*



*Two Views of the Superb Ruins of LUXOR. a. Obelisks. b. Portal. c. Grand Colonnade. d. Smaller Colonnade.*

quity are covered ; but it would have required more time, and more conveniency, to undertake such a work.

---

size inferior to the former. This work is not only worthy of esteem on account of its bigness, but is wonderfull in its workmanship, and excellent in the nature of the stone, insomuch that in so great a bulk, there is not the least crack or stain to be seen. It has this Inscription on it,

*I am OSYMANDYAS, king of kings. If any one is desirous to know how great I am, and where I lie, let him surpass any of my works.*

There is also another statue of his mother, that stands by itself, of twenty cubits, and of an entire stone, having three diadems on her head, which signifies that she was daughter, wife, and mother of a king. At the end of this gate-way there is another peristyle more remarkable than the former, in which there are various sculptures expressive of the war he waged with those that revolted at Baſtra; against whom he sent an army of four hundred thousand foot, and twenty thousand horse, the whole army being divided into four parts, of all which the sons of the king were the commanders.

“ In the first of the walls the king was represented, besieging a citadel surrounded by water, and the foremost in danger against the enemy, with a lion by his side fighting in a terrible manner. Some of the interpreters have reported, that it was a real lion made tractable by the king himself, combating with him in battle, and putting to flight the enemy. But others have reported, that the king being remarkably valiant and strong, and willing to perpetuate himself, expressed by the image of the lion the disposition of his own soul, *in the same manner as our RICHARD the first surnamed COEUR DE LION*. In the second wall were wrought the captives led by the king, deprived of their private parts and their hands; by which seems to be signified, that they were effeminate in their souls and destitute of hands in dangerous exploits. The third wall had various kinds of sculptures, and elegant paintings, by which were represented the victims of oxen by the king, and the triumph that he celebrated on account of the war. In the middle of the peristyle, in the open air, was an altar built of the most beautiful stone, excellent in its workmanship and wonderful in its size. At the last wall were two statues in a fitting posture of one entire stone, of twenty seven cubits in height: near which were three passages made from the peristyle, which lead to a building supported by pillars, formed in the manner of a musical theatre, each side having two hundred feet. In this there was a multitude of wooden statues, expressing such as had law-suits, and looking up to those that were to pronounce sentence. Those carved upon one of the walls were thirty in number, and having a chief Justice in the middle, who had the figure of TRUTH suspended from his neck,

THURSDAY, 12<sup>th</sup> OF DECEMBER.

In the evening we had fastened our barque on the western shore of the Nile, opposite to Carnac,

with her eyes shut, and a multitude of books lying by him. These images expressed by the design, that Judges ought not to take any bribe, and that a chief justice should regard truth alone.

"AFTER that there was a walk full of various buildings, in which were represented all sorts of eatables, that were the most pleasant. The figure of the king was carved and likewise stained with colours, offering to God the gold and silver, which he received yearly from all Egypt, out of the silver and gold mines. Underneath was written the sum, which, estimated in silver, amounts to three thousand two hundred myriads of *minæ*. After that was the sacred library, upon which was inscribed, the *repository of the medicines of the soul*. Contiguous to this were the images of all the gods of Egypt, the King in like manner making suitable offerings to every one; as also shewing to OSIRIS, and those that are his assessors in the infernal regions, that he had led a life religious, and in doing justice to men and gods. On the same side with the library, there was a building excellently formed, with twenty *lectisternia*, containing the images of JUPITER and JUNO, and likewise of the king himself; in which also the body of the king appears to have been deposited. Around it was a multitude of buildings, having elegant sculptures of all the animals that are consecrated in Egypt. There were steps from thence to the top of the sepulchre, which after you had passed, there was upon the monument a golden circle of three hundred and sixty five cubits in circumference, and a cubit in thickness. There was inscribed, and divided into compartments according to each cubit, the number of days in the year, and there were written the natural risings and settings of the stars, with their influence and significations according to the Egyptian astrologers. They report that this circle was pillaged by CAMBYSES and the Persians, at the time that he subdued Egypt. Such, it is said, was the sepulchre of king OSYMANDYAS, who seems not only to have much surpassed others in the train of expensiveness, but likewise in the contrivance of the artists. The whole sepulchre is said to have included a compass of ten *stadia*." Lib. i. 30, 31, 32.

Mr. NORDEN intimates in the former volume, pag. 85. "That there still appeared to be the mark where the golden circle was placed."

There were some other wonders reported of Thebes, but PLINY seems to have given no credit to them; tho' the reason he assigns, is, I think, very insufficient.

which



which is nearly one hundred and thirty-five common French leagues above Cairo. I got up as soon as it was day, with the design of going to see if there were not, on that side, some other remains of the ancient Thebes. I had not gone far, before I met with two great colosses, which I took at first for those that STRABO mentions; but I had afterwards reason to be persuaded, that the colossal statues, which that author speaks of, were not the same as those which I saw.

THIS first discovery having encouraged me, I returned on board the barque, in order to get arms, and to be accompanied by those who might have a taste for being of the party. The reys, who perceived our preparations, opposed them with all his might. He made use, at first, of his whole rhetoric, to endeavour to intimidate us all. Afterwards, seeing that no one yielded to his representations, he had recourse to a method, which he thought more efficacious. He swore, that, if we went ashore, he would go back with his barque, without waiting for our return. I gave him to understand, that it was a design, determined on; that we would land; and that if he dared to go away, we should not fail to join him again, and to make him pay dearly for his insolence. This menace had an effect upon him. He drew back to his entreaties that we would not land, at least out of respect to him. "If good fortune, said he, favours you sufficiently to escape the danger; yet you put me in the greatest peril in the world, for the future. The people of the country will never pardon me; and when hereafter I shall have occasion to come here again, and to go on shore, they will murder me without

---

"Legitur et pensilis hortus, immo vero totum oppidum Ægyptiæ Thebæ, exercitus armatos subter educere solitis regibus, nullo oppidanorum sentiente. Etiamnum hoc minus mirum, quam quod flumine medium oppidum intersuente. Quæ si fuissent, non dubium est HOMERUM dicturum fuisse, cum centum portas ibi prædicaret." Lib. xxxvi. cap. 14.



mercy, for having brought you into their country, from whence they will certainly think that you have carried away treasures."

I was too much accustomed to such sort of discourses, to submit to them. But as I perceived that the time passed away, and that I should want a good deal to make my researches, I was hesitating on the part that I should take: when the janissary, whom I have mentioned before, and who delighted in resolute attempts (for these gentlemen think themselves more privileged than others) began to threaten the reys, and immediately went on shore with me. Some of our people followed us, and we went across the plain, taking for our guides the two colosses of which I have already made mention.

THERE was no more than a league of way to arrive thither, if we had been able to march in a straight line; but the plain being intersected by canals, and covered with Turkish wheat, we were obliged to make many windings and turnings, and three hours passed away before we were able to arrive near the colosses, (PLATE V.) to make the drawings of them. With regard to the place where they are situated, I have already observed, that they are no more than about a league distant from the Nile; and it is there the plain begins to rise, by means of the sand, which reaches quite to the foot of the mountains.

AT about two hundred paces from these colosses, we see, on the east and north sides, some ruins of divers other statues, tumbled down; and towards the south, at the distance of half an hour's walk, there are still other ruins, both ancient and modern.

THE colossal figures are marked in the plate *a* and *b*. They front the Nile. The first seems to represent a man, and the second a woman. In other respects, they are both of the same size, and that size is prodigious. They have about fifty Danish feet in height, from the bases of the pedestals to the summit  
of

of the head. It was by their shadow that I determined this measure; and by applying the perch to it, I found that, from the sole of the feet to the knees there were fifteen feet, which justifies the computation that I had made; for, according to the ordinary proportion of a man, it follows from thence, that the height of each figure is fifty feet, including the pedestals.

THEY are sitting upon stones almost cubical, of fifteen feet in height, and as many in breadth, including in them the Isiac figures, which serve for ornament to the two corners of each stone. The back part of each stone is higher than the fore part, by a foot and a half.

THE pedestals have each five feet of height, thirty-six and a half of length, and nineteen and a half of breadth.

THE distance between the two statues, is twenty-one paces.

THEY are both made of divers blocks of a sort of sandy and greyish stone, which seems to have been drawn from some of the grottos, that one remarks, in great numbers, in the neighbouring mountains<sup>1</sup>.

---

1. F. VANSLEB has the following remarkable observation on the several grottos or caves that are dispersed throughout Egypt: I have wondered at the capricious designs of the ancient Egyptians, to make such wide caves, so high, and so numerous, yielding so little conveniency to the inhabitants, for they are made upon the steep mountains of sand, far from towns and water, and dug in the dark and main rocks. If I had not perused the history of SAID IBN PATRICK, who saith, that the PHARAONS, kings of Egypt, employed the Israelites in digging these mountains, I should be of the opinion of the country people, who believe that all these caves had been made by devils, who have been thereunto forced by conjurors, this art having been much practised in Egypt; for one would think that it is impossible for men to make them: and I dare say, that when a traveller hath seen all the curiosities of Egypt, if he hath not seen these mountains and caves of the province of Thebes, he has seen nothing.

“ My guide led me into one as high as a man on horseback, so extraordinary large, that, without hyperbole, a thousand horse might there draw up in battle array, which caused me to wonder not a little.”

THEIR breasts and their legs are covered with abundance of Greek and Latin inscriptions, which have been engraven on them since they were made, and in the time of the Romans.

THE back part of the sides of the seats upon which they are sitting, are covered with hieroglyphical figures, which in general resemble one another very much, tho' there is some difference in the particular form of the characters. Besides that, there is on each side a *term*. These seats seem to be of an entire stone, and made of the same sort with the rest. They appear however a little more brown, and harder. The two Isiac figures which, as I have already remarked, adorn the extremity of the seats at each corner, appear whiter and of a finer grain than the rest; which may give suspicion, that tho' they are adjusted in the ancient Egyptian taste, they have however been placed there, long after the statues were erected.

I HAVE remarked, that the pedestals are also more hard and brown than the seats. Their Inscription consists only in a single line of hieroglyphical figures, spoilt by injury of time, and by the violence that has been done them. It does not appear to me, that the bodies of the colossal figures have suffered any thing from the hands of men. All disfigured as they are, you see not in them the least bruise that is distinguishable; it is only the injury of time, which has rendered them deformed, and has deprived them of the parts which had any projecture.

AFTER having finished this design, I approached nearer, in order to draw another more particular, which would represent one of the sides of these colossal figures, marked letter *a*, with the hieroglyphics and the other ornaments. But whilst I was employed

---

*Without having recourse to the task-masters over the Israelites, to devils, and to conjurors; I think these caves might easily be supposed owing to the vast quantity of materials that must have been drawn from thence, for such stupendous works and buildings as have been mentioned before.*

on this work, I perceived that about fifty Arabs had surrounded us; whereas at our arrival we had not seen so much as one, neither near nor at a distance. At first, however, they contented themselves with saluting us, and in looking upon us with a sort of amazement. They drew the nearest to me; and they were curious to see, what I was doing.

WHEN they had passed half an hour with us, looking upon us, they came at last to demand the *backsich*, that is, to say, money; but we thought it proper to refuse them, because it might have occasioned bad consequences. Offended at this refusal, they began to grow insolent, and to make a violent noise. During that time, I kept myself quiet, continually employed on my design. I left to the missionary fathers the trouble of endeavouring to appease them, and to our servants the liberty of returning their noise, in the best manner they could. These servants were moreover supported by the janissary, who had good lungs, and a good stick; with which, however, he took great care not to strike any one.

DURING this tumult, there came up a man on horse-back; he was preceded by another armed with a long pike. The first, to whom the Arabs gave the title of *schech*, approached us, and, with an air of authority, demanded of the Jew valet what we were doing there, and who had given us permission to come thither? The Jew asked him insolently, in return, what was that to him, and who had given him permission to ask such a question, with so much boldness? By this means they were got to high words, and in an instant all the company were engaged in squabbling. Upon which the *schech* declared to us, that if we did not go away immediately, he would drive us away by main force.

At this menace the janissary drew up close to him, and told him, by way of confidence, that he should take great care not to touch us, because we were well provided with fire arms, and understood perfectly how

to manage them. He added, that it might easily happen, if he did not retire immediately, some one of us might take it into his head to fire at him, which would certainly lay him dead on the spot.

THIS serious discourse made the schech thoughtful; and as it happened, that one of our people knocked down, at that instant, a little bird with a fowling piece, our gentleman appeared quite confounded. He seemed, however, very soon to recover from his fright. He told us plainly, that if we did not go away, he would go and burn our barque, and pillage all that was there.

OUR janissary could not digest this menace. He judged that the schech was not so mischievous as he would be thought to be. He put himself into a furious passion, and swore, that if he dared to attempt the least thing against us, he would himself be the man to kill him like a dog.

THE schech, at these words, began to smile, wished us a good day, and withdrew, followed by all the Arabs. He left us, however, in an uncertainty, whether he would not go to the barque, or endeavour to cut off our return to it. Yet in the main we were well enough pleased to find ourselves delivered from such disagreeable company.

I HAD, during that time, finished the particular design, which represents a side of the seat of one of the colossal statues, (PLATE V.) and I had drawn the inscriptions which are engraven on their legs<sup>m</sup>. With regard to the design, I have drawn it with all the exactness that was possible, in hopes that this single

---

<sup>m</sup> THE different readings of these inscriptions by Dr. Pococke and Mr. Norden, together with an explication of them, have been given in a very learned treatise, entitled, *Carmina sepulchralia, &c. a viro clarissimo JOHANNES HENRICO LEICHIO, Lipsiæ edit. anno, 1745, pag. 75.* It is re-published, together with several others, by doctor Pococke, anno 1752. They very well deserve the learned reader's perusal.

side will be sufficient to give a just idea of the others, which time and circumstances did not permit me to draw; for though the hieroglyphics there are different in some places, yet I have observed in the general disposition the same arrangement. There is *behind* a kind of resting place, and *before* a term; and besides the hieroglyphics, you see also upon the design the two Isiac figures, which I have mentioned above.

As to what concerns the hieroglyphics in particular, I shall remark, that they are very neatly formed on equal floors, and very well preserved. The two figures that you see at the bottom, are of a size larger than natural. They seem to form a knot, and to observe strictly the precepts, that hieroglyphics prescribe. They are made in *basso rilievo*, in such a manner, however, that the summit of their heads has no more *relief* than the entirely smooth surface of the stone.

THE little figures represented above the two Isiac statues, are likewise in *basso rilievo*; but they have not the appearance of an Egyptian work; and they are quite different from the rest.

WITH regard to the inscriptions, which have been engraven as testimonies, that the voice of MEMNON had been heard. I have copied them, such as they are upon the legs of the colossal statue, marked let. *b*. But as I was obliged to take them in haste, for fear of losing too much time, I dare not assure the reader, that they are done with the utmost exactness, especially with regard to the Greek inscriptions, for I do not understand that language. I chuse, however, to give them, such as I have taken them on the spot, rather than to hazard the making any corrections in them since.



ANNOV HADRIANI  
 IMP THATERI  
 MEROS PRAEF.  
 AVDIT MEMNONEM  
 XIII MART HORAS  
 FVNI SVLANA VERTVLIVS  
 CLETTAFRICANI PRAEF  
 VXOR AVDI MEMNONEM  
 PRIDIE CR HORAS  
 ANNO I IMP DOMITIANI AVG  
 CVM IM M TERTIO VENISSEM  
 T FI TITIANVS - - - - -  
 PREFECT - - - - -  
 AVDIT - - - - -  
 MEMNONEM - - - - -  
 TR ARRIL - - - - -  
 III FIAMLI - - - - -  
 HORA - - - - -

L IVNIVS CALVINVS  
 LME ΓΑΛΛONTISBERINI  
 AVDIVI MEMNONEMCV - - -  
 MINICIN RVT - - - - -

LIXANC (H) LIBERTVS  
 PROCVRATOR VSIACVS

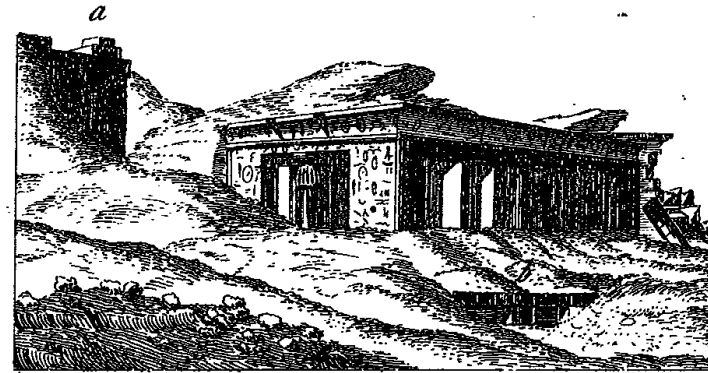
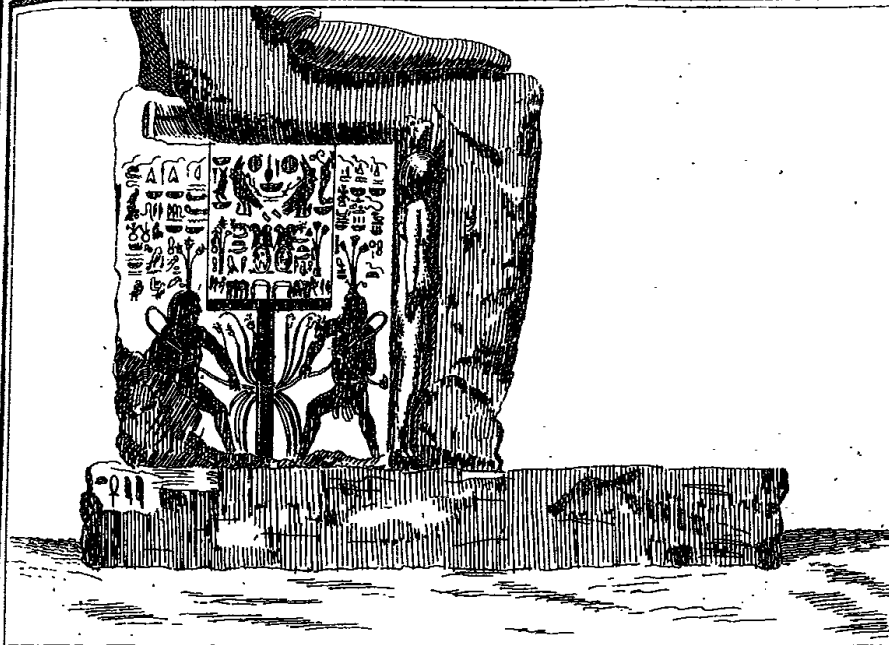
C MA'NIVS HANIOCHVS  
 CORINT - - - - -

ΗΛΙΟΔΟΡΟΣ ΤΗΝΩ  
 ΝΟΣΚΑΙΣΑΡΕΙΑΣΤΙΑ  
 ΝΙΑΔΟΣΗΚΟΥΣΑΔΡΑΙ  
 ΕΜΝΗΣΘΗΝΕ ΗΩΝΟΣ  
 ΚΑΙΑΛΑΝΟΥΑΔΕΛΑΩΗ

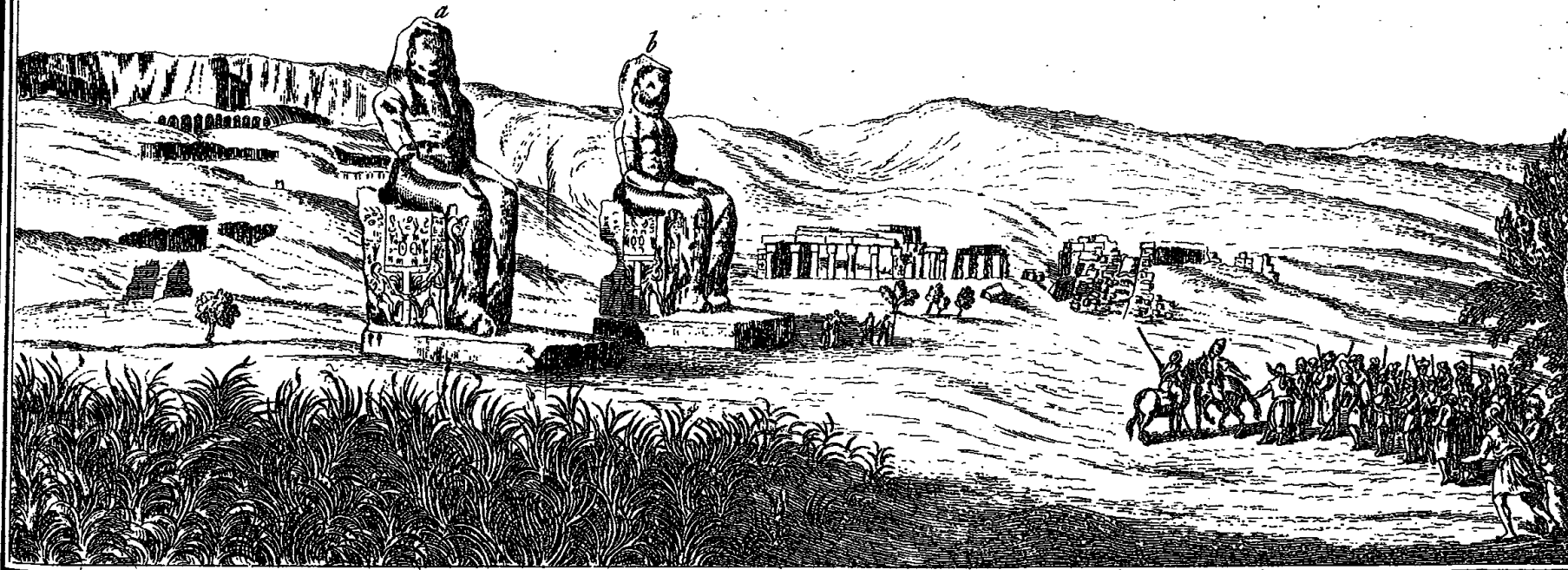
CLAVDIVS MAXIMVS  
 LEG XXII AVDI  
 MEMNONEM HORA I  
 - - CAMILIVS - - - -  
 - - HORA PRIMA - -  
 - - SIMIS AVDIVI - -  
 - - MEMNONIS - - -

TETRONIVS  
 PRAEF - - -

HORAM CVM PRIMAMCVMQVE - - - -  
 HORAM SOLES FECVNDAM  
 PROLATA OCEANO LVMINANT  
 ALMA DIES  
 VOX AVDITA MIHI EST TER BENE  
 MEMNONIA



*a. A Sort of Pedestal covered with Greek Inscriptions b. A Souterrain*



*Two colossal Statues with the Ruins of the Palace of MEMNON.*

WE passed afterwards, to the ruins that are found on the north side, and which are not far distant from these colosses. There is no doubt, but they are the remains of the palace of MEMNON. I had already sketched them (PLATE V.) but the more I considered them, when near, the more they appeared to me to deserve a particular design. I drew one in effect, and it is found in PLATE VI.

THE reader may there remark, letter C, the portico of a temple, capable of giving a great idea of the Egyptian architecture. If it be examined a little, it is seen, that each column had, above its capital, little square stones, which served as beams, upon which rested great blocks of stone; of which all the parts, that could be seen, are covered with hieroglyphics, and, for a greater lustre, are incrustated with the most lively colours. Sometimes they are blocks of forty feet in length, and of two feet in thickness every way. Above these stones, there are other large ones, placed cross-ways, and joined one to another as if they were floors; and all that can be seen of these stones, in the roof, is likewise loaded with hieroglyphics.

WE observe, in this edifice, two sorts of columns. That which is marked (a) is of the most beautiful kind. Their thickness and solidity give them, at a distance, a delightful appearance; when you approach them, the hieroglyphics are agreeable to the sight; and when you are quite near, their colours have a charming effect.

THIS sort of painting has neither shade nor degradation. The figures are incrustated like the cyphers on the dial plates of watches, with this difference, that they cannot be detached. I must own, that this incrustated matter surpasses in strength all that I have seen in this kind. It is superior to the *al-fresco* and the mosaic work; and indeed it has the advantage of lasting a longer time. It is something surprizing

ing to see how gold, ultra marine, and divers other colours have preserved their lustre to the present age. Perhaps I shall be asked, how all these lively colours could *soften* together; but I own it is a question that I am unable to decide.

I HAVE remarked, however, that the hieroglyphics, employed in these buildings, have not the same appearance that other pieces more ancient have: neither is there all that justness, which the Greeks and the Romans were accustomed to give to their figures.

You see, in the inside, upon the western wall, as you go towards the north, three large figures, that have the defect I have just mentioned, if I am not deceived, they have an allusion in it to the fall of ADAM and EVE. There is represented a green tree, to the right of which is a man sitting, holding in his right hand some instrument, with which he seems willing to defend himself against a little oval figure, covered with hieroglyphical characters, that a woman presents to him, who is standing to the left of the tree, whilst with the other hand he accepts what is presented to him. Behind the man appears a figure standing, the head covered with a mitre, and who stretches out a hand to him. I have examined the rest, to see if I could not discover the series of the history; but I saw nothing that appeared to have the least relation to it. The greatest part of the figures resembled rather amorous devices, or representations of some heroical exploits.

To return to the architecture of the edifice. I shall mention that, on the east and west sides there is a wall, which serves as an inclosure; and that on the north and south sides there are two colonades; but the external columns are not so high, nor so well ornamented, as those of the middle. They have no capital. There is only contrived, on the top, a bulging out, which produces nearly the same effect as the  
great

great end of a club. Both the one and the other are entirely covered with hieroglyphics.

THERE must have been twenty one columns on each side; but there are no more than thirty two standing; and it is on the north side they are wanting.

THOSE of the middle, being the highest, make the roof more elevated than the galleries. The reader sees, on the design, no more than one. They have twenty four Danish feet in circumference<sup>n</sup>, and a proportionate height. We see not the pavement, because it is covered with rubbish, and three or four feet depth of sand.

AT fifty paces from this edifice, we find other remains of antiquity, which I have represented in the same plate (letters *D*, *E*.) It seems to have been a gallery, that went round the court. These ruins are so much the more worthy of attention, as it appears that PHILOSTRATUS has spoken of them in what he has written of the temple of MEMNON, in the life of APOLLONIUS.

You see there, under letter *D*, four pilasters, formed of divers pieces, all made of that sandy stone which I mentioned above. Each pilaster is adorned with a *term*, the arms laid across, and who holds in the right hand a kind of crook. The heads of them have been knocked off; but there remains still on the shoulders a part of the ordinary head dress of the Egyptian figures. Above each *term* there is a kind of club.

THREE large blocks of stone cover these four pilasters, which in the same manner as the rest are full of hieroglyphics; but the time did not permit me to draw a particular design of them.

UNDER the letter *E* are marked four other pilasters,

---

<sup>n</sup> The *Danish* Foot is larger than the *English*, in the Proportion of 103 to 100.

resembling those that have been just described, and whose faces look towards those of the former.

BEHIND the gallery there is a wall, marked letter *F*. It is very much ruined. We observed however, that one end of this wall was joined at top to the colonade, by large stones, so that it was a walk, sheltered from the rays of the sun. We perceived the same thing in the stone, marked letter *D*, and resting upon the four first pilasters.

THE distance between the pilasters, *D* and *E* is too large to have been covered. It follows from thence, that if it was the place where the statue of MEMNON was placed, it must have been uncovered and in open air; which appears so much the more probable, as it might, by that means, receive better the impression of the rays of the sun.

UNDER the letter *G* is represented the fragment of a colossus thrown down and half buried. We scarce discover enough of it, to judge whether it has been sitting, and in the same attitude as those that I have described in PLATE V. The upper part is wanting in this, and it appears that violence has been employed to separate it: the marks of it are still visible. All the body of this colossus was of a single piece of black granite marble. Its pedestal is in some measure entire, and we see on it some hieroglyphics, such as knives, semi-circles, and other figures.

THE rest of this colossus is so disfigured and dismembered, that it was not possible for me to take an exact measure of it. I imagine, however, that its height must be about twenty feet.

ALL these marks seem to indicate, that it is here we must seek for the vocal statue of MEMNON, which STRABO, PAUSANIAS, PHILOSTRATUS, LUCIAN, JUVENAL, TACITUS, and divers other ancient authors, Greek and Latin, have mentioned. Yet I am not presumptuous enough to determine any thing about  
it



it on my own judgment; I leave to others, more learned than I am, to pronounce on that point<sup>o</sup>.

As the greatest part of those authors relate, that the statue of MEMNON gave a certain sound at the rising of the sun, I was curious to strike, with a key upon what remains of this colossal figure; but as the whole is solid, it does not give any more sound than another block of granite, which is sunk in the ground. The sepulchral urn, that is seen in the first pyramid, tho' it rests entirely upon its base, sounds however like a bell, but it must be observed that it has an hollow.<sup>p</sup>

<sup>o</sup> It is very remarkable, that neither HERODOTUS nor DIODORUS have made any mention of this vocal statue of MEMNON. DIODORUS indeed mentions, in a passage that I have translated from him above, that the three statues at the entrance of the sepulchre of OSMANDYAS were the work of Μένωνος καὶ Σουχίτου, but this is manifestly a corrupt reading. Vide WESSLINGII Edit. vol. i. pag. 56.

*What gives the story of this vocal statue the most credit with me, is the authority of TACITUS, who says, "Ceterum GERMANICUS aliis quoque miraculis intendit animum, quorum præcipua fuere MEMNONIS saxea effigies, ubi radiis solis icta est vocalem sonum reddens; disiectasque inter et vix pervias arenas instar montium eductæ pyramedes."*

*But it is very possible that TACITUS might have given too great credit to the reports of GERMANICUS.*

STRABO's account of it is this:

"Of two colosses, consisting of an entire stone, and near to each other, the one is still preserved, but of the other the upper parts from the seat are fallen down, occasioned, as they say, by an earthquake. It is believed, that once every day a noise, as of a stroke but not a great one, is made from the remaining part in the seat and base: and I being on the spot with ÆLIUS GALLUS, and a multitude of his friends and soldiers attending him, about the first hour of the day heard the noise, but whether from the base, or the colossus, or whether it was made purposely by some one of those that stood round the base, I cannot affirm. On account of the uncertainty of the cause, I am inclined to believe any thing rather than this, that a sound is emitted from stones so disposed." page 816. Edit. Paris.

*In allusion to the fall of a part of the statue, occasioned by an earthquake, JUVENAL has said*

"Dimidio magicæ resonant ubi MEMNONE chordæ,"

Sat. xv. ver. 5.

<sup>p</sup> DR. SHAW remarks, "That it gave the musical note E-la-mi, if he remembers right." pag. 421.

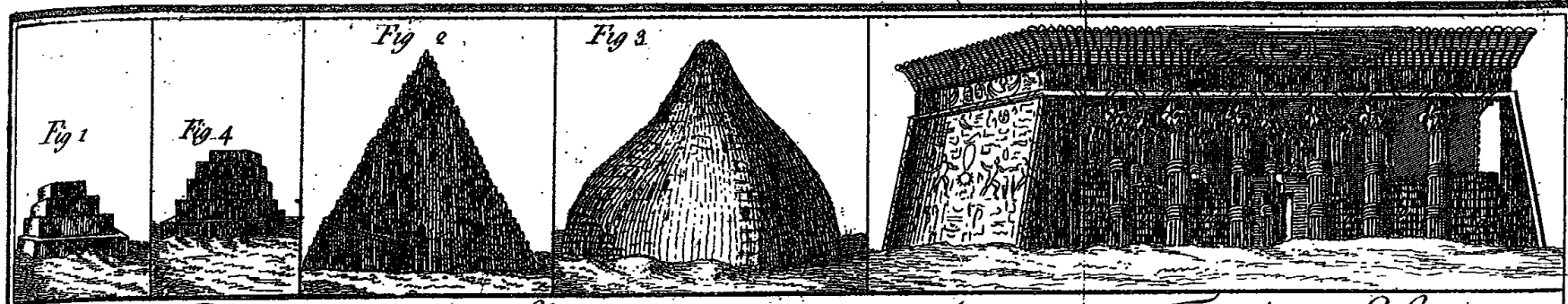
THERE

THERE is besides that in this place another colossus, marked letter *H*. It is entire, and of a single piece of granite marble; but its height is very moderate. It is at present thrown down, lying on its face, and half buried in the ground. All that we can see of it appears to be no ways damaged; and with regard to the attitude, it is the same as that of the colosses I have mentioned.

I saw likewise a colossal head, dressed in the Egyptian manner, and which is represented under the letter *I*. It has two feet in height, is made of black granite, in the taste of the ancients, and finished with a great deal of art and labour. It has together with this a simplicity that is charming, and which gives one reason to judge, that the rest of the colosses must have been executed by the hands of a great master. We find, however, no other remains of it at present, tho' there may be such concealed under the sand, which covers so many other antiquities.

WHEN I had completely considered all that appeared to me worthy of attention, I took my rout, with the persons that accompanied me, along the mountains, and at various distances I entered into several grottos. After which we arrived at *Medinet Habu*. It is a city at present ruined, and which had been built to the west of the Nile, at about three quarters of a league within land, and upon a part of the ruins of Thebes. We there found an antique and magnificent portal. The Arabs had made of it a gate to their town. It faced the Nile; and as it is well preserved, and is of an extraordinary beauty, I have taken the design of it. (PLATE IV.)

WE afterwards went over several little hills formed by ruins and sand; and we arrived at a square building, which was a kind of anti-chamber with regard to the portal, and built of large blocks of white stones of the height of a man. We see still the remains of them appearing above ground. The upper part is covered

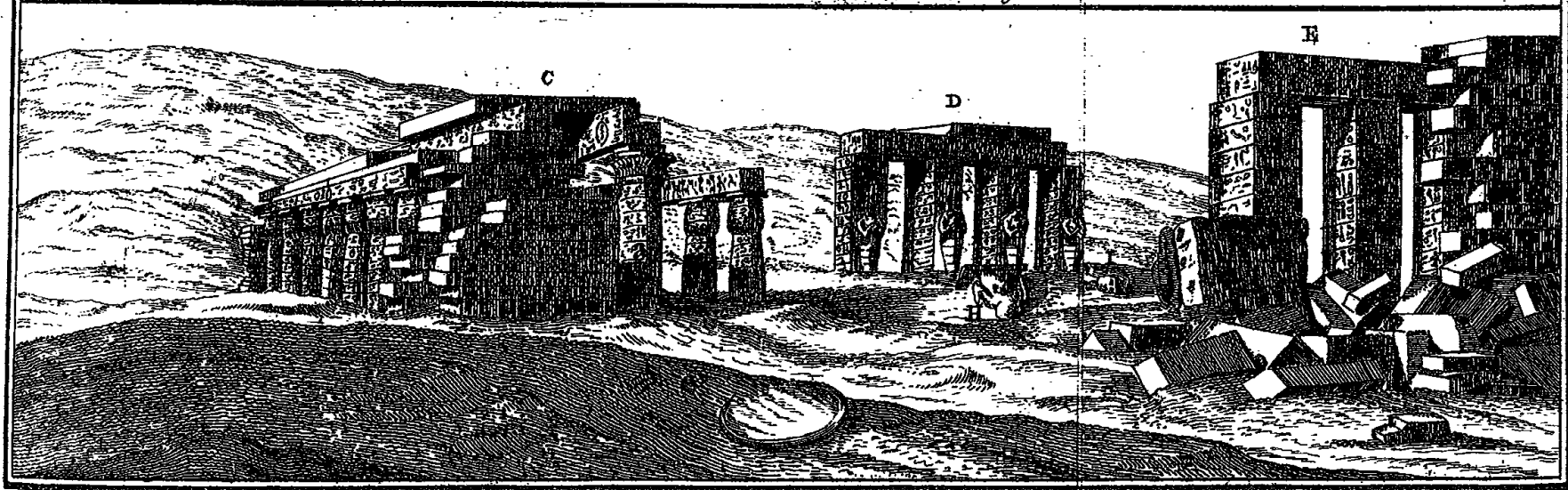


*Pyramids near Sakarra*

*An ancient Temple at Esnary..*



*View of the Town of Edfu*



*Ruins of the Palace of MEMNON.*

B.R.

J. Mynde sc.

covered with a plain cornish. Opposite to the portal there is a pretty large opening, which has on each side a piece of a wall, adorned with hieroglyphics. This square building does not properly terminate at the portal, but at the walls of the ancient town, of which you still see some remains to the north of the portal. The face of this square building is marked letter *a*, in order to distinguish it from another wall, which is nearer to the portal by twenty paces, and makes another separation. It is without a cornish; and the piece of wall, which is near its opening, is likewise filled with hieroglyphics, and is separated from it, as may be seen in the design. In advancing a dozen paces further you arrive at two columns, composed of divers great stones. They have no hieroglyphics; but their channelled capitals are incrustated with colours, and have the prettiest effect in the world, tho' they have not the advantage of being made by the rules of any order of architecture.

WHEN you have passed these columns, you have to climb over an abundance of large blocks of stone, that embarrass the passage of the portal. They are all filled with hieroglyphics; and I observed there, amongst others, four frizes of a greyish stone, with branched-work in *basso relievo*. They were lying on the ground amongst the other ruins; and they struck me the more as I perceived that it was a work of the Romans, adorned, in the middle, with the heads of *Diana* and *Bacchus*; and in the rest covered with foliages, of the vine and oak. I perceived nothing like it, neither nigh, nor at a distance; and I saw no buildings, where these frizes could have been made use of. All the rest was of an Egyptian or an Arabian architecture; the last being; as is well known, made of mud and slime; for it is thus that the Arabians build at present.

THE architrave of the portal has two frizes, the one over the other. It is smooth, and forms a pretty large

large opening. But the frontispiece is very much ruined. I discovered there, however, the wings of a dragon, such as we see in abundance of other edifices; and I observed likewise the remains of that sort of cartouch, or ornament so familiar to the Egyptians. All this is in *basso relievo*, and incrustated with colours.

ABOVE this opening there is a little *corona*; and all round the gate there is a large border, filled with hieroglyphics. With regard to the inside of the gate, it is covered with large blocks of stone, which form an even roof, and adorned, in like manner, with hieroglyphics.

I OUGHT not to forget the great stone, which is extended upon the architrave. We know not the use of it; but it is entirely covered with hieroglyphics, perfectly beautiful.

WHEN we had passed through this gate, we meet with another, made in the same manner. This leads to a third; and perhaps there is a fourth; but this is not easy to be ascertained: The second scarce affords you a free entrance; and the third is so filled up with rubbish, and lying under ground, that your curiosity must terminate there.

WE returned, therefore, from thence to contemplate the buildings, which are at the right hand of the portal. Nothing is more magnificent; but unhappily they are inaccessible, on account of the ruins and rubbish that stop up the passages.

At length we passed, in our return, through divers little villages, without meeting any one there who insulted us. They contented themselves with wishing us a good day. But when we arrived at the border of the Nile, we no longer found our barque there. The reader will imagine that this must give us great uneasiness. Yet, as there had been no wind that day, we judged that it could not be far off. We continued, therefore, to march along the border of the Nile, and in half an hour's time we discovered it.

THE



THE reys then came out to meet us, with joy painted in his countenance. He congratulated us on our happy return; and told us, that though he had navigated more than twenty years upon the Nile, he should never have ventured to land in this place; the inhabitants had such a character of being villains. This is certain, that all the great city of Medinet Habu has been ruined, only on account of their obstinacy and rebellion.

THESE people occupy, at present, the grottos, which are seen in great numbers in the neighbouring mountains. They obey no one; they are lodged so high, that they discover at a distance if any one comes to attack them. Then, if they think themselves strong enough, they descend into the plain, to dispute the ground; if not, they keep themselves under shelter in their grottos, or they retire deeper into the mountains, whither you would have no great desire to follow them.

OUR reys was willing to excuse himself by the necessity he was under of changing his place; but his excuse was received for what it was worth; for we perceived very well, that fear, which he could not get rid of, had made him take this step.

IN the mean time, I found myself extremely fatigued with the march that I had made that day. It was very severe, more especially because the ground was throughout either rugged, or covered with sand. The great heat had likewise much contributed to the weakness I found in myself; not to mention, that I was not yet well recovered from the disorder which I had at Cairo. I was seized the same day with a great head-ach, and a violent fever; insomuch, that I began to be apprehensive of a relapse.

FRIDAY, 13<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

I HAD been very ill the whole night, but a great



vomiting, which came on, carried off my fever. It left, however, a pain in my head and a great weakness.

As the calm continued, we were obliged to have recourse to the cord; and we left on our right the two villages *Kurnabilal* and *Ell Akalita*. We reached towards the evening to the village of *Nezletameris*. It is on the same side, and we cast anchor there, pretty near to *Ell Tschelame*. It is a pretty considerable town, accompanied with a mosque, and which is near to *Arment*: this is at present nothing more than a mere village, but it was formerly a city named *Hermontbis*. We discovered there some antiquities; but the weakness I was in, did not permit me to go thither: Besides that, I should have found a great deal of difficulty to persuade our reys to stop there.

We saw, in advancing on, abundance of Arab cottages, dispersed in the country. Some of our people landed, in order to go to those that were nearest to the river, and to seek there for corn for our poultry; but these Arabs are not accustomed to lay in provisions. They live only from day to day; and as they have scarce any thing to eat, they have still less to sell.

Our people fired that day upon several crocodiles, without killing any one. The greatest part of these animals did not permit themselves to be approached. They darted themselves into the water, before you could get within gun-shot of them.

#### SATURDAY, 14<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

We had no wind, so that we were obliged to have recourse again to the cord, and it was by this means that we advanced, from *Arment*, quite to *Ell Retsegaet*, a village situated on the same side. The ground that lyes between these two villages, and which may  
be

be a league and half in extent, is full of ancient ruins that are extremely remarkable.

In continuing our voyage, we saw successively upon the eastern shore of the Nile five villages, namely *Hambdie*, *Madfchergarona*, *Tot*, formerly *Typhium*, *Senemie*, and *Gibbaeg*. The last of these villages is situated opposite to that of *Demegraed*. This occupies the place of the ancient Crocodilopolis. We cast anchor near it, and our people that landed in this place, killed there some geese of the Nile.

I FOUND myself, that day, pretty well recovered, excepting a little weakness which still continued.

THE lands about Damegraed appeared to have been neglected. They have not cultivated them since the last inundation of the Nile; and the sun had so parched them, that they were full of cracks, so deep, that I could not reach the bottom with a zagaye, or Moorish dart, of six feet in length. They were, however, at this time, applying themselves to cultivate them, and six oxen yoked to a plough, had a great deal of difficulty to turn up the ground.

#### SUNDAY, 15<sup>th</sup> OF DECEMBER.

WE had a favourable wind the whole night; but our reys was not in a humour to set sail. When day began to appear, our people landed to go a shooting, and left me alone aboard with the Jew valet.

THERE had been a great calm all the morning, but towards eight o'clock, a fresh wind having arisen, the reys was endeavouring to take advantage of it. The Jew valet would have a native of Barbary go and call our people; he said he would not. They came to words, disputed, and grew warm to such a degree, that the Barberin, who had a piece of wood in his hand, gave a blow with it upon the head of the Jew. THE latter endeavoured to defend himself, but he was soon overpowered by other blows. I ran to his

succour with my pistol in my hand. The sight of this fire-arm immediately separated the combatants. However, as such disputes might be attended with ill consequences, I ordered the reys to give notice to his Barberins, that if ever afterwards any of them dared to touch our people, he would run a risque of being killed *like a dog*, this is the expression that is used in the country. The reys took the expression in its literal sense; and my menace had so good an effect, that from that time there was no more any dispute.

THE contest that had happened, made us lose all thoughts of setting sail. Our barque remained at anchor all the day, which I employed in looking at the adjacent places of Demegraed, without discovering the least trace of the ancient *Crocodilopolis*, which, it is pretended, was situated there. It was not till eight o'clock in the evening that we set sail.

MONDAY, 16<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

WE continued sailing all the night; and the wind was so favourable, that at five o'clock in the morning we had already passed *Mahamiid*, *Gerera*, and *Ell Tschibbelleen*. These are the three villages, situated on the western shore of the Nile. The last, however, is distant from thence near half a league; and almost opposite, you see *Schagab*, a mere village: as likewise *Ell Kiman*, which we left, some time after, on our right. At a league higher we find *Ass Fuun*, a city of an handsome appearance, and which has a mosque. It is the capital of the valley of *Mettani*, and is situated a little within land, to the west of the Nile. It has opposite, on the eastern shore of the river, the village of *Magdscheradome*. At a league and a half higher we saw, on the same side of the Nile, a convent of Copti, called *Deier Omali*. And opposite, a village named *Ell Ardie*. Afterwards at a good league and a half further, we perceived *Helle*, a village situated opposite

opposite to *Efnay*. This is a great city, to the west of the Nile, adorned with a mosque it is the residence of an Arab schech; and it is believed, that the ancient *Latopolis* was situated in this place. One of our fathers, who understood Arabic, went ashore to carry to this schech the letter of OSMAN bey. But he returned an hour after with the news, that the schech, to whom the letter was addressed, was dead; that his two sons were gone away from thence; that there was in the city only their cachef, who was likewise upon the point of setting out to go and visit some of his demefnes; and that it was not possible to speak to him, because he was then with his women. There is in the middle of *Efnay* an ancient temple, closed on three sides, and whose front presents to view columns. They are in number twenty-four, and appear very well preserved. A chanelled border runs a-top all round the edifice; but in the middle; on the side which makes the front of the temple, they have contrived a cartouche, or ornament, such as we see on all the principal gates of Egypt.

A SEMI CORONA borders the whole edifice, the sides of which are filled with hieroglyphical figures, that seem to be of the most ancient kind; and which appear to have been executed in haste, and by workmen that had too much business upon their hands.

THE columns support stones placed crosswise, and on which rest great tables, that form a roof, adorned in the same manner as the sides with hieroglyphics. We easily discern, however, that the figures of the inside are by another hand, and executed with more attention than those that are seen on the outside; but none of these hieroglyphics are incrustated with colours. The columns are likewise covered with hieroglyphical figures, which in some places are very small, and very much crowded.

It is to be remarked that, in all this temple, one capital of a column does not resemble another.

Though the proportion is the same, the ornaments are different. It is owing to the smoak of fire formerly made there, that all the inside of this edifice is blackened, of which, however, all the parts are very well preserved, excepting the gate, and the intermediate spaces of the front columns; but these are the effects of the Arabs, who wanted to fill up the void spaces, in order to shut up their cattle in this temple, which serves at present for no other use.

THE reader will consult (plate VI.) where I have drawn this antiquity, although with a good deal of trouble, as well on account of a very painful abscess, which had befallen me, as by the disturbance the Arabs gave me.

As I was perfectly well acquainted with the jealousy of these people; I had taken the precaution, at my entrance into the temple, to place myself behind a column, and to leave some of our people at the gate; but this was not sufficient to rescue me from those troublesome fellows. The Arabs had assembled in crouds, and the noise which they made was so great, that I was obliged to dispatch my *design* in haste, for fear they should come and seize me in the place where I had concealed myself. For which reason I went off, and the mob asked immediately, what business I had to be writing in that place? As they were well assured that no one had seen me, our people denied the fact; but the Arabs insisted on it; and one of them having brought at length as a proof a Turkish inkhorn, that I had forgot to take away with me, our people appeared a little disconcerted at it. Upon this the Arabs became more insolent, and demanded to see my papers; but I persisted in refusing it.

In the mean time, we continued to hasten, by taking long strides, towards our barque, tho' the croud, which continually thickened, followed us pretty close. At length they even began to throw  
at

at us clods of earth and stones; but we seemed to take no notice of it. They were too much superior in numbers, to come to an engagement with them. Besides, we had now got near to our barque: we called out to our people, and they brought us guns and pistols. This was a decisive turn: as soon as the Arabs saw the fire-arms in our hands, the greatest part of them took to their heels. The bravest of them still kept at some distance, to see what we should undertake; but all our ambition was only to arrive safe and sound at our barque. As soon as we were got thither we kept ourselves quiet; more especially myself, so great a motion having caused my abscess to break; which however gave me great relief.

THERE is something very surprizing in this jealousy, that the Turks and the Arabs shew for their antiquities, whenever they see a stranger come to examine them. This jealousy is so much the more surprizing, as you plainly perceive that they have no great value for them themselves, and if they find too much difficulty to demolish them, they cover over the figures with mud and dirt, and employ these venerable monuments as stalls for their cattle, which fills them with ordure. But as far as one can comprehend, and as I have already insinuated in more than one place, the true cause of this jealousy arises from superstition, which runs through the country, and persuades them, that all foreigners are so many magicians, and that the designs they draw are so many talismans.

I OUGHT not to forget to mention, that the parats are not current at Essenay, nor above it. They have for commerce nothing but bourbes, of which twelve make a parat, or sevillans that are taken in payment for an hundred parats a-piece.

ANOTHER remark I have to make is, that there is nothing more scarce here than wood. We wanted to purchase some, but we could get none for money.

LASTLY



LASTLY I must observe, that the Arabs who dwell beyond Effenay, are called *Ababuda*. They are rebels, and force is continually requisite for making them obey.

In the evening, at six o'clock, the cacheff set out in a barque, accompanied with two others, laden with soldiers. His departure was honoured with the sound of tymbals, which he had on board his barque. Two hours after we set sail, and we had a favourable wind.

TUESDAY, 17<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

WE had scarce sailed half an hour, before the wind ceased. This obliged us, after having passed *Dueeg*, a village, a little above Effenay, and on the same side, to go ashore near to *Sernig*, another village, situated to the east of the Nile, and a little matter higher than that of *Dueeg*. We had no sooner fastened our barque, than one of those that had been laden with soldiers, came and placed itself quite close to us. This neighbourhood gave us some uneasiness. They are so little disciplined, and so insolent, that there is no pleasure in having any thing to do with them. We took care to keep ourselves well upon our guard. Luckily the wind arose in an hour's time, and we quitted this place to pursue our voyage.

In a space of four leagues, or thereabouts, we found but the three following villages, namely *Gafckile*, *Messauvie*, and *Ell-Adeime*. We left them all three on our right, with this difference, that the two first are half a league distant from the border of the Nile, and that the third is quite close.

From Damegraed quite to this place, and even a little higher, the places are very distinctly situated. They are commonly distant from one another a league, or a league and half, and sometimes two leagues. We saw afterwards *Kellabie* to our left,  
Kum-

*Kumbeer* to our right, *Scherauna* to our left, and *Turraeg* to our right.

WE did not however make this voyage in a continued course. It was interrupted, because we struck twice upon banks of sand; and it required a great deal of time and labour to put us afloat again.

WE saw afterwards *Sibbaye*, *Ell-Ganaan*, and *Ell-Bessalie*, three villages situated on the western shore; the last is however a little higher than *Ell-Auvanie*, which is on the eastern shore. *Ell-Heiks* is on the same side. This village is situated at the foot of the mountains, which in this place approach so near the river, that there remains only a little space of land cultivated. We continued sailing the whole day; so that we passed *Saide* and *Ell-Kilg*, which we left on our right; *Hellal*, *Ell-Kaep*, and *Attuaen*, were all three on our left. We approached afterwards to *Edfu*, a city situated to the west of the Nile. It is the ancient *Apollinopolis*; and I have given a view of it. (PLATE VI.)

WE find in this city a considerable monument of antiquity, and which is perfectly well preserved. The Turks have made a citadel of it, and some pretend that it was built originally for a like purpose; but, without designing to offend any one, I find that this edifice has rather the resemblance of a gate than citadel.

THERE runs, all round, a semi-circular *corona*, such as we see commonly round the Egyptian buildings.

You see no cornish above the edifice; but perhaps it has been ruined, or has fallen down.

THE fabrick in general is very well designed, its simplicity especially gives it a very pretty appearance. There are upon its faces three rows of hieroglyphical figures; and it looks as if they designed to represent infants, whose stature however surpasses that of men in these modern times.

THE

THE south side, and that of the north, scarce differ in any thing, except that the former has several windows, of which the four lowermost, made on each side of the gate, are very high, and give a diagonal light, which falls obliquely.

ABOVE the gate, there is a cartouche, or ornament, such as those that we have already remarked in some other edifices.

I CANNOT boast of having had the happiness of seeing this antiquity in the inside. Perhaps they would not have permitted me; this is certain, that I had not the opportunity of asking permission, because we did not land in this place; we passed however near enough for my being able to take the design of it.

THERE is also at Edfu another antique monument, but it consists only in the ruins of an ancient temple of APOLLO; and of which the greatest part is buried under ground. The Arabs have made no scruple of employing what they have been able to take away from so respectable an edifice, in making some vile pigeon-houses. I have given in the same (PLATE VI.) the design of these ruins.

IN continuing our voyage, we passed before two villages situated on the same side, namely *Naggel-Abdeddein* and *Schech-Tschiberim*. And we had on our left three others which are *Ell-Behera*, *Redesie*, and *Ell-Buebb*, or *Seraik*.

THERE was formerly in this place a great number of Christians; at present the village is almost ruined.

IN going up higher, we reached to *Seluab*, a village on the eastern shore of the Nile; and successively we passed between four others, of which two, namely *Tschibeka* and *Ell-Kajoudsche* are on the same side. The two others named *Romadie* and *Ell-Hammaen* are on the western shore. We were then very near to *Tschabel Fesselsele*; that is to say, *the chained mountain*. The

<sup>a</sup> Temple of Apollo. (PLATE VI.) <sup>a</sup> The principal Entrance of the Temple. <sup>b</sup> Ruins of the Temple. <sup>c</sup> small Canals.

tradition in the country is, that they here barred the passage of the Nile by means of a chain. This is certain, that the bed of the river is very narrow in this place, and that the mountain Tschabel Effelsele to the east, and a rock situated to the west might, as they pretend, have served for that purpose.

I DID not then make any great examination of this antiquity, because it was eight o'clock in the evening, and the dusk hindered me from discovering clearly the objects. But, on my return, I endeavoured to make amends; and that I might not resume the subject again, I shall join here the remarks and the designs that I made then.

THE first object that struck me, was that part of the mountain, where you may remark precisely the stones to which the chain mentioned must have been fastened, on each border of the Nile, whose breadth is no more than a musket shot and a half.

BESIDES the rock, you may remark a large mass of granite, loaded with a grand inscription in hieroglyphical characters, and you see there also some chapels formed in the rock, and some rocks of granite.

I THOUGHT myself obliged to give, a view of these chapels, cut in the rock, and situated near the stone of the chain that the reader might have, by that means, a more distinct idea of them, (PLATE VII.)

IN the neighbourhood, you discover a great number of grottos, by so much the more remarkable, as their sides are throughout covered with the most beautiful hieroglyphics.

WITH regard to the insides, there was not a sufficient day-light to distinguish the objects. The light entering only by the outlet of each grotto, I was greatly concerned at it, when at length I perceived an

<sup>a</sup> (PLATE VII.) Gives a view of these chapels cut in the rock, near the chain-stone at Tshibel Effelsele. <sup>a</sup> The chain-stone.

<sup>b</sup> Block of granite, with an inscription on the hieroglyphics

<sup>c</sup> Chapels full of hieroglyphics. <sup>d</sup> Rocks of granite.

opening

opening at top. Upon which I set about making a sketch; but I was very soon disturbed in my work, by the alarm, that our people had taken, in seeing a croud of Arabs assembling. You see there four figures in *haut relief*, sitting; and in their natural size; two of men, and two of women. The men, who are in the middle, have their arms laid across the breast; and each woman takes hold of a man under the arm. I detested, with reason, the malice and superstition of the Arabs or Turks, who had strangely deformed these figures, particularly in the visage.

On one side of these figures is an hieroglyphical table, cut in *basso relievo*, with a great deal of labour; and what gives it a great value is, that it is perfectly well preserved to the present time, though the rock, in which all these grottos are cut, consists only of a yellowish sandy stone. It is probable, that the hieroglyphical table contains the epitaphs of those persons, whose bodies have been inclosed in this grotto.

We perceived, that the Nile resumed, a little above this place, its natural breadth; and we passed successively before two villages, the first named *Fatira*; the second, which is near a league above, called *Ell Gliid*. We passed them both on our left; and opposite the last, we had on our right that of *Faris*. Almost immediately afterwards, we perceived an island, situated very near the eastern border of the Nile. They call it *Melia*; and opposite we saw, on the western border of the river, the village *Amungaer*. The calm having seized us in this place, at two hours after it was night, we cast anchor near a second island, neighbouring to the former, and which lyes in the middle of the Nile. Its name is *Mansoria*.

WEDNESDAY, 18<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

THE island where we cast anchor, the preceding night

night, is not far distant from the village of *Bamban*, situated on the western border of the Nile, opposite to that of *Komombu*; which is on the eastern border. I had a great desire to land at this last village, in order to observe the remains of antiquities that are still subsisting there; but certain circumstances obliged me to suspend my curiosity, till my return, when I should have the leisure to satisfy myself.

THE principal antique monument in this place, is situated behind a mountain of sand, and concealed, on another side, by some miserable cottages; but all that does not hinder a curious traveller from being able to contemplate, with a great deal of satisfaction, these beautiful ruins.

THE building rests upon twenty-three columns, well wrought and adorned with hieroglyphics. The stones that serve to cover the top, are of a prodigious size; and we see clearly, that the architrave, which at present is split in two, was anciently of a single stone. Under its cornish we perceive the cartouche, or the usual ornament of their gates; and this cartouche is cut very neatly.

ALL the stones are full of hieroglyphics, in the same manner as those we have seen on the ruins of *Medinet Habu*.

THE columns have more than twenty-four feet in circumference, and are greater than those of *Medinet Habu*.

It is pity, that this edifice cannot subsist long; as we may judge by the condition it is in at present. Two sides of it are but barely discernible. The upper part is already covered with earth; and the columns, as well as the rest of the building, are three quarters under ground.

At about fifty paces from thence, we perceive, on the declivity of the mountain, another antique monument, more than eighteen feet in height, with a niche regularly square in the middle, but wider at  
top



top than at bottom. Its sides are set thick with hiéroglyphics, which are very much decayed towards the ground ; and the back part is almost entirely hid under sand.

ALL this edifice is built of large square blocks, of a whitish stone, which approaches very near to marble. I cannot, however, determine the use of this monument, unless that it was formerly an altar, of which the table perhaps has been taken away, or may have fallen down amongst the ruins : perhaps likewise in the niche, which I have mentioned, there was an idol.

THE wind having risen, at eight o'clock in the morning we set sail, and after having passed the island of *Ommulet*, situated almost close to the western shore of the Nile, and near to the village of *Rakkaba*, which is on the same side ; we perceived that of *De-rau*, situated on the opposite side ; and we approached to *Ell Scheek Amer*, a village at some distance from the eastern border of the Nile. We find there some ruins, which at first appeared to me considerable ; but when I had examined them nearly, with a little attention, I remarked that they were only remains of a modern building. They are situated amongst abundance of tombs of Mahometan saints, as they are called.

As soon as we had set sail again, we met with a fourth island named *Gallagis* ; and opposite, on the western shore, the village of *Ell Kabunia*. A signal was made us there, to bring the barque to land, which our reys had no great inclination to obey ; but as he saw that they were taking up arms, he no longer resisted. The prince of the country was Ibrim, cacheff in Nubia ; and he had received at Girge the caffetan of the bey ; it is the only mark of respect, that they pay here to the Turkish government. Force decides between the competitors, who shall have the dignity ; and he that is sent Girge, must absolutely

absolutely be vested with the caffetan by the bey. Our reys did not return under an hour, and told us that the cacheff had informed himself concerning us; and that, upon his having heard, that we were under the protection of OSMAN bey, and that we had a design of going quite to the second cataract, he had sent us the *Salamalack*, or good-day, by him. We sent him some bottles of rossoli<sup>a</sup>, sherbet, and some tobacco.

In pursuing afterwards our voyage, we passed before the village of *Ettuesfa*, and afterwards, before *Girbe*. These two villages are situated on the eastern border of the Nile; but the last appears more fully in view. The ruins that are found there are distinguishable by the great blocks of square stones, which are not commonly made use of in the Turkish buildings.

We continued our voyage without stopping, and we passed by on our left first four villages, namely *Ganaek*, *Ell Akabbe*, *Abusebera*, and *Gaptara*. Above this village, we see the island *Giesiret Beberif*, situated very near to the eastern shore of the river; and a little higher again, and on the same side, after having passed the village of *Ell Toff*, or *Teffel*, we arrived at eight of the clock in the evening at *Essuaen*. We fastened our barque there, nigh to the citadel.

The continuation of the author's voyage from ES-SUAEN to DEIR OF DERRI.

THURSDAY, 19<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

THE city of *Essuaen*<sup>b</sup>, situated on the eastern shore of the Nile, is not more considerable than the

<sup>a</sup> A VERY agreeable liquor composed of brandy, sugar, cinnamon and several other things that are flattering to the taste and cordial. The rossoli of Turin is the best and most famous.

<sup>b</sup> *Essuaen* is the ancient *Syene*, which, according to PLINY, lies directly under the tropic of cancer.

greatest part of the other cities of the Upper Egypt. It has, however, besides its mosques, a citadel, with an aga, whose name at that time was IBRAHIM. One thing distinguishes it greatly from the other places of the same government, which is, that you see not here, on the tops of houses, those sorts of dove-cotes that, at a distance, give the other towns so agreeable an appearance.

BUT what renders this city more particularly remarkable is, that it is the place where begins, or rather, if you will, the place where ends the first cataract, marked by rocks of granite, which are seen in the middle of the Nile, before you arrive at them.

OUR reys, who was a janissary, did not fail to go and acquaint the aga of our arrival, and to give him notice, at the same time, that there were in his barque some Franks, to whom OSMAN aga, the chief of the janissaries at Grand Cairo, had given letters, which would be presented to him.

AT eight of the clock in the morning, the aga sent to us two janissaries, each with a staff in his hand, and they offered to conduct us to the citadel. We went thither; and the aga, who was sick, received us lying upon the ground, and covered with an old Indian cloth. We presented to him our letters, and made him understand that our intention was to go

“SIMILI modo tradunt in Syene oppido, quod est supra Alexandriam quinque millibus stadiorum, solstitii die medio nullam umbram jaci: puteumque ejus experimenti gratia factum, totum illuminari. Ex quo apparere, tum solem illi loco supra verticem esse.”

*In allusion to which LUCAN has given it the epithet of*

*Umbras nusquam rectente Syene.*

Lib. ii. ver. 587.

PLINY says likewise,

“DITIONIS Ægypti esse incipit a fine Æthiopiæ Syene.”

*This city is famous also for being the place to which JUVENAL was banished, under the pretence indeed of a military commission, when he was eighty years old, and died here.*

quite

quite to the second cataract, which surprized him greatly, and induced him to tell us, that the advice he had to give us was to confine our curiosity to the seeing the first cataract.

THIS counsel was not to our relish. We returned for answer, that we were determined to go on, unless he had a design of putting a stop to us. "I shall rather, *replied he*, do all that is in my power to facilitate your journey; and you have nothing to do, but to get the necessary preparations for setting out on your expedition." Upon that, he ordered coffee to be served us; and after we had drank it, we took leave of him.

WHEN we were returned to our barque, there was nothing we were more solicitous about, than the making him a proper present. We sent him a scarlet garment, a silk waistcoat, two casks of sherbet, with some bottles of strong liquors; and he appeared extremely well satisfied with them. We received in return a sheep; and in the afternoon, he sent us some coffee aboard our barque. We were content, however, with tasting it, because it was boiled with sage; which was done probably to give it an higher flavour.

We had already talked in the morning of the camels, the horses and asses, that the aga was to furnish us with for money, in order to carry us and our baggage to the port of the cataract. In the afternoon we sent to him to know, whether we might depend on all being ready for the next day morning. The answer was, that he would neglect nothing in that respect, and that the letters of recommendation to the grandees of the country, through which we proposed to pass, should be ready.

We had moreover petitioned, that he would let us be accompanied by some one of his people, on condition of defraying him, and of making him also a present. He offered us, for this purpose, his own brother. He

sent him to us, to agree on the price; and we soon came to an agreement.

THE aga treated us in a very civil manner; he had even offered us his house, which we did not think proper to accept of, because we depended on staying before Essuaen no longer than till the next day: We sent him, therefore, again some little presents, with which he was extremely delighted; and at the same time we renewed our solicitations to him, not to forget the letters which he had promised us. Upon which he sent us word, that he should already have written them, if he had not wanted paper; that he had not so much as a sheet remaining; and that he entreated us to send him some. We were well provided with it; so that it was easy for us to relieve him from this want.

FRIDAY, 20<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

IN the morning, at eight o'clock, one of our fathers, who spoke Arabic, waited on the aga, to hasten our departure. He found that the aga had engaged our reys to convey us from the first to the second cataract. The bargain was made for twenty sevillans, besides some small presents. But the reys required time for getting bread made for his crew. We were ourselves likewise in want of bread: So that our departure was fixed for Sunday morning.

THESE measures being taken, I went to a little island, situated in the neighbourhood of Essuaen, and very near the western shore of the Nile. It is called *Ell Sag*. It is, without doubt, the same as the ancients called by the name of the *Elephantine*. It's southern

---

*Dr. Pococke gives the following account of it.*

“OPPOSITE to Syene is the island Elephantine, in which there was a city of that name. The island is about a mile long, and a quarter of a mile broad to the south, ending in a point at the north; there was a temple to CNUPHIS in this island, and a nilometer to measure the rise of the Nile; on it are remains of a small temple. Before the  
part

part is mountainous and covered with ruins. There are, however, but very few of these ruins that one can well distinguish, because the rest are buried underground.

I found there, amongst others, an ancient edifice still standing, though covered with earth at top, as well as one side; and it deserved my giving myself the trouble to draw it. They call it *the temple of the serpent Cnuphis*; but, to judge of it by its appearance, it was rather a sepulchral monument, than a temple. (PLATE V.)

BE that as it will, it has an inclosure, forming all around a kind of cloyster, supported through its length by columns. At the four corners it has a solid wall; and in its breadth; you see only a single column in the middle. This inclosure contains a grand apartment, which has two large gates; the one to the south, the other to the north; and almost all the inside is filled with stones and earth. The walls, covered with hieroglyphics, are bedawbed with dirt, and blackened with the smoak of fires, that the shepherds have made there.

WE remark, on the west side, within that apartment, and precisely in the middle, a square table, quite plain, without any inscription. I imagined that there might be underneath an urn or mummy; and I was

---

temple is a statue, sitting with the hands across on the breast, being about eight feet high, with a lituus in each hand, which is particular. On the wall before the temple is a Greek inscription, which is defaced in many parts. In the middle of the island there are remains of one side of a grand gate of red granite, finely adorned with hieroglyphics. The earth is raised up very much about this gate, and all over the south end of the island, probably by the rubbish of a town of the middle ages that might be on the island, as there is now a very small village on it. The south end of the island is high, being a rock of red granite, and on the east side are great remains of a high wall, built by the water side with windows on it. It is very probable that all this part of the island was defended by such a wall against the violent current, at the time of the rise of the Nile."

*Observations on Egypt*, pag. 117.

H. 3

very



very much tempted to get this table lifted up; but the superstition of the people, and that of the government likewise, do not permit it. A traveller should think himself happy, if he can have the liberty to observe these ancient edifices in quiet; he must not attempt any thing further. I shall never forget, that when we came to cast anchor before Essnaen, the populace ran in crowds, to see, as they said, the forcerers experienced in the black art.

THE length of this building in the inside, is about eighty Danish feet, and its breadth about twenty. The reader must not expect more precise measures; for in taking an exact mensuration, we should be too much in the sight of people, and run a risque of being entirely deprived of the liberty to see the antiquities.

THE reader may observe, by the design, that all this edifice is covered with hieroglyphics; and they seem to be of the most ancient sort.

THERE is, very near it, a kind of pedestal, made of great blocks of a white stone, loaded with Greek inscriptions; but I had not time to take copies of them<sup>w</sup>.

UPON quitting the island of Ell Sag, I made a tour to the adjacent places, on the west side, to see there the ruins of the ancient Syene, of which STRABO, PLINY, and other authors, Greek and Latin, have made mention. To say the truth, however, the greatest part of these ruins appear of no great consequence. I shall remark here, that you see nothing but modern ruins, and an antique wall, built of great square stones, which formerly served to keep up the

<sup>w</sup> Dr. Pococke has given the Greek inscription, but observes, at the same time, "I was so hurried in copying it, that though I did it with the utmost exactness I could, yet it will be seen that it is very imperfect, and several parts of it were defaced, however, I have given it as I copied it. It is to be doubted, if the whole may not be two inscriptions. The inscription seems to be of the time of DIOCLETIAN, whose name often occurs in it; and some expressions give ground to conclude, that it related to some bounds of the people of Elephantine." *Observations on Egypt*, pag. 278.

earth of the island. There remain still some marks of the Place where the ancient city stood. As to the rest, it is so covered with earth, that there is nothing but rubbish, from which in some places, one would judge, that there were formerly magnificent buildings in this place.

We discover, indeed, here and there, though very confusedly, in places where the earth has mouldered away, some colonnades, accompanied with tables, loaded with ancient Greek inscriptions. These tables are of granite; but the blocks, that were employed for the buildings, are of a whitish stone, which resembles the stone of Breme, though it is harder. It is full of little islands, or rocks of granite, with which the two borders of the Nile are likewise covered. You perceive a mosque half ruined; and an old citadel, behind which is a little bay, that on the south side has for its support a natural bank of great granite stones, upon which are engraven different hieroglyphics.

In the VII<sup>th</sup> plate is represented the most remarkable place. You observe there under let. *a*. the angular stone, which, besides some hieroglyphics, has towards the bottom a square niche, with a kind of column in the middle, marked let. *b*. The measures, which are cut in the stones of this niche, made me conjecture, that the whole might anciently be designed to serve as a mokkias, in order to know the increase and fall of the waters of the Nile.

UPON this rock there are let. *c*. considerable ruins; but they are the ruins of modern edifices, *d* and *e* measures engraven on the granit.

I HAVE drawn, under letter *f*, the ancient support of the bay, or bank, and upon one of the granite stones, which serve for a foundation, there are, letter *g*, two hieroglyphics, the only ones that I have perceived, on that side, upon stones of this kind. Letter *h* shews the way that leads to the first cataract. Letter *i* other granite stones full of hieroglyphics.

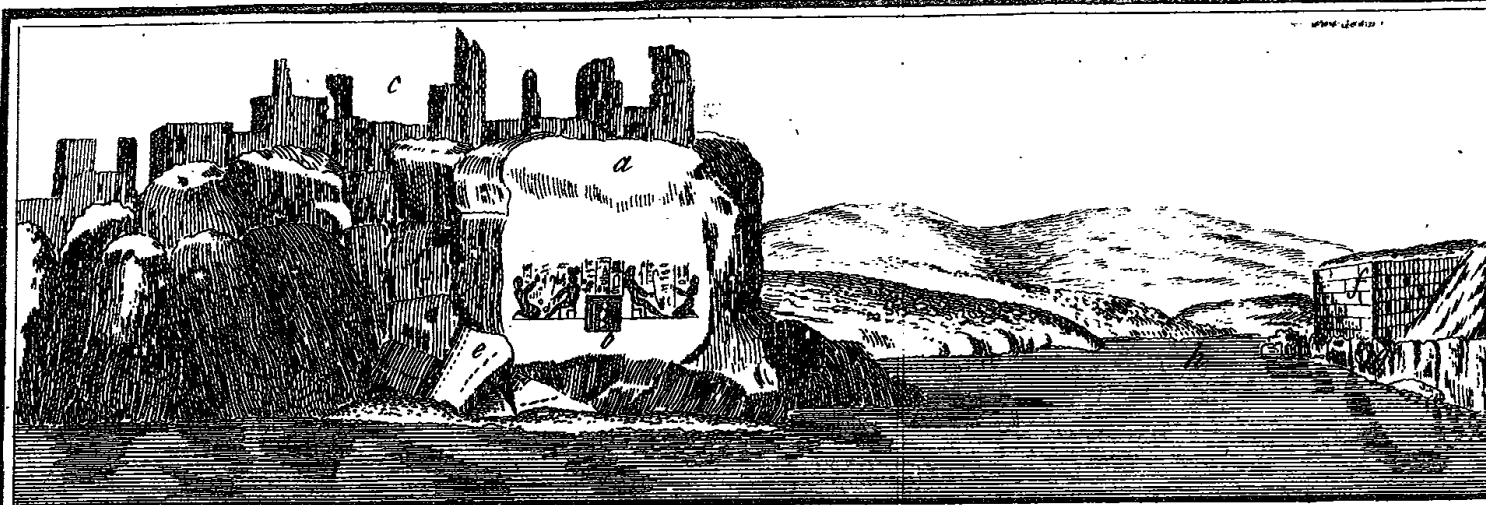
A VALET, whom the aga had appointed to attend me, informed me, that what I saw was a mere trifle, in comparison of what there was on the other side of the river; and that if I would pass over to it, I should find there an ancient itcy intire. "There are, says he, paintings, inscriptions, and mummies." This information surpris'd me extremely. I could not imagine what antiquities so remarkable could be found in that place. But it was too late then to pass over; and I propos'd to myself to employ the next day in making it a visit.

SATURDAY, 21<sup>st</sup> of DECEMBER.

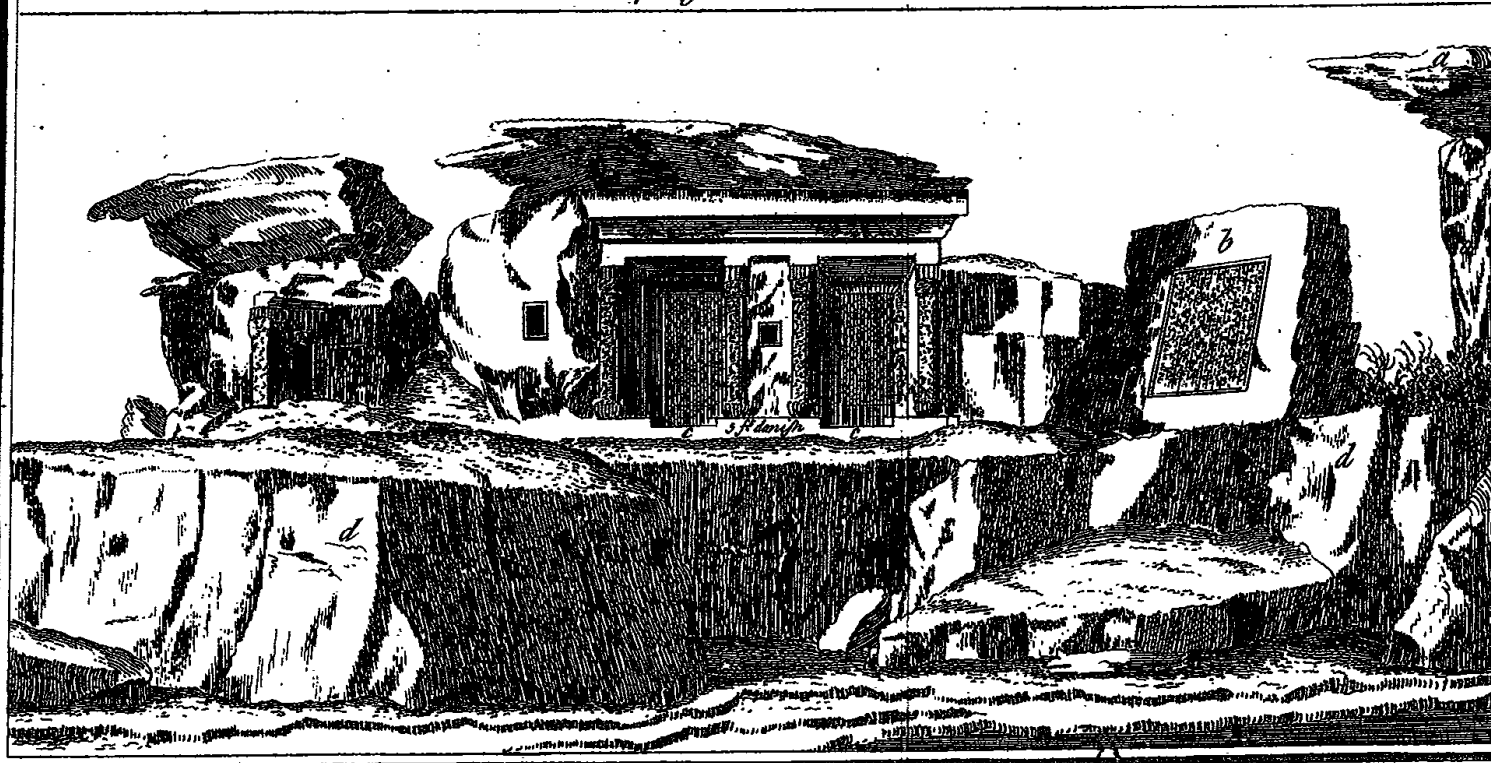
WE had got in a good provision of bread, which we did not obtain however without difficulty. It was requisite to purchase the corn, and to distribute it in different parts of the town, in order to get it ground by hand-mills. We had already found the same difficulty in other Places; but the further we advanced, the greater it became; and we felt it still more, in proportion as we went up higher. Nothing was so difficult as to procure ourselves, for money, the very necessaries of life. Wood to burn particularly is, in these quarters, an inconceivable rarity. Whatever endeavours we had made to purchase some, we had not been able to get any. Luckily the aga sent us a piece of sycamore wood. It was a real present, for which one of our fathers went to thank him, and carried him in return some trifles, which had their value in this country.

THE old aga was so touched with our gratitude, that to shew how much he interest'd himself for us, he exhorted the father to advance no further. "You'll be all destroyed, says he; you are going not amongst men, but amongst savage beasts. They would murder a man for a parat: in what manner will they deal with you, who carry such treasures?"

The



*Rocks of Granite*



*Chapels cut in a Rock*

The father answered him, *That it did not depend upon him to stay, even though he had a mind for it.* "Well then, replied the aga, tell your companions so from me, and divert them from the design of going further." *They will not be prevailed upon,* replied the father, *they are not people likely to give over their design.* *Im-schalla!* cried out the aga: here, take the letters that they have asked of me for the grandees. Let them go in God's name! But I am very sorry that those scoundrels should get so many fine things as you have with you."

THE father made us a faithful recital of this dialogue. But as no one amongst us was ignorant, that the Turks are extremely loath to permit strangers to pass beyond the first cataract, we thought that the design of the aga was to intimidate us; and as we had received the rest of our bread, and purchased all that we could for money, we set every thing in order, and made up our packets, to be in a condition of going the next day, because the aga had promised to furnish us with a sufficient number of camels, and other beasts of burden, to convey us to the cataract.

At the time that our people were employed in packing up our baggage, we had a visit of a Mahometan saint, who, with one hand played on a tambourin, and in the other held a little crooked staff, with which he touched all our coffers, and likewise ourselves, giving us a kind of benediction in his manner. A dog, which belonged to one of our people, and which the saint approached likewise to touch him in his turn with his staff, did not relish this ceremony. He took this Mahometan benediction for a menace; and to prevent the consequences of it, he flew at the throat of the saint, and pulled him to the ground. The saint set up a roar and began to give us as many curses as he had given us benedictions a moment before; in the mean time a croud of mob ran to us, and

and every one offered to revenge the insult, done to their saint by infidels.

To finish this diversion, which had like to have cost us dear, I sent to the saint our Jew valet with a couple of sevillans, which had their effect. The saint withdrew from our barque, and carried away with him the mob, which he appeased in the best manner he could.

I HAD an extreme desire of going to see the antiquities I had been told of; but it was not possible to find a canoe. The only one that there was in the town, and which belonged to our reys, had been sent somewhere with salt. This unlucky accident mortified me extremely. But it was requisite to wait with patience till my return, when I shall have the opportunity of saying something of them.

THE son of the aga, who was commander and custom-house officer of the port of the cataract, came to see us, in the interim, with his companion. They said that they would accompany us themselves quite to the cataract, and that, agreeable to the orders of the aga, they would take care that the cattle to ride on should be ready for the next day. We gave them coffee, and made them presents of some spices and baubles.

#### SUNDAY, 22<sup>d</sup> OF DECEMBER.

AT ten o'clock in the morning, the aga sent a guard of janissaries to our barque, in order that all our baggage might be unladen in safety, and without confusion. He afterwards ordered thirteen camels to be brought us, three horses, and as many asses as would be necessary for carrying all our luggage.

NOTWITHSTANDING the precaution of the aga, the throng of people was so great, that we were employed more than two hours, before we could set out upon  
our



our journey ; and tho<sup>t</sup> afterwards the son of the aga, vested with his caffetan, and his companion, both on horseback, conducted our troop, and prevented disorder, the populace, that had assembled before our barque, did not cease to follow us quite the half of the way.

We took our rout to the east of the Nile, and after having gone across a pretty large plain, bordered by rocks, we found a pass so narrow, that a camel laden could scarce get through it. We saw after that a Turkish fortress, and we continued on by a very narrow road, which ran along the side of the cataract. At length, after two hours and a half's march, we arrived at the haven of Morrada, or of the first cataract.

We there found the barque, that the aga had hired for us. It was much smaller than the former, which we had hired at Cairo. Yet when we had put our tent into it, it appeared commodious enough. We gave the son of the aga and his companion seven sevillans, as well for the custom-house dues, as for the trouble they had taken in accompanying us. They would have been very willing to have had more ; for you rarely can content any one in this country ; but we seemed not to perceive their discontent. With respect to the expence of our journey, it cost us ten parats for each camel, and three parats for each ass. I shall observe on this occasion, that what they call here camels, are dromedaries, which do not bear any great burthen ; and that you cannot put upon the asses more than one sack, they are so small and weak.

#### MONDAY, 23<sup>d</sup> of DECEMBER.

THE son of the aga came early in the morning to take leave of us ; and we sent back a janissary, whom we had kept ever since our arrival at Essuaen. He  
ap-

peared very well satisfied with a sevillan that we gave him. The reys, who had brought us from Cairo, came likewise to take leave; and we made him a present of a green suit of clothes, and of some toys for his wife and children. With regard to the thirty fendouclis, that we had bargained to give him for our passage, they had been advanced to him before we set out from Cairo.

At the time we reckoned to set sail, we were told that we must not think of it for three or four days, because the *rammadam* was begun, and that the law of the prophet did not permit the undertaking any voyage during the first days of that festival. It was for this reason that our new reys was not yet come on board.

According to the agreement we had made with him, his barque, in the same manner as that which we had hired at Cairo, was to take in nothing but our persons and baggage; but the like thing happened to us here as before at Cario. Notwithstanding the bargain, we saw that they were going to take aboard some salt and corn, which had been brought to the port on the backs of camels. I made complaint of it to the pilot, who said that his barque drawing no more than two feet water, instead of three that it ought to draw, to be ballasted, it was proper to receive these merchandises. Upon that he obtained the permission of taking them on board. There resulted from it however at first an inconvenience, which was, that our barque took in a great deal of water, because the upper part had been a long time exposed to the sun, and that the greatest part of the joints had opened.

During the abode that we were obliged to make against our inclination, I took a walk about the adjacent parts of the port. I had a desire of passing through a narrow lane which led to the other side of the mountain, that was to the south, and which was so narrow that one man could scarcely pass a-breast.

I took

I took with me some of our people ; but, as soon as we were got to the entrance of the narrow lane, twenty Barbarins, with zagaies<sup>\*</sup> in their hands, opposed our passage. It was necessary for us to stop, and I was the less urgent of having the liberty of passing, as our barque would soon bring us on that side. I feigned therefore to be little solicitous of penetrating further, and I let them know so by the Jew valet.

THIS indifference was not what they wanted. They answered that I might pass, and that they would conduct me themselves, provided that I would give them the *backfich*<sup>†</sup> ; but to convince them that I would not bribe them, I refused their offer and returned back towards our barque. They followed me thither, and entreated me to go to the place that I had proposed to see ; but I would not be persuaded. They said afterwards to one of our fathers, that they had refused me passage, because there was abundance of treasure buried in a neighbouring island.

TUESDAY, 24<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

As soon as it was day there arrived an express, dispatched by the cacheff IBRIM. This express brought a letter directed to our reys. It enjoined him not to set out with his barque, or bring us any further. The cacheff added, that in a day's time he should be at Essuaen, and that from thence he would give his orders relatively to us. The letter, however, according to the usage of the Turks, was open ; and as the reys was not on board, the pilot carried it to one of our fathers to read it.

THE contents of this letter surprized us extremely. We could not conceive the reason of this prohibition. We proposed to one of the fathers to wait upon the

<sup>\*</sup> A sort of great dart that the Moors make use of for fighting.  
<sup>†</sup> It signifies money.

aga, in order to consult him, and to agree with him on the manner in which we should conduct ourselves in this unfortunate affair. But the good father, who probably had been intimidated by the discourses that the aga had held with him, excused himself, under pretence of being out of order. The other fathers offered to go, but, as they were not masters of the language, I resolved to go thither myself with the Jew valet, whom I made take an oath that he would absolutely say nothing to the aga, but what I should say, and that he would report to me faithfully the answers of this officer, in order that I might frame a judgment, whether they had a design of extorting money from us, or of playing us some scrubby trick.

THIS resolution being taken, I sent to get some beast to carry me, but it was not possible to find any. I was obliged therefore to resolve on making the journey on foot, though the sun was already very high, and it was extremely hot. This did not hinder me from setting out on the expedition; and I can say, that I never made a more agreeable jaunt; for I could observe at leisure the cataract, and the rocks of granite that form it.

WHEN I was entered upon the plain of sand, I stopped often to contemplate the hieroglyphics that had been cut in the rock, and the square pieces of granite marble, that they had begun to cut, and of which a great part remained without being finished.

As I advanced in this great plain, I arrived at a burial place, extremely large, and full of stones, that had all their inscriptions. I had taken it for a burial place of the Turks, when I passed there for the first time; but as I had more leisure to consider it, I remarked very soon that it was of a quite different kind. The tombs, almost all alike, had no conformity with those that I had been able to see elsewhere; and I could not imagine who the persons were, that had been interred in this place. I ordered our Jew valet,  
who

who could read the Turkish and Arabic languages, to examine whether he could not decypher some inscription. His answer was, that there was not a letter, that resembled those of the Turks, or the Arabians, and that he comprehended nothing at all of what was written. I recommended to him to inform himself about it, in order to learn at least what was the tradition of the country; and he was told that they were the tombs of the Mamalukes, who had been killed when the califf entered into Egypt.

In advancing further, I arrived at an antique gate, which had been ruined, and afterwards rebuilt; so that there was nothing of the taste of the ancient Egyptians to be seen in it, but rather that the Saracens. The materials were bricks hardened in the sun, mixed with square pieces of the Thebaic stone, and some fragments of columns; and this mixture shewed but too well, that the gate had been subject to many changes.

I TRAVERSED afterwards a great quantity of ruins, which shewed, by a like mixture, that they were of the same age as the gate. The whole was begirt with a wall ruined like the rest.

I SHOULD have stopped the whole day to observe these ruins, if I had not been obliged to have regard to our common safety. I quitted them therefore, with regret, to wait upon the aga, to whom I laid open my just complaints. The good man, who had recovered a little from his disorder, appeared enraged at the manner in which the cacheff treated us. He shrugged up his shoulders, and let me know, that he saw very well to what all this tended. "The cacheff is afraid, says he, that by my good advice you should change your sentiments, and renounce the design of going further: Thus he wants to get of you all that he can. But, however, added he, be assured, that if you go any further, you will be all demolished. We have

have fatal instances of it. People even of our own religion have been into the country, but never returned again. The new cacheff is a great rascal. His father and his brother are like him; and all those who have any thing to do in the government, are no better than they.

THAT I might not shew any weakness, I answered him, that we were determined to go to the second cataract, provided the thing was possible; that the grandees of Cairo had granted us for that purpose their protection, and that our design was to make use of it, unless that he, or the cacheff, forbid us to go any further. "You are determined then, replied the aga; I shall not hinder you by my authority. The letters that you have brought me, give me orders to assist you, and not to stop you. I shall obey them in the best manner I can, and I protest to you, that as long as you shall be in my government, or in that of my son, no one shall do you the least mischief. But I give you notice, that, as soon as you shall be gone out of the port of the cataract, my protection will no longer be of any service to you; and I have told you before-hand what will befall you. Stay, continued he, the cacheff is coming. You shall see him; I will send my son with you, and you will know more precisely what is the matter." Upon that, he ordered coffee to be served, and regaled me with some bunches of grapes, which were of an excellent taste, but very small.

We were at this frugal collation, when the discharge of two pieces of cannon and some musquet arms proclaimed the arrival of the cacheff. I waited on him, with the son of the aga and the Jew. We found this *mighty power* seated upon a matt, extended along the dust of a great lower-court. The son of the aga presented me. The cacheff arose, gave me his hand, and made me sit down by his side.

AFTER



AFTER this *Salamaleck*, that is to say, after the ordinary salutation, the son of the aga asked the cacheff, on the part of his father, what reason he could have for stopping us? "You know, *replied he without hesitation*, that our people are very wicked; and that these Franks run great risques, if they advance into the country without my protection, without that of my father, and without that of my friends. The bey of Tschirche has charged me to take care of them: For which reason, I design, that, for their own safety, they should not set out, till I go myself into the country, where I will be answerable for every step they shall take, and where I shall be able to secure them from any insult."

THIS answer having been interpreted to me, I let the cacheff know, that I returned him thanks for his care; but that we could not wait till his departure, since that would not be under three or four weeks; that we feared nothing, with regard to the populace; and that if any one attacked us, we could defend ourselves: In a word, that all the favour we asked of him was, to take off the order that he had given of suspending our departure. "I am very willing, says he, if you will give it under your hand, that you have refused my protection, and that of my friends; and that I am quitted of all the accidents that may happen to you." I was unwilling to consent to such a request. To find a medium, I proposed to him to give us letters to his friends; and I added, that I thought them capable of procuring us the little protection which we might have need of. "In order to shew you, replied he, how much inclined I am to satisfy you, I will give you such letters as you desire, and I will send to the reys a permission for sailing."

UPON that, we took leave of him; but when we were just going out of the lower court, he called us back, and whispered to the son of the aga, that he should let me know, that if we would have letters, it

was necessary to pay for them, by an handsome present, and some money. There were too many people in the court, to enter into discourse upon this matter; insomuch that the son of the aga held his tongue, and did not communicate the notice that had been given him, till we were got out. He declared it to the Jew, who made the report of it to me.

WE returned to the aga, to communicate to him what had passed. He took immediately the discourse of the cacheff in its true sense; and concluded, that, if we would go on, it would be absolutely necessary to comply, for it was not proper to have him for an enemy. As I saw the aga acted like an honest man, I desired him to make with the cacheff the best bargain that he could. He promised me he would, and bid me send the next day our Jew; to bring me tidings of his negotiation. I desired him to procure me two saddle horses, in order to return to the port of the cataract. He lent me his own horse, and got me an ass for my valet. It was lucky that we were so mounted. The conference had lasted so long, that the day was far advanced; and we had some difficulty to arrive at our barque before it was night.

I HAD taken care to forbid the Jew to say any thing of the difficulties that had been thrown in our way. I was afraid that our companions in the voyage would have lost their courage; which is so necessary a virtue to get over any difficulties.

#### WEDNESDAY, 25<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

THIS day, being Christmas-day, after having performed some duties that so sacred a day required, I employed all the rest of the time in visiting the cataract; and, that I might not be too much exposed to the view of the people of the country, I withdrew,  
with

with one single person of the company, who understood no more Arabic than I.

THE place, which I went to at first, was, where I had observed, the day before, there was the greatest fall of water. I made so many turnings and windings upon the rocks, which advanced the farthest into the river, that I had some difficulty to get away dry-shod; and I had staid more than an hour to make my observations, without having seen a living soul; but as I climbed up a rock, I found on it a native of Barbary fishing. I took pleasure in looking at him; he perceived it, and conducted me to a place, where, with the assistance of a little hook, he made me catch some excellent carp. I gave him some parats; and this little present, which was a kind of fortune for him, gained me intirely his affection; insomuch that he left off his fishing, and led me to all the places that were accessible: I continued above four hours with him, and had the utmost leisure to contemplate the situation of this cataract, which, at that time, might have four feet in its fall, and thirty feet in length<sup>a</sup>.

---

<sup>a</sup> Perhaps it will not be unacceptable to the reader to see the descriptions that the ancients have left us of the course of the Nile, and of the horrors of the cataracts, and to compare them with the views that Mr. NORDEN has given. The account by DIODORUS SICULUS is as follows: "The Nile runs from south to north, having its sources from places undiscovered, that lie in the remotest parts of Æthiopia, and are deserts inaccessible on account of the excessive heat. [The sources of the Nile have been but lately discovered to be in the kingdom of Goyam, about twelve degrees north latitude. Vid. HIERON. LOB. Hist. Abyss. tom. i. pag. 133.] As it is the greatest of all rivers, and traverses the most country, it makes prodigious bendings, sometimes turning to the east and Arabia, at other times to the west and Libya. Its course, from the Æthiopian mountains to where it empties itself into the sea, is about twelve thousand *stadia*, including the windings it makes. STRABO says only upwards of ten thousand, but it is probable he considered only the direct course without including the windings.

"In the inferior parts the swell of the river is less, the channel continually spreading wider on both continents. That part which

UPON one of these rocks, I discovered the beautiful remains of antiquity at *Gisret Ell Heiff*; but I was

---

washes Libya is absorbed by sands that have an incredible depth; but that which diffuses itself on Arabia, is diverted into exceeding large lakes and morasses inhabited all around by various nations. It enters into Egypt in some places ten *stadia* wide, in others less than this, running not in a direct course, but making bendings. Sometimes it rolls towards the east, at other times to the west; and there are places where it tends towards the south, running back again in a contrary direction. Mountains, on each side of the river, are contiguous to it, and confine a great part of the borders; these mountains are separated by gaps and narrow precipices, into which the current of the river falling, is driven back again through the flat country, and, after having gone a good way towards the south, returns to flow in its natural direction. This river, though it has such a pre-eminence over all, is the only one that performs its course without violence, and without any fury of waves, except in what are called the cataracts: This is a place in length about ten *stadia* steep, and confined by precipices to a narrow gut, the whole rough and craggy, having also many stones resembling great rocks. The stream dashing against these impediments with violence, and being driven back in a contrary direction, prodigious eddies arise. The whole intermediate space is filled with froth by the reflux of water, and gives great terror to all that approach it. The swiftness of the current in this part is so rapid and violent, that it seems to equal the swiftness of an arrow. During the time that the Nile is swollen, the rocks being covered with water, and all this craggy place concealed by the abundance of the stream, some people sail down the cataract when they have contrary winds to retard their fall; but no one can sail up the cataract, the force of the river overcoming all human contrivance. There are many such cataracts, but the greatest of all is that on the confines of *Æthiopia* and Egypt." DIODORUS SICULUS, lib. i. 19, 20.

——— Quis te tam lenè fluentem  
Moturum tantas violenti gurgitis iras,  
Nile, putet? Sed cum lapsus abrupta viarum  
Excepere tuos, et præcipites cataractæ,  
Ac nusquam vetitis ullas obsistere cautes  
Indignaris aquis: spuma tunc astra lacellis;  
Cuncta fremunt undis; ac multo murmure montis  
Spumeus invictis canescit fluctibus annis.

LUCAN, lib. x. ver. 315.

“ Who that beholds thee, Nile! thus gently flow,  
“ With scarce a wrinkle on thy glassy brow,

too far distant from them, to take a good drawing, I consoled myself with the hopes of going thither some

“ Can guess thy rage, when rocks resist thy force,  
 “ And hurl thee headlong in thy downward course ;  
 “ When spouting cataracts thy torrent pour,  
 “ And nations tremble at the deaf’ning roar ;  
 “ When thy proud waves with indignation rise,  
 “ And dash their foamy fury to the skies ?” ROWE.

SENECA describes the cataracts in the following lively manner :  
 “ Excipiunt eum cataractæ, nobilis insigni spectaculo locus. Ibi per arduas excisasque pluribus locis rupes Nilus insurgit, et vires suas concitat. Frangitur enim occurrentibus faxis, et per angusta eluctatus, ubicumque vincit aut vincitur, fluctuat : et illic excitatis primum aquis, quas sine tumultu leni alveo duxerat, violentus, et torrens per malignos transitus profilit, dissimilis sibi. Quippe ad id lutosus et turbidus fluit. At ubi scopulos verberavit, spumat : et illi non ex natura sua, sed ex injuria loci color est. Tandemque eluctatus obstantia, in vastam altitudinem subito destitutus cadit, cum ingenti circumjacentium regionum strepitu. Quem perferre gens ibi a Persis collocata non potuit, obtusis assiduo fragore auribus, et ob hoc sedibus ad quietiora translatis. Inter miracula fluminis incredibilem incolarum audaciam accepi. Bini parvula navigia conscendunt, quorum alter navem regit, alter exhaurit. Deinde multum inter rapidam insaniam Nili, et reciprocos fluctus volutati, tandem tenuissimos canales tenent, per quos angusta rupium effugiunt : et cum toto flumine effusi, navigium ruens manu temperant, magnoque spectantium metu in caput nixi, cum jam adploraveris, mersosque atque obrutos tanta mole credideris, longe ab eo, in quem ceciderant, loco navigant, tormenti modo missi.” *Nat. Ques.* lib. iv. cap. 2.

*The ancients had a strange notion of the inhabitants near the cataracts being stunned with the noise of the water and rendered deaf.*

“ Ubi Nilus ad illa, quæ catadupa nominantur, præcipitat ex altissimis montibus, ea gens, quæ illum locum accolit, propter magnitudinem sonitus, sensu audiendi caret.” CICERO *Somnium Scipionis*, cap. 5.

*By comparing the account in DIODORUS SICULUS and the description by Mr. NORDEN, the cataract seems to have been somewhat altered since the time of DIODORUS ; for he makes the extent of it to be ten stadia, that is, a mile and a quarter, but Mr. NORDEN describes its length to be no more than thirty feet. It is very possible, however, that DIODORUS included under the whole cataract the narrow pass of the mountains.*

HERODOTUS tells us, “ That he did not go so high, but stopped at Elephantine.”

DR. POCOCKE, in speaking of the cataract, observes, “ I never saw a more rough face of nature than at this place ; on the east side it is all

other day, or at least of passing by, when we should have the liberty of continuing our voyage.

DURING all this walk, I suffered a great heat, I was ready to die with thirst; and tho' I was in the

rock, on the west the hills are either sandy or of black rocks: above to the south there seems to be an high rocky island, and higher up rocky cliffs on each side, and below to the north there are so many rocks, that little of the water is seen. We went on to the north, the Nile running through the rocks. The people knew I came to see the cataract, and stood still; I asked them when we should come to the cataract? and to my great surprise, they told me, that was the cataract. The rocks of granite cross the bed of the Nile; and in three different places, at some distance from one another, divide the stream into three parts, making three falls at each of them. The first we came to was the least of all; I thought the falls were not above three feet. The second, a little lower, winds round a large rock, or island, which to the north may be about twelve feet high, and they say at high Nile the water runs over this rock; but supposing the Nile to be then five feet higher below the rock, the fall may be about seven or eight feet; to the east and west of it runs a stream. To the west are other rocks, and again to the west of that there was a third stream; but at high Nile these two streams unite. This seems to be the cataract described by STRABO, which, he says, is a rocky height in the middle of the river; the upper part of it is smooth, so as that the water could run on it, but ended in a precipice, down which the water fell; it had a channel, he says, on each side, by which boats could sail; that is, as we must suppose, at high Nile, when the two western branches might be united. Sailing over this rock they come to the very fall of the cataract, and the water carried them down the precipice with safety. Going somewhat lower, to the place where the road to Assouan turns off from the river to the north east, I observed a third cataract, the fall of which appeared to me to be greater than the others, and I judged the middle fall to be about five feet. There is another cataract at Ibrim, which they call twelve days journey from this place; some say also that there is a third cataract; and others, that there are seven mountains and seven cataracts." *Observations on Egypt*, pag. 121.

*I cannot conceive why STRABO should style this cataract the lesser cataract, ὁ μικρὸς καταρράκτης, for DIODORUS SICULUS expressly says, in the passage I have quoted from him above, that it is the greatest of all: But possibly STRABO meant only by the word μικρὸς a small fall of water; in which sense it is true, for according to Mr. NORDEN it is no more than four feet.*

middle



middle of the Nile, I could not get a single drop of water to quench my thirst. The swift flowing of the water made the rocks of granite so slippery, that I could not get to take up water in my hand. I made some useless attempts at it. Luckily, the native of Barbary was more dextrous than I. He made me stop, laid himself afterwards on his belly; and after he had well washed his hands, he presented me some water, which I drank with a pleasure that I cannot express.

THIS walk being ended, the native of Barbary conducted me to his cottage, in order to regale me with some dates and milk. He shewed me afterwards all his household furniture, of which an inventory might have been easily taken. What abounded the most were children, running quite naked about us, and I treated them with some trifling toys.

THE Barbarin, whose heart was gained by my liberality, opened me one of his great jars, in order to shew me how they preserved corn in the country. He carried himself the carp to our barque; and the next day he returned thither again, to present us with some milk. I can truly say, he behaved himself so well with regard to me, that I was quite charmed with him. He was the first and the last that did us any service in our voyage, without demanding beforehand the *backshish*. He committed, however, one fault, which had like to have drawn on bad consequences. He was so delighted with the few parats which I had given him, that he had shewed them to every body he met in the way, and gave them an account, at the same time, of what had passed upon the rocks of the cataract, and in his cottage.

ALL this occasioned a very bad effect. When I was returned to the barque, the fathers, who heard where I had been, and what I had seen, without meeting any more than a single person, set out upon the expedition, together with our other companions

in the voyage, particularly to see the fishing. They arrived there indeed; but no sooner were they upon the rock, than a score of Barbarins ran up to them, and demanded of them the *backsieb*. There was too great a number of them, to be able to content them all; and it was impossible to give to some, without offending others. Our people thought that the shortest way was to refuse plainly the giving any thing; and as they understood the language, they asked by what right they pretended to require any thing of them? The answer was ready and clear: "There was here, this morning, said they, one of our people that received money from a stranger; we want to receive some from you also." This insolent answer was accompanied with a behaviour still more insolent; for one of them, without any ceremony, put the point of his dart upon the breast of one of our people. In order to get out of this troublesome affair, it was requisite to open their purses, to give to some, and to promise to give to others, when they should get to the barque. The Barbarins did not fail to go thither, but they did not find there what they sought. Instead of money they received nothing but menâcés; and thus their insolence was repaid them.

WHILST this scene passed upon the rocks of the cataract, I had employed myself in the barque with drawing a plant called in Arabic *ofchar*. It grows in these quarters, and I had got it brought by the Barbarin, who accompanied me in my walk. The figure of it is amongst my designs; and I shall add here a short description, to make it better known.

THIS plant is three Danish feet high. Its stalk is straight, and there grow out of it commonly between fifteen and twenty leaves, and three or four fruits, pretty close one to another. All this together forms

a green bunch ; for the stalk, the leaves, and the fruit are of that colour. Its blossoms, which are of the size of those of the cherry tree, have five leaves, in the midst of which there is a green pentagon, which rests upon five purple coloured feet. These blossoms are white without, and the inside is half white and half purple. The fruit, which is of the bigness of a goose egg, resembles in shape a peach, and has veins or filaments like the leaves. It is almost all filled with wind, which issues out of it, as soon as any opening is made ; and then the rind continues a little relaxed. The inside of this fruit is whitish, and you see in it a sort of net, as in melons. You find there likewise a berry, hairy on the outside, and, when it is opened, you find another, which bears on its surface the seeds, ranged like the scales of a fish, and which resemble the kernels of the melon. This internal berry, where the seed is found, is of a white substance, and resembling cotton. When you break, either the fruit, or the blossoms, or the branches, there flows from the wound a great quantity of milk, of a sour taste. They warn strangers not to bring it near their eyes, because they pretend it is very prejudicial to the sight. The common people consider it as a preservative against the plague. No other virtue, however, is attributed to this plant, except that they apply very commonly upon wounds the leaves of *oschar*, after having parched them before the fire.

OUR Jew valet had set out in the morning for Essuaen ; and he did not return that day. His delay gave us great uneasiness, and kept us in suspense with regard to the continuation of our voyage.

#### THURSDAY, 26<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

I DREW this day the view of the port, which is above the first cataract, and that is named, in the language of the country, *Morrada*. I have marked  
in

in it, the two *passages*, which permit the going up the Nile. They are formed by an island. When you come out of that, which is to the south, you begin to perceive the point of the island of *Ell Heiff*, remarkable for its superb antiquities, of which I shall speak presently. The barques which go to the second cataract, or which return from thence, are built pretty much in the form of a *merkeb*; but are smaller. They have but one mast; and draw no more than three feet water, when they are ballasted. The custom-house of this port does not return more than three purses.

It was now past noon; and our Jew was not come back. But we received from him a messenger, by whom he sent us word, that the aga hoped to finish the affair very soon with the cacheff, and that he himself reckoned he should be able to join us again towards the evening. He arrived at the close of day, bringing with him the reys, and the brother of the aga, who was to accompany us. The cacheff had started so many difficulties, and carried his demands so high, that, all the preceding day, the aga had not been able to conclude any thing with him. On the twenty-sixth he bated, however, something; but still required an hundred piasters, or sevillans. The aga, seeing that he was so exorbitant, took another method. He sent to get camels, and other beasts for carriage, in order to bring us back to Essuaen. This step was decisive; the cacheff perceived that his affairs were going to take a turn unfavourable to his interest, and that, by being willing to demand too much, he should get nothing at all. He immediately gave his consent to the accommodation that the aga had proposed to him. He sent us two letters, and one of his janissaries, whom he ordered to attend us on the expedition: The whole for twenty-one sevillans, and some pounds of tobacco to boot. We sent him the  
money

money and the tobacco by the messenger, that came from Effuaen, and to whom we made likewise divers small presents.

I TALKED with our reys in the evening, and desired him to set sail the next day, so early, that we might stop some hours at the island of Ell Heiff. He made at first a great number of difficulties. At last, however, he promised me; and we set every thing in order for our departure.

WE had, amongst other provisions, four or five sacks of wheat, as well for our own use, as to exchange for divers little things, which the Barbarins will not always sell for money.

FRIDAY, 27<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

In the morning, at eight of the clock, we set sail, with a very strong north wind; we got out of the haven of the first cataract; and we passed very soon *Garbeltbees*, a village on the western shore of the Nile.

THE first object, that offered itself afterwards to our sight, was *Giesret Ell Heiff*. This island, the *Phile*<sup>y</sup> of the ancients, is situated at some distance from the eastern shore of the Nile, and near to another island much larger, but desert, and quite covered with rocks of granite. Its borders are cut in form of a wall on the rock; and in the inside there is an abundance of colannades, buildings, and other very magnificent antiquities.

As we approached this island, I took care to put our reys in mind of the promise he had made me. But he returned me for answer, that the wind was so strong, that he should risk his barque and our lives, if he attempted to land us there. His reason was too plausible for my insisting upon it any longer. How-

---

<sup>y</sup> PHILÆ insula est aspera et undique prærupta; duobus in unum coëturis amnibus cingitur, qui Nilo mutantur, et ejus nomen ferunt." SENECA *Nat. quæst.* lib. iv. cap. 2.

ever, to make him sensible that I was not easily deceived, I shewed him, as we passed, a place where

---

SERVIVS, in his commentary on VIRGIL'S *Æneid.* lib. vi. ver. 154. has preserved a fragment of SENECA concerning Philæ.

“SENECA scripsit de ritu et sacris *Ægyptiorum*: Hic dicit circa Syenem extremam *Ægypti* partem esse locum, quem Philas, hoc est amicas, vocant: ideo quod illic est placata ab *Ægyptiis* Isis, quibus irascebatur, quod membra mariti OSIRIDIS non inveniebat, quem frater Typhon occiderat. Quæ inventa postea cum sepelire vellet, elegit vicinæ paludis tutissimum locum, quem transitu constat esse difficilem: limosa enim est et papyris referta et alta. Ultra hanc est brevis insula inaccessa hominibus, unde *Ἰσίδης* appellata est.

“THE island of Philæ is high and very small, not being above a quarter of a mile long, and half a quarter broad; it was looked on to be rather nearer to the east side, and was inhabited both by *Æthiopians* and *Egyptians* according to STRABO. The city indeed itself seems to have been on the east side, and that there were no other buildings on the island; but what related to the temple; for DIO-DORUS seems to say that no person but the priests went on the island, by reason that it was esteemed very sacred, from an Opinion that OSIRIS was buried there; so that in the Thebaid there could not be a more solemn oath than to swear by the relicks of OSIRIS deposited in this island. This deity we may suppose, was worshiped here under the shape of the *Æthiopian* hawk. The whole island seems to have been walled round, something in the manner of a modern fortification; great part of the wall still remains. The particular sort of *Æthiopian* hawk, worshiped here, I saw cut among the hieroglyphics in several parts; it is represented with a long neck, the wings spreading very wide, and a serpent coming out from it, something resembling the winged globe. The temple is near the water on the west side of the island; it is built all of free-stone. There are very large colossal figures cut on the south side of the great pyramidal gateway. At the entrance to the east, which is near it, there is an obelisk on each side within; they are of red granite, about two feet square. A little more to the west is a lion on each side, as I find I took them to be, tho', if the heads were broke off, they possibly might have been sphinxes. Between the west side of the grand area and the water, there is only a narrow terrace, with doors to it from the portico, the whole ending at the water to the south, with a parapet wall, at which the two obelisks, about two feet and a half square, are raised on their pedestals, as well as two square pillars at the end of the colonnade. The island is there twenty or thirty feet high above the water, and there being a prospect about a mile south to the high granite hills, where the Nile having made a turn, the view is terminated by those hills in a most agreeable ro-  
he



he might have put us a-shore, without running the least risk. I comforted myself in this misfortune, as I had done before at Carnac, and at Luxxor; that is to say, I took views of all that I was able to discover \*.

THE first represents the island, such as it appears to the eye, when you go from the port of the first cataract. The reader sees there a gate, or a kind of citadel, resembling that which I have described in giving the antiquities of Edfu. That of Ell Heiff is, however, better preserved. As to the hieroglyphical figures that are engraven there, they are of the same size as those of Edfu; but their attitudes are various. Some are sitting and have the head covered with a mitre: others are standing and hold weapons in their hands, &c.

THERE are a kind of bastions, or bulwarks, which appear to be still in a pretty good condition. If the wall was not ruined in some places, we should be in danger of not discovering the greatest part of the columns, which are in the inside; and which, as far as we can judge, are there in great numbers, and of a very beautiful workmanship.

WE perceive on that side, upon the rock of granite, divers hieroglyphics, cut nearly in the same manner, as those that we have seen at Essuaen.

THE second view is taken from the west side; and

---

mantic manner, all together making a noble and beautiful appearance that is very extraordinary. To the east of the great temple is a beautiful oblong square temple; it is open all round. The capitals of the pillars may be reckoned amongst the most beautiful in Egypt, and probably were of the last invention. STRABO mentions, that they crossed over to the island on a float made of rods, like a sort of basket work, which I take to have been much the same sort as they now use, made of palm boughs tied together, with the shells of pumpkins under them to bear them up; on which they go down the river, and when they return home, carry them on their backs. \* *Dr. POCOCKE's Observations on Egypt*, pag. 120.

\* Fol. Edit.

the

the third represents the southern side of the island: You see there likewise the gate, or citadel; that I have already mentioned; and the attitude of the hieroglyphical figures does not differ from that of the figures which are on the other side.

THIS part of the island appears to be the most ruined; but the temple, seems to be of great beauty<sup>2</sup>.

---

<sup>2</sup> One of the great excellences in Mr. NORDEN's designs is, that they throw light upon the descriptions which the ancients have left us of the Egyptian temples. By comparing the account that STRABO has given of those temples with the views which Mr. NORDEN has drawn in several of his plates, the reader will be convinced of the usefulness of this work, in illustrating some passages of the classical authors. I have therefore extracted from STRABO the following description:

\* "THIS is the disposition of the building of their temples. At the entrance of the sacred place is a pavement of stone, its breadth an hundred feet or perhaps something less, but its length three or four hundred, and in some places more: this is called the *δέρμα* as CALLIMACHUS has said,

Ο δέρμα ἱερὸς ἔπος Ἀνδρόδα.

Along the whole length from thence on each side of its breadth, are placed stone sphinxes, twenty cubits, or somewhat more, distant from each other, so that there is one row of sphinxes on the right and another on the left. After the sphinxes there is a great *πρόπυλον*, vestibule; as you advance farther there is another vestibule, and likewise a third. For the number is not limited either of the vestibules or of the sphinxes, but are various in different temples, according to the lengths and breadths of the *δέρματα* or courts. After the vestibules is the temple, having a great anti-temple, or *πανε* (*πρόναος*) and worthy of admiration. The sanctuary (*σηκός*) was of a moderate size; there was no carved image of the human form, but only of some brute animal. On each side of the anti-temple are what they call wings (*πτερά*); these are two walls of equal height with the temple, at first distant from each other a little more than the breadth of the foundation of the temple; afterwards, as you advance farther, they incline towards each other fifty or sixty cubits. These walls have sculptures of great images resembling extremely the Tuscan and ancient works amongst the Grecians." STRABO, pag. 805.

Father SICARD agrees with Mr. NORDEN in giving an exalted idea of these ancient Egyptian buildings in one of his missionary letters. "I have had the advantage, says he, of being accompanied by the abbe

\* Fol. edit. See PLATE CVIII, CXXXVI, CXXXVIII, CXVIII, CXXXIX, CXL, CXLI, CXLII, and many others.

It

It is extremely well preserved ; and the ornaments, as well as the capitals of the columns, are of the utmost delicacy.

THIS is all that I could observe, in going up the Nile ; but in my return fortune favoured me more. Although the reys wanted then to give me his old story, with this addition, that his crew were tired with having rowed the whole day, yet he did not oppose my design so warmly. He even consented to it, after I had gained over to my side the pilot, by means of a se villan, and that another person had done as much with regard to the crew.

THE reys then landed, together with the brother of the aga, and the janissary. They went all three to Essuaen, by land ; and our Barbarins, animated by the present that had been made them, plyed their oars extremely well ; insomuch that they very soon fastened the barque to the island of Ell Heiff.

As it was now late, I proposed at first to defer my curiosity till the next day morning ; but the night being very fine, and my impatience encreased by that means, I enquired whether the island was inhabited. I was told that I should find no one there. This answer animated me. I took with me my instruments for measuring, my papers, and a lanthorn, and I landed with one single person of our company.

THE first thing we thought of, was to make the tour of the island, in order to have a general

---

PINCIA, a learned man, and a great admirer of antiquity ; this abbe came into the country on purpose to compare the most beautiful monuments of Italy with those that Egypt has preserved to the present time. The eyes of this abbe, accustomed as they are in Rome and the rest of Italy to see nothing but magnificent objects, could not forbear being surprized at the sight of the Egyptian works, of which the ruins alone appeared worthy of admiration. In effect, after having well considered them, he was forced to acknowledge, that in respect to architecture, noble, plain, and solid, the CÆSARS have been inferior to the PHARAOKS." *Nouveaux memoires des*

*regens de la Compagne de JESUS dans le Levant.* Tom. vii. pag. 29.

idea

idea of the situation of the edifices ; and I gave the plan of them in my *designs* <sup>b</sup>.

WE were much surprised, when we perceived amongst these antiquities a great number of Barbarin cottages ; and we truly thought that our pilot had played us a knavish trick. We continued, however, to advance ; and as we did not hear any dog bark, it gave us a little assurance. At length we found ourselves intirely out of danger of any plot against us, by seeing that these cottages were deserted and in ruins.

WE did not hesitate then to enter into the great temple of Isis, one of the most superb monuments, and which remains almost entirely standing.

WE then went to see another temple, which, tho' much smaller, is of extraordinary beauty and taste. I believe it must be the temple of the hawk ; for STRABO, book xiii. makes mention of a temple by that name <sup>c</sup>. There are, moreover, other temples,

<sup>b</sup> See Fol. Edit.

<sup>c</sup> Not only Mr. NORDEN, but father SICARD and Dr. POCOCKE speak of this temple by the name of the temple of the hawk. But I cannot find in STRABO any mention of a temple dedicated to the hawk, though STRABO is the author whom Mr. NORDEN refers to. He speaks indeed of a city that revered the hawk (for that is the most that can be concluded from the word *τῆμωσα*) and terms it the hawk's city, Pag. 817.

The Egyptians every where made use of the hawk as a symbol, and PLUTARCH, in his book *De Iside et Osiride*, says, "That at Sais, in the vestibule of the temple of MINERVA, were graven an infant, an old man, and after that a hawk, next a fish, and after all a river horse, and that it had a symbolical signification. By the hawk they mean God."

CLEMENS of Alexandria says, "That at Diospolis of Egypt, there were represented, upon what is called the gate of the temple, a child the symbol of generation, an old man the symbol of corruption, and a hawk the symbol of God : the fish is the symbol of hatred, and the crocodile of impudence. The whole symbol therefore put together appears to be expressive of this, *O ! you that are just come into the world, and you that are going out of it, God hateth Impudence,*" Strom. v. p. 670.

DIODORUS SICULUS gives other reasons for the respect the Egyptians shewed to the hawk. "That the hawk is useful against scorpions, the  
which

which I have marked, but the time did not permit me to examine them particularly.

At break of day I perceived some steps, which made me judge, that the island had throughout some subterraneous passages. I attempted to descend in divers places; but it was not possible for me to advance very far. All the passages were filled, or choaked up with filth and rubbish.

As soon as it was broad day, I employed myself in drawing divers sorts of columns and capitals.

I HAD already begun to draw the hieroglyphics of the grand frontispiece, when some Barbarins of the neighbourhood, who were but just up, perceived our barque, and judged that some one had a mind to land in the island. They cried out immediately to the pilot to keep off, and not to permit any one to land. The pilot, as well as his crew, prevailed on by our bounty, took no great notice of these orders. But a hundred of the Barbarins having appeared in an instant on the border of the Nile, and having threatened to burn the vessel if it did not keep off, he took fright, came to me in haste, and begged me to re-embark. I amused him as long as it was possible, in order to gain time. It was requisite for me, however, to give over, when all the crew of the barque came to me, and told me that there was no safety in continuing longer in that place.

I QUITTED this island with a great deal of regret. One single day would have sufficed to draw an infinite number of hieroglyphics, capable of clearing up the history and the worship of Isis. But prudence re-

---

the horned serpents called ceraſtæ, and all little venomous animals that are moſt deſtructive to men. Some ſay that this animal is revered, becauſe the prieſts make uſe of hawks for auguries, in foretelling things future to the Egyptians. But others ſay, that in ancient times a hawk brought a book to the prieſts at Thèbes, in which were written the worſhip and honours that were to be paid to the gods." *Lib. primo, 55.*

quired me to submit to necessity. I thought myself happy however, in what I had gained over these sorts of enemies ; and I wish that some one after me may have the good fortune to finish a work which I have barely sketched.

To return to our former voyage, I shall remark, that, after having passed the island of Ell Heiff, we continued sailing the whole day, and we left first upon our right the village of *Ubschiir*. About a league above we had to our left *Schemt Ell Uab*, and a little higher, on the same side, *Sardsch Ell Farras*. These two villages have nothing considerable, excepting that a league, or thereabout, above the first, there is in the Nile a place very dangerous to pass, on account of the stones which embarrass the channel of the river, as I have marked in the chart. Over against *Schemt Ell Uab* we perceive *Deboude*, another village, where I could have wished to land, in order to examine some ancient edifices, which appear very much in sight. But the wind was favourable, and they were willing to take advantage of it ; so that it was necessary for me to be content with taking a view of those antiquities.

We remarked there a grand and long edifice, built of great free-stones, closed on all sides except the front, where there is a great gate, and as it were two windows on each side, formed by four columns.

At the top of the edifice runs a plain cornice, underneath which, as well as at the four angles, is the *astragal* or moulding that we commonly see in the Egyptian buildings. This edifice is surrounded by a pretty high wall, and which is very much damaged, especially towards the portal.

On the right, we see a piece of a wall, of great square stones, and which terminates at this building.

OPPOSITE the front, there are three portals succeeding one another, which seem to make a passage leading to a canal of forty feet in breadth, and that

ter-



terminates at the Nile. This canal is ruined, and filled with sand. One may, however, remark, that its borders were lined with a thick wall, made of great blocks of stone.

WE see besides that a great mass of a vile modern piece of stone work, which does dishonour to these ancient buildings, and renders their prospect a little confused.

THE reader may perceive, that there are columns in the inside of the principal edifice, which, as we may judge, served anciently as a temple.

AT about a league and a half further, we found ourselves between two villages, of which the one, situated to the east, is called *Dembiid*; the other, situated to the west, is named *Dimmel*. Higher up, and on the same side, we saw *Hindau*, a village where we perceived four or five columns, which are the remains of abundance of ancient buildings, that were in this quarter. In effect, for the space of more than a quarter of a league, we remark on all sides some walls and foundations of several superb edifices; but it would not be easy to give an exact view of them; for all there is in ruins, with holes quite through, and almost covered with sand.

WE advanced afterwards to the island *Giesiret Mabues*. It is situated at six leagues above the first cataract, and pretty near the eastern shore of the Nile.

OPPOSITE this island, and on the same border of the river, we find *Sabdaeb*, a village where we perceived an ancient edifice. It has in front only a plain moulding; and its square portal rests upon a basis of six feet in height, made of great blocks of stone, joined together very artfully. This edifice is surrounded by a wall. A little further we found *Hu-vaed*; and at a league and a half higher *Umbarakaeb*. These two villages are on the western shore of the Nile; and it is a little higher that we come to the confines of Egypt and Nubia. The reader may see

in the chart of the Nile, <sup>d</sup> PLATE I. that Nubia begins at the village of *Ell Kalabsche*, and of *Teffa*. The first is to the east of the Nile, and the second to the west. They are of very little consideration in themselves. There are, however, near *Teffa*, some remains of ancient buildings, which I have taken care to draw. They are, as well as those I last spoke of, built of white stones, perfectly well joined together. The columns on the inside are still subsisting; but those that were without are ruined.

We were not a gun-shot distant from these villages, when an accident happened to us, which made us know the character of the inhabitants. At eight o'clock in the evening they cried out to us to bring the barque to land. The reys asked the reason for it. They answered him, that they wanted to see the Franks that he conducted, and to have some of the riches that they carried with them. The reys laughed at them, and said he would not come near the shore. Upon that they fired at us two musket shots, one from each side of the river; and though it was pretty dusky, they took their aim well enough for our being able to hear the balls whistle. We answered immediately this insult by a double discharge of seven muskets, firing towards the place from whence the voices came. But our enemies had hid themselves behind some stones, so that we did them no great mischief; they kept silence for some time, but they resumed courage, and began to fire again, and to give us abusive language. This sport did not please us, insomuch that we cried out to them, that if they did not keep themselves quiet, we would in reality land, and exterminate them intirely. We heard of them no more, and we did not forbear, sometime after, for want of wind, and because it was

---

<sup>d</sup> The author has also given a chart of the Nile upon 28 copper-plates. See *Fol. Edit.*

night, to fasten our barque near to *Berbetuud*, a village situated on the western border of the Nile.

SATURDAY, 28<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

DURING the whole night we had kept a good guard. Towards the morning there arose a little wind, and we set sail; but the calm returning a little time after, we drew near to the eastern shore and lay before a village named *Scherck Abobuer*. Its district has near two leagues in extent. Our pilot was a native of this place. He assured us we should find his countrymen a good sort of people, and that we might land amongst them with the utmost safety. The event confirmed it, and I can do them this justice.

SUNDAY, 29<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

As the calm detained us at *Scherck Abobuer* till noon, I visited the adjacent parts; and on the north side, at a gun-shot distance, I found along the Nile an antique quay. It is made of stones all cut in the form of prisms, and so well joined together that there was not the least space between. The side bordering the Nile was quite smooth.

At some distance from thence there were five or six cottages built with stones intirely covered with hieroglyphics. I looked about in the neighbourhood to see if I could not discover the edifice from whence they had been taken, but I perceived only an heap of stones. All was destroyed. The stones of those ruins were likewise covered with hieroglyphics, all done by a good hand; but which had never been painted. A Barbarin, who saw me attentive in examining these stones, gave me a signal to follow him, as if he had a mind to shew me something curious. I went to him; and he conducted me to a large flint stone, which, by the fall it had made from the neighbouring

bouring rocks, had broke or split in two. It was of a brownish colour; and the wonder which the Barbarin thought there was in it, is, that the middle, which had the form of a kernel, was intirely red.

THE greatest breadth of the land, from the mountains to the border of the Nile, is in this district no more than a hundred paces. If in some places it has a little more extent, it has in others much less.

WE purchased at Scherck Abohuer an heifer for four sevillans. It appeared to us to be in pretty good plight; but when we had killed it, we found more bones than flesh.

IN the afternoon a little wind seemed to rise, and we set sail; but it was not long. The calm that immediately came on, obliged us to put to land before *Garbe Abohuer*. This village is situated to the west of the Nile opposite to Scherck Abohuer.

#### MONDAY, 30<sup>th</sup> of DECEMBER.

AT eight o'clock in the morning, the wind being favourable, we immediately set sail; and in a few hours we reached to *Scherck Merruvau* and *Garbe Merruvau*. These two villages are opposite each other. We had the first on our left and the second on our right. We advanced on to *Scherck Merie*, and *Garbe Merie*, two other villages, of which the first was in like manner on the left, and the second on the right. I took a view of *Garbe Merie*, because I saw there the ruins of an ancient edifice, which I drew separately on the same sheet. At a league further we saw *Scherck Dendour*, and *Garbe Dendour*. The first situated on the eastern shore of the Nile, and the second opposite to it, on the western shore.

WE see at Scherck Dendour the tomb of a Mahometan saint; and they reckon this place precisely half-way between the first cataract and Derri.

NEAR

NEAR Garbe Dendour there is an ancient temple, which I had a great desire to go and examine, and our reys was easily prevailed upon this once to land me there.

My work being finished, I re-embarked : we put off from shore, and we soon saw, upon our left, *Barrasbour*. I perceived there some ruins upon the declivity of a mountain, and almost in the form of an amphitheatre ; but in considering them with attention, I observed that they were the remains of modern edifices. Towards noon we approached an island situated between *Girsche* and *Garbe Girsche*. I took the view of this last village, situated to the west of the Nile ; and I have joined to it a drawing of the antiquities that are found there. There are likewise some considerable ruins upon the neighbouring mountains ; but these ruins are not ancient. They appear to be remains of some houses, that were built there to retire to.

BETWEEN *Girsche* and *Garbe Girsche* is the most difficult passage in the whole course of the Nile. All the breadth of the river is filled with rocks, concealed under the water, which has a great depth at the sides of those rocks, and the intermediate spaces form whirl-pools with eddies or *vortices*. We conducted ourselves with all the precaution that so dangerous a passage required, but the misfortune was, that the barque did not obey the rudder. We struck upon a rock, and we continued there in a frightful situation. The barque had been taken hold of precisely in the middle ; and the whirl of the water made us turn upon the rock, as upon a pivot. There was too great a depth for our sailors to go into the water, to the bottom of which the perch could not reach. The reys would have persuaded his crew to go out with a cord, and to draw the barque along swimming ; but they represented to him, that the eddies of the water would hinder them from swimming. We saw our-

selves in imminent danger. Happily the current and the wind beat against the barque at the same time; this was our safety. It disengaged itself by that means, without further assistance. To complete our happiness, the wind was pretty strong; and we took such advantage of it, that in a little time we found ourselves out of danger.

Our surprise was great, when after our deliverance we saw the reys and all his crew arming themselves with guns and pistols. The first thought that came into our heads was, that they had formed some wicked design against us. It was requisite, however, to dissemble, that we might not give them reason to think that we were capable of taking fright. The reys, on his side, was surprised that we did not arm ourselves as they had done; and he told us at last, that we should do very well to imitate their example, because in a little time we should come to a place, where we should not fail, without doubt, to be attacked. When we asked him the reason of it, he answered us, that the people there were so wicked, that they scarce ever let a barque pass without firing at it; and that if they could force it to come to shore, they pillaged it with impunity. "They are so wicked, added he, that even the cacheff dares not expose himself to go amongst them."

As we had always our guns ready, we feigned to take no notice of what he said to us; and to give him a still better idea of our intrepidity, I asked him to put me ashore, to go and see the antique ruins that I had drawn at Garbe Girsche. At these words he threw out a most hideous cry, and swore by all that he knew the most solemn and sacred, that he would never consent to my request. Indeed it was not my intention; so that I did not insist much upon it.

At last we arrived at the place that had occasioned this alarm; and we saw there no more than a dozen Barbarins, sitting on the border of the Nile, and  
who



who held each a dart in his hand. But they continued quiet without so much as asking us from whence we came.

WHEN our reys and his crew thought themselves out of danger, they shewed their joy at it in the best manner they could; and it was a real pleasure to hear every one mention how he would have behaved, if we had been attacked, which gave us more than once a great deal of mirth.

THE two villages where these disturbers of the publick quiet live, are situated on the two borders of the Nile. That which is on the eastern shore is called *Gesch-Stobne*. The other opposite to it is named *Sabagura*. As the wind continued to be favourable, we took advantage of it; and we reached very soon to *Hokuer*, a village at some distance from the western shore of the Nile. Three quarters of a league further we found ourselves between *Kubaen* and *Deckke*. The first of these places was to our left, and the second to our right. The latter is remarkable for the remains of an ancient temple, which is not far distant from it; and I give two views of it in one sheet\*. They name it *Ell-Guraen*. This temple lies a little way within land. We see in it no hieroglyphics. It is nevertheless in the taste of the ancient Egyptian buildings and it may pass for magnificent.

WE found after that two other villages; the one to the east named *Alagi*, the other to the west called *Gurta*. We reached afterwards to three different districts, which have each two villages of the same name, situated the one to the east, the other to the west of the Nile, namely *Mobarraka*, *Umbendi*, and *Schemedereschied*. We fastened the barque near to the last of these villages which lies on the western shore of the Nile.

THE river begins here to become wider than it has been from the first cataract, as may be remarked in the chart. Its situation however continues to be the

---

\* See Fol. Edit. Pl. CLIV.

same, excepting that the rocks of granite have ceased a little above the island of Ell-Heiff; and that the mountains and rocks of this canton are of a sandy stone, mixed with flints and covered with sand and little stones. In other respects the whole country is very barren.

TUESDAY, 31<sup>st</sup> of DECEMBER.

WE continued all night near to Schemedereschied. We did not set sail till about seven o'clock in the morning; and a little time after there happened to me a very comical adventure, which I am unwilling to omit, because it gives in some measure an opportunity of forming a judgment of the genius of this people.

I HAD come out of my tent, to examine the names of the places, by which we had passed the preceding day. The reys and the Jew-valet were sitting near me. They repeated to me the names I had already written; and I corrected them by their pronounciation.

In the interim a Barbarin passenger, who was not far distant from us, gets up, throws himself upon me, seizes the paper that I held in my hand, tears it in pieces, and retires afterwards quietly to his place, where he sits himself down, as if nothing had happened. I could not understand the meaning of this insolence; and was reflecting with myself whether I should resent it or not, when the reys and the other persons that were present set up a horse laugh. I desired to know the reason of it; and after much discourse they explained to me at last the whole mystery. The Barbarin was unwilling that I should know the place from whence he came. He gave for reason, that it might happen I should return, some years after, into Nubia; and that bringing more people with me, I might make myself master of the country; that if I knew the village where he was born,  
and

and if I had the name of it in writing, he should not fail to be taken as well as the rest; that this was the sole cause of his having taken away the paper, in which I was going to write the name.

I COULD scarce forbear laughing at the simplicity of the man; but to prevent the consequences of such a humour, I took a very serious air and ordered the reys to draw near the border of the river and throw that insolent fellow on shore. The barque, added I, is intirely ours. It is only by courtesy we give passage to any one; and when any body behaves insolently, we shall turn him out.

THE reys immediately obeyed my orders, and turned his vessel towards the shore. Our Barbarin perceiving it, came and beseeched me humbly not to turn him out; and promised to behave himself better for the future. I suffered myself to be prevailed on. He obtained the permission of continuing, and from that time he was quiet and very serviceable.

IN the mean time we had already passed three other districts, which have in like manner a village of the same name on each border of the Nile; namely *Bubbaed*, *Naghalbadjemuse* and *Gabt Ell Abiid*. There came on afterwards so great a calm that we were obliged to fasten the barque in another like district, near a village situated on the western shore of the Nile and named *Sabua*. There are in the neighbourhood some remarkable antiquities, which I have drawn. They have not so magnificent an appearance as those of *Dekke*; neither are the stones so well joined together; we see between them some pretty large openings; and the stones themselves are only of a sandy and yellowish kind. The edifice however is built in the ancient Egyptian taste. Its portal is damaged; but the rest continues standing.

THESE ruins are in a plain covered with sand; and  
we

we observe there still four pieces of wall, which shew that there were formerly, in this place, vast edifices.

WE had here, all round us, nothing but mountains and sandy rocks. The foot of the mountains is sloping and cultivated quite to the top, to which the waters of the Nile reached in its inundation. The flat part of this tract of ground was filled with beans and lupines, that had been planted there; and the top was crowned with thickets of thorns, that grew up of themselves.

WEDNESDAY, 1<sup>st</sup> of JANUARY, 1738.

WE continued, as usual, the whole night quiet. In the morning at seven o'clock the wind being favourable, and even pretty strong, we set sail. The Nile continued to have its breadth, and the borders their usual situation. We very soon passed before another district named *Guad Ell Arrab* or *Areb*. It occupies likewise the two borders of the Nile, upon which there are two villages bearing the same name. A little higher we had on our left, and at some distance from the Nile, the village of *Schiaturma*. Afterwards we found ourselves between two great villages named *Angora* and *Malcki*, the first is to the east, the second to the west. We saw afterwards two other villages, namely *Arega*, it was to our right; and *Singari*, which was to our left.

In the afternoon we approached a village, situated on the eastern shore, named *Koroscoff*. They had called out to us here to bring the barque to land. We obeyed; and we heard that the *schorbatshie*, father of the cacheff *IBRIM*, was there at his country house. We then went ashore, and I waited upon this *potentate*. I was accompanied by the brother of the aga of *Essuaen*, the reys, the Jew, and the janissary.

WE found his lordship seated in the middle of a field, exposed to all the heat of the sun, and imploy-  
ed

ed in deciding a law-suit between two Barbarins, on the subject of a camel. He had the look of a wolf, and he was dressed like a beggar. An old napkin, which was formerly white, made his turbant ; and a red dress, still more old, scarce covered his body, which appeared naked through the holes.

At my coming up to him, I saluted him in the ordinary manner ; but as he saw that I did not bring him any presents, he gave me no very gracious reception. He did not so much as ask me to sit down. I did not forbear to do it without permission, and I put into his hands the letters of the aga of Effuaen, and those which his son had furnished us with for money. He put the latter into his turbant, but he read the others with a great deal of attention : after which he turned himself towards those that were pleading, who seemed each to imagine they should get their cause by the dint of noise. The *schorbatshie* sometimes intermixed his voice, and made himself so well heard, that it could not be doubted but that he was the judge.

As this trial had the appearance of not being finished very soon, I ordered the Jew to speak to the *effendi*, who was present, in order to engage the *schorbatshie* to dispatch us speedily. The *effendi* had this complaisance ; and upon the *schorbatshie's* hearing from him, that the Jew was my interpreter, he sent for him and asked him, why I had not brought him some good present ? The Jew, who understood his business, replied, “ You go too fast. What ! do you ask for presents, before you have done him the least service ? Go, shew yourself his friend ; and you'll see that he will pay you well.”

This flattering hope made an entire change in the gentleman. He assumed an air of mildness, began again to salute me, and let me know that we had nothing else to do but to go to Derri, where he should be as soon as we ; that there he would talk to us upon business,

business, and give us entire satisfaction. At the same time he ordered his son to conduct me to his country house, to shew it to me, and to send a sheep as a present to the barque.

By this means I saw that place of pleasure, which I should be tempted to term rather a stable; and whilst I was employed in looking at it, my conductor applied himself to chusing out of seven or eight she-goats, the poorest that he could find. He succeeded in it, and had the satisfaction to see all the domestics approve his choice.

As we were returning to the barque, the Jew related to me on the way, that the *effendi*, who was of Cairo, had expressed himself with a great deal of surprise that we had dared to advance so far; adding, that we surely had not been well advised; and that we might think ourselves happy, if we could escape safe and sound. I pretended to give no attention to this discourse. A man is oftentimes a dupe, if he trusts too much to what is said in the country. The interpreters can sometimes make a stranger believe such reports, when he does not understand the language: as they regard only interest, they are sometimes to be corrupted, and sometimes one finds out the method of intimidating them. On the other side, there is also great inconvenience in neglecting salutary advice; so that it is expedient to keep a certain medium, which is not, however, always easy.

WHEN we were arrived at the barque, we found that the goat, as meagre as she was, was become a bone of contention. The crew laid claim to it, and maintained that the *schorbatschie* had sent it for their supper. The reys supported them with his testimony. Our valet, on his side, would not surrender it; so that they were disputing warmly on both sides, who should have the prey. We saw that they began to grow hot; this engaged us to interfere in the dispute, and to maintain our right by serious menaces, which deter-



determined the property of the goat in our favour. Yet, as we had no need of it, and as it was no delicate bit, we generously made a present of it to the crew.

AFTERWARDS we set sail, to continue our voyage. The reys began then to let us know that he would conduct us only to Derri; adding, that if we would give him fifty sevillans to boot, he would not convey us to the second cataract. We took this for empty words, and judged it useless to give him any reply. However, as he addressed himself afterwards to one of our fathers, and entreated him to give us notice of it, we asked him his reason; to which he contented himself with answering that it had not been agreed on that he should go further. We threatened to bring him to justice at Derri; but he set up a laugh, and said, in a sneering air, that he believed we should not talk so high when we were arrived there.

ALL these discourses, and the advice we had received from the *effendi*, caused us to make divers reflections. But we were too far engaged to draw back, and we resolved to continue advancing, to see what would result from it. In the mean time we thought it proper to impose silence on the reys, and to assure him that in what manner soever things might turn out, we should always have it in our power to demolish him, because, if any misfortune befell us, we should consider him as the author of it. "Though we perish after it, added we, you may be assured that you will be the first victim."

THESE menaces made him intirely change his tone. He swore that he would have no blame in what might befall us; that if BARAM cacheff, to whom the barque belonged, would permit it, he would convey us with all his heart, as far as he could sail, but that he much feared that the cacheff would not consent to it. He warned us to take great care not to offend that tyrant, of whom he gave us a  
dreadful

dreadful description, although it was his master. We did not, however, believe him much, deferring our judgment of the whole till we should see him.

THE calm that then came on, made us put to land; and as the current had driven us back, we fastened the barque near to *Amada*, a village situated on the western shore of the Nile, almost opposite to Koroskoff. I landed there, to go and see an ancient Egyptian temple, which in length of time had got into the hands of the Christians. They had made a church of it; of which the walls afford a very plain proof, since we see there paintings, representing the Trinity, the apostles, and divers other saints; and in the places where the plaster has fallen, the hieroglyphics, that are underneath, begin to appear. This temple is still entire; but the monastery that had been built near it, is absolutely ruined.

AFTER having finished my design, I withdrew. I had perceived no one in my way; but near the barque I met with a Barbarin on horseback, and entirely naked, except that he had his breast covered with a goat's skin. He was armed with a long pike, and a buckler of a rhinoceros's skin. He stopt me, and put to me several questions; to which I endeavoured to answer in the best manner I could; but as he spoke the Barbarins language, and I the *lingua franca*, we gave but little satisfaction to each other. He grew tired at last and went away; I did the same.

WE saw that day a crocodile; and it was the second that we had seen from the first cataract.

THE bed of the Nile had here so little depth, that the barque could scarce pass in several places.

#### THURSDAY, 2<sup>d</sup> of JANUARY.

IN the morning at eight o'clock, the wind being north, we unfastened the barque to continue our voyage; but as the Nile turned here towards the north,  
we

we were obliged, during the whole day, to make use of the cord for drawing our barque. We saw at first two villages opposite each other, named *Abubandel* and *Hassaja*. The first was to the left, and the second to the right. Towards the evening we put to shore near a village situated likewise on our right, they call it *Kudjubed*. The situation of the Nile and of its borders continued all along the same. We remarked that the slope of the shore of the river was for the most part covered with lupines and radishes, the seed of which serves for making oil. There were likewise some other plants, such as succory and burnet.

ONE is no better provided with canoes in this quarter, than in the neighbourhood of the first cataract. We remarked that day a pleasant method which they have for crossing the Nile. Two men were sitting upon a truss of straw, whilst a cow went before swimming. The one of them held in one hand the tail of the cow, and with the other directed a cord fastened to the horns of the animal. The other man, who was behind, steered with a little oar, by means of which he kept at the same time the balance.

WE saw likewise the same day some camels loaded crossing the river. A man swam before, holding in his mouth the bridle of the first camel; the second camel was fastened to the tail of the first, and the third to the tail of the second. Another man sitting on a truss of straw, brought up the rear, and took care that the second and third camels should follow in a row.

#### FRIDAY, 3<sup>d</sup> of JANUARY.

IN the morning early, we began again to make use of the cord. The wind was still northerly; but it did not blow strong enough, so that we advanced but little.

WE went that day no more than three leagues, and we saw but three villages, namely, *Abadu*, situat-

ed on the eastern shore of the Nile; and near two leagues further, we found ourselves between *Keravafchie* and *Divan*. The first of these villages was to our right, and the second to the left. We fastened our barque near to *Divan*.

SATURDAY, 4<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

IN the morning, before we put off from shore, we had a serious scene with the pilot. He came to us, and demanded of us his suit of cloaths. No one had promised it to him, neither was it the custom to make such presents to pilots. So that we laughed at him, and told him plainly that he should have none. He continued, however, to insist upon it, and when he saw, at last, that he could get nothing, he was insolent enough to come to threats.

To support the character of resolution, which we had hitherto always maintained, we let him know, that if he did not hold his tongue immediately, we should make him pass his time very disagreeably. This menace, accompanied with the sight of a pistol cocked, imposed silence on him. He said not a word; but after he had taken his cloaths, he left the barque, swearing in a low voice, that he would make us stay a fortnight in the place where we were. We were told of it by the valet, and we sent him word, that since he had behaved in such a manner as to quit the barque, he should take care not to come aboard again without our permission. He set up a laugh, and went away. However, as he saw we sent no one after him, to entreat him to return, he came back of himself in an hour's time; and approaching the barque, he asked if he might be permitted to enter. We sent him word that for this time we were willing to consent to it; but that if ever he took it into his head to try our patience again, he should not be quit at so easy a rate.

TRANQUILLITY being thus re-established, we set sail;

fail ; and after having passed between two villages, named *Tomas* and *Siu Siugua* ; the first on our right, and the second to the left, we arrived about noon, at *Dir* or *Derri*. This place is situated on the eastern shore of the Nile pretty near the place where the river begins to direct its course towards the west ; and you have a view of it in my designs \*.

THE news of our arrival had gone before us ; for when we fastened our barque to land, we saw a croud of people running, curious to see us. I was told there immediately, that the *scherbatschie* was returned, and that he had assembled other potentates at his house. I waited on him there immediately, accompanied by the father, who understood the language, and our Jew valet. They were in grand divan. We were received with much civility. *BARAM* cacheff sat president, and let me know, after the first compliments, that they had consulted together with regard to us ; and as they intended to promote our voyage, they had thought that the best expedient for us was to keep at *Derri*, till the arrival of the new cacheff ; because then they should go to make war on a people, that dwelt in the neighbourhood of the second cataract ; and that as they should lead an army of five hundred men, we should travel in good company, and with the utmost safety. All the divan testified their being of the same sentiments. For my part, as I began to perceive the plot, I let them know, that we preferred the continuing our voyage upon the Nile in the barque that we had hired ; but that, however, we would reflect upon the offers that were made us.

It was easy to see through these obliging offers, that they had a design of laying a snare for us, from which we should have a great deal of difficulty to disengage ourselves, unless we could find out an expedient to elude it. I prevailed on the father to speak to *BARAM* cacheff, and to tell him, that I could

---

\* See Fol. Edit. Pl. 150.



wish to have a private conversation with him. He consented to it, and appointed me an hour. I then rose up; and after having saluted the divan I returned to the barque, in order to consult there, with our companions in the voyage, on the measures that we ought to take in so critical a situation.

WHEN I had made them a report of the proposals of the divan, and we recalled to mind all that had been told us at Essuaen, and what had happened to us since, it was thought by every one, that it would be madness in us to go any further, and that it was necessary to return as soon as possible. They left to me the care of procuring our departure in the best manner I could; but this permission was not easy to be obtained.

HOWEVER, I waited, at the hour appointed, upon BARAM cacheff, to whom I let it be known, that there was no one amongst us that was in a condition to bear so long a journey by land; and that we begged of him as a favour, that he would oblige the reys to convey us by water to the second cataraet. He answered, that that could not be; that the barque was his; that if the reys had engaged to carry us further, he had exceeded his orders; that besides, it was not possible to go up the Nile as far as the cataraet, because the water was too shallow, and that we should be forced to stop somewhere upon the way, with his barque; which, would cause him a great loss. "Since it is not possible for us to advance on by water, replied I, and on the other side are not in a condition to go by land, we have no other measure to take than to return back again." *You may so, replied he, but it shall not be with my barque. I have need of it elsewhere; and you must likewise take your things out of it as soon as possible.*

SUCH a discourse did not permit me any longer to doubt of the bad designs that they had formed against us. There was at that time no other barque at  
Derr.



Derri, and even though there had been one, it would never have dared to undertake to convey us, without the permission of this man, who was a real tyrant, and who, though out of employment, governed the country. It was requisite, therefore, to resolve on any thing, rather than to quit the barque. For this purpose I offered him, by means of the father and the Jew, all the advantages that he could hope in letting it to us; and I represented to him, that he would get more by us, than by any other person.

AFTER many difficulties the bargain was made. The reys was called; and we all swore, holding in our hands our beards, to perform the treaty in the manner it had been agreed on. BARAM cacheff was so content with it, that he made me a present of two new zagaies, and a young elephant's pizzle, which he told me he had carried himself above ten years. We retired afterwards to our barque, whither BARAM cacheff sent us a goat, and a basket of dates.

WE then sent the Jew with some sherbet, some strong liquors, tobacco, &c. to make a present of them to BARAM cacheff. But things had already changed their appearance. The *schorbatches*, having heard that we had made an agreement with him, and apprehensive of losing, if we went away, all the advantages he had proposed to himself to get by us, had talked with BARAM cacheff, and made him change his sentiments. He rejected our presents, saying that we made a fool of him; that he must have other things, of greater value, to continue us his protection; that however we had nothing to do but to wait the arrival of the new cacheff, who, as we had been told in the morning, would conduct us to the place whither we wanted to go.

THE Jew being returned to make us this report, we could scarce give credit to what he said. We commissioned the father to go and wait on BARAM

cacheff, in order to know exactly how the affair was. He was a very unwelcome guest. BARAM cacheff told him a thousand foolish things; and when the father expressed to him that he ought, however to consider, that we were under the protection of the Grand Seignior; he answered in a passion: "I laugh at the horns of the Grand Seignior; I am here Grand Seignior myself; and I will teach you to respect me as you ought. I know already, added he, what sort of people you are. I have consulted my cup; and I have found by it, that you are those of whom one of our prophets has said: *That there would come Franks in disguise, who by little presents and by soothing and insinuating behaviour would pass every where, examine the state of the country, go afterwards to make a report of it, and bring at last a great number of other Franks, who would conquer the country and exterminate all;* but, cried he, "I will take care about that; and without further delay you must quit my barque."

THE father, at his return, having confirmed to us the alteration in BARAM cacheff, and reported all the nonsensical stuff that he had talked; we took the resolution of not quitting the barque but with life. We determined that, in the mean time, we would not be dejected, and that we would even go to meet the danger; that we might not shew any weakness. We continued however quiet the rest of the day and all the night.

#### SUNDAY, 5<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

ACCORDING to an agreement we had made the preceding evening, I waited pretty early in the morning upon BARAM cacheff. I was accompanied as usual by the father, who spoke the language, and by the Jew. Our Barbarian was not long before he made his appearance. He repeated to us his accustomed cant, and offered to conduct us to the cataract. I answered him plainly, that we had no mind to go thither.

He

He then changed his note. He demanded large presents, and gave me to understand, that, when he had received them, he should see what he could do for us : upon that I asked him by what right he formed such pretensions ; whether we owed him any thing ; and what he meant by playing thus with his oath, and breaking the bargain he had made with us ?

THESE reproaches put him into a furious wrath. He swore that he would make us know who he was, and what respect we owed him. “ You are, *says he*, in a country that belongs to me ; and I will make you pay to the tithe of your blood.” I contented myself with answering, that we should be able to take our measures. We were exasperated at such a behaviour. We did not wait for his reply ; we quitted him without taking leave ; and we went immediately to the *Schorbatschie*.

THIS gentleman, who was no better than the other, held us pretty much the same language ; and when it was explained to me what he had said, I rose up, and raising my voice I desired the father to tell him, that if they had taken their resolution, we had taken ours ; and that we would wait the issue of this affair with weapons in our hands. Upon that I went towards the door, and the father as well as the Jew, after having explained to him my sentiments, followed me closely.

My design was to go to the barque ; but as I was crossing the market-place, BARAM cacheff, who was there, sent for me. He was then in his good humour. He made us sit down by him ; and after the ordinary salutation he said that we must equip him in cloaths like a prince, and make him besides that, divers other presents which he stipulated. His demands having been explained to me, I answered that we would content him, and that we would grant him all that he desired, provided that he would im-

mediately give his orders for our departure. He asked what suit of cloaths I would give him? I said that he should have mine, which was quite new and magnificent. It was necessary to give him a description of it, with which he appeared to be satisfied.

THE bargain seemed to be concluded. There was still wanting to make an agreement with the *schorbatshie*. I was willing to go and wait upon him; but BARAM cacheff would not let me. "Send the others, *said he to me*, and do you stay with me till their return. If they agree with the *schorbatshie*, the affair will be ended; if not, I will talk to him; and if he is obstinate, you shall nevertheless depart."

THAT I might not shew any mistrust, or fear, I continued with him; and when we were alone, he ordered some dates and water to be brought; with which he regaled me: as for him, he neither eat nor drank on account of the rammedan. During that time he loaded me with civilities, and made me understand that I should give him some of my shirts, some coffee, some rice, &c. I promised him all this by signs, and by some Arabic words ill pronounced. He received great joy at it, which he expressed by repeated caresses.

I PERCEIVED, however that amongst his caresses there were some which were owing to his avarice. The Arabs, as well as the Turks, are accustomed to put what they esteem the most valuable in the folds of their turbant and in those of their scarf. BARAM cacheff wanted to know whether I did not carry something of value about me. For this purpose he began with filling my pockets with dates; and when they were filled, he put some into my turbant and into my scarf, taking care to search at the same time whether he could not find any thing in them. But I had the precaution to take every thing out, before I left the barque; so that he lost both his labour and dates.

In the interim, the father and the Jew returned  
from

from waiting on the *schorbaticchie*, with the news that they had not been able to prevail with him. BARAM cacheff told me then, that if I would stay with him and let the others go away, he would treat me as his own brother, and make me pass my time very agreeably. I thanked him for his kind offers, and entreated him only to finish our affair, and to give orders for our departure. He consented to it. We rose up and returned to his house, where we concluded a new bargain: it was there stipulated, "That my suit of cloaths should be given to him; that he should have, moreover, a pair of pistols, some powder and balls, a certain quantity of rice and coffee, and fifteen sevillans; and that I should give as much money to the *schorbat**schie*, thirty five sevillans for the hire of the barque, six sevillans to the reys, and three for the sailors." On these conditions the reys was to set out with us in the night, in order that we might go away the more securely.

THIS new agreement being determined, BARAM cacheff told us, that he was then going to the *schorbat**schie*, to make him hearken to reason; and that he would come afterwards to the barque, in order to see the presents we designed him. For our parts, we made haste to the barque, where we no sooner arrived, than we caused all the things bargained for to be taken out of our packets, that we might not have any need of opening them in the presence of BARAM cacheff. We took care to conceal all the household utensils, and a thousand trifles which were necessary to us, exposing nothing to sight but weapons, of which we had a pretty good stock.

BARAM cacheff did not arrive under an hour. He immediately ordered every body to retire that was on the border of the Nile; and as soon as he was entered into the barque, he demanded to see his present, with which he appeared very well satisfied. "It is proper, *says he*, to conceal it, because the *schorbat**schie* is coming



coming. You shall keep it till the evening; and when it is dusky, I will send one of my slaves to take it.

THE *schorbatschie* being arrived we talked of the bargain that had been made, but he did not appear contented with it. In vain did we offer him a piece of common red cloth, of which he might make himself a suit of cloaths. He did not find it to his liking, and would not accept it; insomuch that he withdrew in discontent.

WE were afraid of a second rupture of the bargain. This induced me to put BARAM cacheff in mind of his promises. He answered, that we need not doubt of any thing; that all should be done in the manner which had been agreed on. Who would not have believed, after this, that he acted sincerely? Especially when we saw the reys come, who told us, that he had received the orders of his master, and who in the afternoon unloaded the vessel of what he had brought, and put aboard new merchandises of that place.

IN the mean time night was come; and it was already pretty far advanced without the slave's having appeared. We were very uneasy at it, and ordered the Jew and the brother of the aga to go and see what occasioned this delay. They continued there till past midnight, and came back at last with the sad tidings, that things had intirely changed their appearance; that BARAM cacheff was more a devil than ever; that he swore nothing less than our destruction; and that he talked of nothing but chests of gold which he would have, before he would let us escape.

THE *effendi*, whom I mentioned the first of this month, and who appeared to have some principles of honour, came then to us, and told us, that he was extremely concerned at the sad circumstances in which he saw us. "You have not to do, *says he*, with men, but with devils. My unhappy fortune obliges



obliges me to live with them ; and I maintain myself in my post, because I can write ; which they cannot do themselves. I abhor the manner in which they treat strangers. No barque comes here any longer. They have plundered all those that have appeared, and have ill treated the reys even so far as to give them the bastinado. I know not, *pursued he*, what restrains them so long with respect to you. It is either your weapons or your letters. I cannot say which of them it is ; but I know very well, that before your arrival, it was debated in the diwan, whether they should get rid of you immediately, and in what manner they might set about it. After great disputes, it was agreed on to conduct you into the deserts, under pretence of accompanying you to the cataract. What they would have done with you, the prophet only knows. But all that they say about a war, which they design to undertake, are mere lies, to make you fall into the snare. Believe me, that you have to do with the greatest villain that there is on earth. He has killed nine men with his own hands. They were his friends and some of the most powerful of the country. It is this which has rendered him so formidable : besides that he supports his power by the largesses he bestows on some, out of what he takes from others. He would be a cacheff if he dared to go to Tschirche, to ask for the caffetan ; but he is restrained through fear, lest the complaints that are carried thither so often against him should occasion him some trouble ; thus he chuses rather to send thither some silly young person, under whose name he governs. Moreover, *added the effendi*, he is drunk every night ; he becomes then like a madman ; he lies with his own daughters. In a word, he is the wickedest man that I have ever known."

We heard this horrible panegyric without answering a single syllable, because, we did not know the  
*effendi*

*effendi* sufficiently to confide in him. We asked him, however, his advice ; but he could give us none. He left us in the same uncertainty, and in which we continued the whole night.

MONDAY, 6<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

As soon as the day began to appear, a slave from BARAM cacheff came on board, to tell the reys, that he must throw all our baggage on shore, and oblige us to quit the barque. The reys having immediately informed us of it ; we told him, in presence of the slave, that he must take care not to touch any thing that belonged to us ; that we were determined not to quit the barque but with life ; and that the first person that should attempt to force us out, might be assured of being laid dead on the spot. We promised, however, to go and talk with BARAM cacheff, and I went immediately to his house, attended by the interpreters.

WE were received there pretty much in the same manner as he had given us audience the preceding day in the morning ; and when I was going to speak of the second agreement, which had been made, he fell into a furious passion, and turning himself to us said, *Roug, roug !* which signifies *Get you gone ?*

WE did not stay to have this brutal compliment repeated, but we went strait to the *schorbatschie*, in order to find out, by his countenance, what we had to expect. We arrived there before he was up, and we found abundance of persons assembled there. Every one was eager to talk to us, and all their discourses tended only to ask us to give them something. The father, who was with me, repeated to me what they said, and their ridiculous requests gave us occasion more than once to laugh.

ONE of their *ninny saints*, who had kept himself in a corner of the room in sullen silence, approached us

at length, and was offended at the good humour we shewed. He told us charitably in the *lingua franca*, which he spoke very ill, that we ought not to shew so joyous a look. "It would suit you better, *says he*, in the circumstances you are, to weep; for perhaps before the day is ended, you will have lost all your gaiety."

THIS counsel, opposite to the maxim we had laid down for ourselves, made no great impression upon us. The *ninny* perceived it. He then changed his tone, and said to us some foolish stuff in French, ill pronounced, which he had learned at Algiers among the slaves. He was lately come from thence, and half naked; which, joined to his pretended character of a saint, had placed him in veneration among the Barbarians.

At last the *schorbatchie* appeared. We wished him a good day; which he returned us with a great deal of indifference. I ordered the interpreter to ask in what disposition he was with respect to us, and whether we might promise ourselves to come to some agreement with him. "Give me, *said he*, five or six purses; after that I will talk to you;" and without waiting for our answer; "I must, *continued he*, see your coffers. I'll go this day to the barque; you shall open them for me; and if they are not filled with gold, you shall share with me what they contain."

WHEN I heard that he touched this string, I let him know that he should not see the inside of our coffers, nor break them open; but that he might depend upon it, that the person, to whom he should give the commission, would not return to tell him what he had found there. The *schorbatchie* gave no answer to this menace. He contented himself with looking at me earnestly: after which he turned himself towards his own people to talk with them.

We had heard enough to judge what we were to expect:

pest : so that we retired, with the design of returning to the barque. But when we were on the market place, we saw there BARAM cacheff sitting in grand council. He called to us as soon as he saw us. We feigned not to hear him, and passed on our way; but when he sent a slave to call us, we went up to him.

He was no longer the same man. He received us with a gay air, and, after having made me sit down by his side, he asked me why I was so hard towards him; and why I would not give him a chest of gold, since we had so great a number? The father having explained to me his complaint, I rose up in order to go away, without making him any answer; but BARAM held me back by my cloaths, and obliged me to sit down again. He asked why I did not give him an answer? And I let him know by the interpreter, that he was a pitiful fellow, that had neither faith, nor law, nor kept his word; and that I would have nothing further to say to him, since my resolution was taken.

THE interpreter hesitated to return my answer. BARAM perceived it, and ordered him with a stern look to tell him all, without omitting a single word. "You require it, *replied the interpreter*; I'll tell you then, and told him word for word what he had heard."

BARAM, instead of being exasperated, as I expected, set up a laugh, and let me know that I had nothing to do but to *bring him the horse, that he might get up and ride*. "I have only offered him too much already, *replied I*; but if he will let us go away immediately, I shall not regard what is past; and I will give him, moreover, some little presents, which will not be disagreeable to him."

THIS new overture seemed to be relished by our gentleman. He loaded me with careffes, and called me his brother. But when it was necessary to come to a conclusion, he demanded some purses for himself,

self, and added, that as much was requisite for the *schorbatschie*. He formed also besides that divers other pretensions to which I did not deign to give an answer.

He pressed however, to have my resolutions ; and at last I let him know, that as we had no more than was requisite to us for the necessities of our voyage, we could give him nothing ; that it was true, I had made him promises ; but that as he did not keep his word, I was dispensed from keeping my word with him ; that he might be assured he would have nothing but by force ; and that I was going immediately to the barque, to put every thing in order for his reception.

He caused every thing that I had said to be explained to him, and had the patience to hear it, without being enraged. He contented himself with answering, that he had, however force enough to destroy us if he had a mind. “ We know it, *replied I* ; and we were informed of your evil disposition before we set out from Essuaen. We did not forbear to come, but took the precaution of having the insults revenged that should be done us, in case we were not in a condition to revenge ourselves. Upon that I rose from my seat. I took leave, and went to the barque, with a firm resolution of quitting it no more.”

I HAD not been there half an hour, before BARAM sent to desire me to dispatch to him an interpreter. The Jew went to him ; and returned very soon with the news, that BARAM was seriously in a disposition to let us depart ; that he begged we would send him the presents that had been agreed upon to give him. He asked also for some other trifles, of so little importance, that it was not worth our while to refuse them to him. On these terms he promised to let us depart immediately, and to accompany us himself to a certain distance.

THERE was no great reliance to be made on the word



word of a man, who had so often broke it. It was necessary, however, to pass it over. The presents were sent him, together with the money; and the *schorbatseble* had likewise his share, with some piasters to boot, which he had asked for his children.

TOWARDS noon BARAM cacheff, accompanied by two of his bullies, came to the barque; he made up immediately to our tent; but as he saw we were sitting at table, he would not enter for fear of disturbing us. He got every thing in order for setting sail. When he saw that we had dined, he gave his sabre and those of his attendants into my hands, to keep them, and to shew us that he acted with sincerity. He then asked me whether I was satisfied with him, and whether I would call him still a faithless man? I took care to avoid provoking him. I let him know, that I could not have thought he was so honest a man, and that at present I was inclined very much in his favour. I said too much to a man of that stamp; so that he did not fail to take me at my word. "Since you are favourably inclined towards me, *replied he*, give me something." We appeared a little reluctant; but he did not give over his demand; and it was necessary to part with several other trifles in his favour. The worst of it was that he had never done asking. He had no sooner got one thing than he wanted to have another. Nothing was more tiresome. He asked; we refused; we disputed on the one side and the other; we were obliged at last to come to a composition, and always to give what indeed were trifles, but trifles that might be serviceable to us on other occasions.

In the mean while we had got on a good way, and night approached. We landed at Keravafchie. BARAM left us there, ordered his supper to be got ready, and eat it in the open air, at a little distance from the barque.

In the *interim* a servant of one the fathers, who had been



been robbed of a riding-coat, went to complain to BARAM cacheff, who by this time began to be drunk. He fell into a furious passion, rose up, drew his sabre, and swore that whoever had committed the robbery should forfeit his life. "I will," *added he*, take all I can lay hands on, but I will have my slaves keep their hands clear." Upon that, he ordered a strict search to be made, and in an instant the riding-coat was found. The slave, who had stole it, threw himself at his feet, to implore his mercy; our people likewise entreated for him, and BARAM relented. The event of this affair was happy for us; for if BARAM had killed his slave, we should have been obliged to pay him for the loss. This is the least thing that would have happened from it. We were very much concerned that the servant had carried his complaint without our knowledge, but he did not foresee the consequences of it.

BARAM cacheff, before he left the barque, had obliged us to pay two sevillans to each of the bullies he had brought with him. He himself, as I have said, had squeezed us the whole day, sometimes of one thing sometimes of another; and had given over asking, only because he saw nothing more to ask for: but now he seemed desirous to return to the charge; for he sent us word that he designed to come again to the barque, to take leave of us. The brother of the aga, who had supped with him, saved us from this visit. He represented to him, that he had every thing to fear, if he approached us during the night; that he had squeezed us so much, that we were provoked beyond all patience; and that he would not be answerable for his life, if he attempted so much as to enter the barque again.

As drunk as he was, these representations had an effect upon him. He contented himself with sending us his wishes of a good voyage. But he let us know, at the same time, that he had just received intelli-

gence, that his sultana was brought to bed ? and desired that we would be so good as to make the child a present of some silver baubles. We returned an answer, that we would send them by the reys ; and we did not fail to do it ; but it was not till we sent him word that we were just going to depart.

BARAM was content with our present. He gave the brother of the aga of Essuaen, letters to carry to his brother, and to the cacheff IBRIM ; and he ordered the reys to conduct us. At last we found ourselves happily escaped out of the hands of this tyrant ; and we congratulated each other, on being quit at so cheap a rate.

THE Nile here changes its course ; it turns towards the north ; and we had a great calm. We had recourse to the oars, which with the assistance of the current of the river made us advance so fast, that in a short time we lost sight of the fire, that BARAM cacheff had got kindled in order to warm himself.

Continuation of the author's voyage in his return  
from DEIR, or DERRI, to CAIRO.

TUESDAY, 7<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

WE had continued the whole night to make use of the oar ; we plied it likewise the whole day ; and in the evening at eight o'clock we had already passed *Gurta*. That day our reys took it into his head to mimick the tyrant. He thought that, after the example of his master, he might also extort money from us. He demanded fifty sevillans, above the price that had been granted him ; and threatened to carry us back to Derri, if we refused to give him that sum. Luckily he had not, like BARAM cacheff, the power in his hands. We let him know, therefore, that if he ever dared afterwards to talk to us in such a manner,

manner, he might be assured, that we would throw him, without ceremony, into the Nile, and that we would take care ourselves to navigate the barque. This menace made him change his language. He said, that his intention was not to exact any thing of us; that he had only a mind to jest, but he hoped however that we would be generous enough to make him some present. "Our generosity, *replied we*, will depend upon thy own conduct; and we will act with thee, according as thou wilt act towards us." He appeared contented with this declaration, and left us afterwards in quiet.

WEDNESDAY, 8<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

WE had advanced the whole night, by means of the current. We continued in like manner till noon, when we were obliged to put to shore on account of a north wind, which was too strong, and hindered us from advancing. We fastened the barque to the eastern shore of the Nile near to *Dendour*. We had gone a little more than half the way between Derri and the cataract; a passage where there is a great deal of difficulty to get provisions. We find nothing but some sheep, extremely lean, and some goats, which are worth nothing, poultry is extremely scarce, and eggs of consequence are not common. With regard to bread, there is none to be sold. The Barbarins grind only so much corn as they want to bake; and the cakes that they make, are never above half baked. The most disagreeable thing is, that when we meet with any thing to purchase, the merchandise sold, delivered, and paid for, does not make a perfect sale. We had a convincing proof of it this day. Our valet had purchased a sheep, which a Barbarin had brought to the barque with a design of selling it. After many contests, he left it for two sevillans, with which he went away. But in half an hour's time he returned to demand his sheep, and offered to give back the

money he had received. Enraged at his procedure, we refused to break the bargain; besides, we wanted the sheep. Upon that the man was obstinate, made a terrible outcry, and assembled so many people by his noise, that in order not to come to any extremities, we acquiesced in his demand, on condition of his returning the two sevillans. The comedy did not end there. In a moment after he came back with the same sheep, for which he demanded three sevillans. We would have turned him away. When he saw that we did not appear to have any desire of his sheep, he pretended to oblige us to take it for the price that had been given him at first. We hesitated at it. At last we came to an agreement; and the sheep continued with us for one sevillan and some measures of corn, which was however less in value than what was given him at the beginning.

THURSDAY, 9<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

ALTHOUGH the north wind was still pretty strong, we did not forbear to continue our voyage the whole day, by means of the oar and the current; so that towards evening we reached the village of *Abobuer*. We approached to land; and we had done so in divers places that day, but without stopping there. The people only asked us, how we had been permitted to return from Derri? Some had added, very civilly, that if the reys would put us ashore amongst them, they would divide the spoil with him. But at *Abobuer* twenty men dared to come swimming to our barque, to ask us news about our voyage. They kept themselves however at certain distances, and shewed no desire of doing us any mischief. They expressed only a good deal of surprise, that we had been suffered to escape so easily.

As from *Essuaen* to *Derri* they are not accustomed to cross the Nile with canoes, the inhabitants have  
the

the art to supply that want in divers manners. I have already given two of them; and I am now going to give a third, which is very singular. They put themselves a straddle upon a great piece of wood, after having placed their cloaths over their head in form of a turbant. They fasten likewise to it their zagaye or dart. They afterwards make use of their arms as oars, and by this means cross the river without much difficulty. This method is also in use a little below Essuaen; and even in places where there are more crocodiles than here. We do not hear of any accident happening from it; and those who bathe themselves every day in the Nile, take no more than the former any precaution against that animal.

FRIDAY, 10<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

We resumed the oar very early in the morning, because the north wind still continued. In the afternoon we put to shore at *Ubschiir*. The design was to continue the whole night before that village. Yet by means of solicitations, and by some liberalities that I gave, I prevailed with them to reach to *Giesiret Ell Heiff*. I have already mentioned before, in what manner I employed a whole night to examine the magnificent antiquities of that island, till the importunity of the Barbarins obliged me to withdraw the next day in the morning. So that I content myself with referring the reader to the account I have given of it.

SATURDAY, 11<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

AFTER having quitted *Giesiret Ell Heiff*, we went down the Nile to *Morrada*. It was no more than nine o'clock in the morning when we arrived at that port. We thought ourselves there in a place of safety, because there began the government of our good aga of Essuaen. But we soon heard that his



disorder grew worse, insomuch that it was thought he could not hold out long. This news afflicted us; for we know well enough his son, not to be able to promise ourselves from him the same civilities that we had received from his father.

He had been informed of our arrival by the reys; and in coming from Essuaen to join us, he had met with the Jew valet, whom we had dispatched to the aga, to inform him of our return, and to entreat him to get us furnished, as soon as possible, with beast of carriage, in order to convey us back to Essuaen together with our baggage.

At this meeting the son of the aga let the valet know, that he should not convey us back at so cheap a rate as he had carried us. "We know, *says he*, at present in what manner it is necessary to deal with your people; we, that have treated them with all the civility imaginable, have received from them nothing but trifles, whilst those, that have tyrannised them, have drawn from them things of great value." Our valet asked him if he would put himself on a level with robbers, who would have taken our shirts off our backs, if they had not been afraid of having their fingers flayed in drawing them off. "All that is very fine," replied the son of the aga; "but I will not be such a fool as I have been."

We did not yet know his intention, when he came to see us about ten o'clock in our barque, together with the reys. But after the first compliments he took care to let us know, that he must have a present of some value, to engage him to convey us to Essuaen; and that on this condition he would furnish us with all the conveniencies we could wish. We answered, that we had always considered him as a man of honour; that we hoped to have no reason but to speak well of him, as we did of his father; that if he designed to make a profit of us, he had nothing else to do but to set a value upon his services; that if he re-  
garded



garded his interest, we did the same on our side ; and that, moreover, there were at Cairo powers, to whom we should make a report of the manner in which he would have treated us.

This answer appeared a little to confound him ; yet he held out notwithstanding ; and, half thro' necessity, and half through courtesy, we engaged to give him a cloth suit of cloaths, and fourteen sevillans, besides three sevillans which we agreed to give for the beasts to carry us. This agreement being concluded our gentleman appeared contented, and promised to come and take us up the next day.

I MADE also that day a tour to the cataract, to observe it a-new. After that I returned to the barque, where we remained quiet, whilst our people shot some turtle doves, which are here in great abundance, as likewise fish ; and they brought us as many as we could desire.

#### SUNDAY, 12<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

TOWARDS noon, the son of the aga arrived, with a great number of beasts of carriage, to convey us conveniently to Essuaen. We caused our baggage to be immediately put on them, and sat out upon our journey. But in approaching the city, the son of the aga went foremost, and surprised us much when we saw that he passed beyond Essuaen. It was requisite however to follow him ; for he had given such orders to his people. In vain did I ask some of them the reason of this counter-march ; no one could, or no one would tell me the motive of it.

WE had been played so many bad tricks, that this unaccountable march must needs alarm us. This did not hinder me from turning a little to the left, to see there an obelisk, which is half buried in the sand, and of which I have already made mention elsewhere. However I did not stop there long. The time did

not permit me ; for it was necessary to keep up with our company, and we arrived at length at what they called a country house of the aga. The commander of the port of the cataract was there already. He ordered, as soon as we arrived, that all our baggage should be brought in : after which he commanded the door to be shut.

ALL these mysteries made us very thoughtful. Yet they did not alarm us. There was not much to be feared by us, since we were sufficiently well armed to make head against him.

WHEN he had paid the drivers of the camels, he came to salute us, and let us know, by the interpreters, that he had conducted us to that country house, in order to disappoint the populace, who had assembled in crouds at Essuaen to see us arrive. “ They know every thing, *says he* ; and they have been informed of the manner, in which you have been treated at Derri. They might take it into their heads to shew you the same behaviour here. It would not be in our power to secure you from it. Our force is not sufficient to resist a populace when they rebel. I have therefore thought it more proper, both for you and for us to conduct you to this country house, where you will be in the utmost safety.”

WE entered into his reasons, and began to think him a more honest man, than he had appeared to us in the first behaviour. I can even say to his praise, that he supported afterwards that character tolerably well ; for though he did not let any opportunity escape, where he could squeeze from us some little present, yet he did not forbear to serve us with all his power.

THE abode however, which we saw ourselves obliged to make in a country place, was not much to our relish ; and we did not fail to speak of our departure. But a barque was requisite for that purpose ; and there was none at Essuaen. The son of the aga offered us, however, to get one, without any doubt, from the port of the cataract. I saw that some days  
would

would pass, before we should be able to have it; so that I asked him, if I could not procure myself a little boat, or a canoe, to go to the other side of the Nile, where I was desirous of seeing the antiquities, which the valet of the aga had told me of before we departed for Derri? "I will satisfy thee, says he; but a canoe is not all that is wanting. You must likewise be escorted, to secure you from the insults of the Arabs, that are sometimes met with on that side." And upon my answering, that we would go in sufficient numbers, and sufficiently well armed not to fear any thing, he promised to think of it, and left us extremely well satisfied at his conduct.

WE then took full possession of our new abode, which, instead of chambers, had nothing but three kind of arched coach houses, and the furniture of which was nothing but a *sopha* of stone work. That of the middle received light at its whole front, which was entirely open. There was, however, a kitchen uncover'd at the top, besides a little nook, where a slave lodged with his wife. He was the keeper, or governor of the castle. His master had given him orders to obey us in every thing; and he was to put the keys into our hands every evening.

THE best circumstance in this country house was a large court full of sheep and poultry. The whole was at our service, on condition that we would pay for it; that is to say, at a dearer rate than at the market.

BEFORE the body of the principal building there was a platform, very proper to roast ones self in the sun, which shone upon it the whole day. One might, however, have breathed there a cool air, in the evening, and at night; but there was a great obstacle to it; for they had carried thither for a long while all the filth of the house; which had grown putrid there, and gave a smell that did not permit one to stay long.

WE had been accustomed to lodge so closely confined in our barque, that notwithstanding the little

conveniency there was in this house, we thought ourselves much better than we had been for a long time. We were at least more at large. This advantage, however, did not affect us much, and we sighed for the time when we should be able to quit this disagreeable retirement.

MONDAY, 13<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

WE were told in the morning, that there was at Es-suaen a little barque, which offered to carry us to Cairo. I went to see it, but it was too small; and the master demanded forty-five sevillans for our passage. I was not tempted to conclude the bargain; and the son of the aga, who arrived in the interim, was no more willing than I to consent to it. He said the voyage was fatiguing enough of itself, without increasing the fatigue by putting ourselves in a prison; and he gave me hopes there would arrive in a little time a barque more capacious. I agreed, however, with the master of this, to carry me the next day to the other side of the Nile; and the son of the aga promised me two janissaries, together with the valet, who had talked to me of the antiquities that were to be found there. It was he that was to serve me for a guide.

TUESDAY, 14<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

In the morning I went to the other side of the Nile. I was accompanied by the fathers, the janissaries, and the valets. We were obliged to go down the Nile more than a league, because the border of the river between the island Elephantine and the continent, on the west side, had not depth of water sufficient to bring the barque near to shore.

When we had landed, it was necessary to go up along the shore, as high as we had fallen down. Our guide made us, after that, cross sandy mountains, which in this quarter come quite close to the border of the river. It was the most troublesome walk in  
the

the world; for besides that we had to travel over sands, which is fatiguing; they concealed on their surface abundance of thorns, which gave no small trouble to our bare legs, as we always have them in that country. Moreover it was extreme hot weather; so that the way which our guide had fixed to the continuance of a few pipes of tobacco, seemed to us of an unmeasurable length.

At the end of three hours walking, we arrived at the place we were in quest of, without any other accident than that of being very well tired. But what was my surprize, when instead of some magnificent ancient edifices, I perceived nothing but old rubbish of bricks and mud! I asked the valet of the aga, if these were the fine things, that were worth more than I had seen in the island Elephantine? He answered me very calmly, Yes; but as he perceived that I was provoked at it, he endeavoured to sooth me, by saying that I should see something more beautiful in the inside. It was requisite to be patient, and to advance on in order to enter. I found there also nothing more than old rubbish. I began to break out in a passion against the man, who did nothing but laugh at the anger he saw me in, as if he had a mind to divert himself in having deceived me in this manner.

I ENDEAVOURED to stifle my wrath by eating and drinking what I had taken care to bring with me. I refreshed myself by that means from my fatigue; and I then recollected, that the rascal had talked to me of mummies, paintings, and inscriptions. I asked him about them, and he promised to satisfy me by shewing me all those things. Immediately he led me into a place, the walls of which were indeed painted; but when I saw them, I did not doubt a moment but all those ruins were the remains of a church, and of a Copti or Greek convent. He led me after that to a kind of burial place, the tombs of which have been opened by the Arabs. He gave me  
some



some bones of dead people for mummies ; and it is a wonder he did not pass them off for relicks. There was wanting nothing more after that but to show me the inscriptions. He was not at a loss at all about it, when I asked after them. He maintained the fulfilling of his promise to the last, and made me remark some ruined cells, where they had wrote, with charcoal, upon the plaister that the walls were daubed with.

My gentleman did not stop there ; he piqued himself of doing more than he had promised. He made me go down into a place, where there was a well half filled up. “ There, says he, you see the place where the treasures are buried. If you can draw them out from thence, you will be sufficiently paid for the trouble you have taken in coming hither.” I set up a laugh, in my turn, at the simplicity of this Barbarin, which is common to all his countrymen. I judged then, that these ruined convents might very well have occasioned the general notion they have, that treasures have been buried here. It is possible that the Monks, in danger of seeing their convents destroyed, hid under-ground the silver plate and the shrines for relicks of their churches ; that the Arabs afterwards, having discovered some of these treasures, have imagined there were such throughout the whole country ; and that as they cannot distinguish between an ancient and a modern ruin, they imagine there are treasures wherever there have been buildings. I believe likewise, that I should not run any risk of being mistaken, if I said that the preservation of so many antiquities, which we admire at present, is owing solely to this false persuasion, very troublesome, however, and very dangerous, to a traveller who endeavours to satisfy his curiosity.

As I had taken so much trouble to come on the spot, I was willing to see it entirely. I went all round it ; but, to say the truth, I perceived there nothing that was worth the pains of remarking. I found only  
the



the marks of a building, which had been inhabited by some Christians, employed solely in the worship of the true God. Moreover the building was of a bad structure, and situated in the most barren soil in the world. We see, as far as the eye can reach, nothing but plains and mountains covered with sands. The water, according to all appearances, was not very good there; and if those who dwelt in this place, were obliged to go and fetch water from the river, they underwent a great deal of inconvenience in procuring it.

AFTER having reposed ourselves a little, we set out upon our journey to return to our barque. The walk, that was necessary for us to take for this purpose, was still more disagreeable than that of the morning. In the first place, we were then quite fresh, and the hope of seeing something beautiful encouraged us; whereas at our return, we were already tired with the preceding walk; and moreover we had the displeasure of having fatigued ourselves in vain.

NEITHER in going nor in returning, did we meet with any one upon the road. As far as I can conjecture, the Arabs seldom go into this quarter, unless when they go in companies in search of something. I paid three sevillans for the barque; and I gave two others, which were distributed between the janissaries and the valet of the aga. These last were more contented with my bounty, than I was with the useless toil that I had taken.

WEDNESDAY, 15<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

THE son of the aga brought us a reys, whose barque was at the port of the cataract; and he was to bring it down in three days to Essuaen. We agreed with him for sixty sevillans, which was ten sevillans an oar. He engaged to conduct us to Cairo, and to land us wherever we should have a mind. We paid down ten sevillans before hand.

WE had this day a visit from the brother of the  
aga

aga, who had accompanied us to Derri. He came the moment after that the son of the aga had left us, and we had concluded a bargain for the barque. We had not yet seen this good man since our return. He congratulated us again upon our having escaped, at so cheap a rate, out of the hands of BARAM cacheff. We asked him whether he really thought, that they had a design of murdering us there. "I don't believe, *says he*, that they would have come to that extremity, if they could have taken away all that you had without it; but as they saw you determined to defend yourselves, and were fearful, on another side, that if any one of you escaped, he might carry complaints of them, their first design was to endeavour to take you by surprise and to dispatch you. Luckily they could not agree together on the manner they should undertake it, for they were not willing to expose themselves, inasmuch as they saw that you were not people that would give up a thing easily. There happened, *continued he*, another circumstance, which contributed greatly to your being permitted to depart. This was, the report of your riches having been spread abroad, there came every day, from divers places, persons who pretended to have a share in the spoil. BARAM was then sensible, that if he shared the plunder with so many people, he ran a risk of having much less than if he dealt with you alone. His private interest determined him therefore to draw out of you the most that he could, and to send you away in the manner he did." We asked him also, if he had never spoke of us to BARAM cacheff. "I did not fail to do it, *replied he*; I never saw him without representing to him the mischief that he would do himself by treating you ill. The effendi, *added he*, joined likewise in these representations, but the tyrant loaded us both with abuses, and threatned to treat us as he did you. I once named to him my brother. BARAM made a jest of his recommendation; and yet the scoundrel has had the impudence to write to him,

that

that out of respect to him he had shewn you all the civility imaginable, and done you all the services that were in his power." The good old man displayed to us also an infinite number of circumstances, which we were ignorant of, and enlarged much on the cruelty of BARAM; which we more easily believed, than when he had mentioned it to us before. This brother of the aga, however, had not been of any great service to us in our voyage. He was much more timorous than we; and he was of too phlegmatic a temper to bestir himself as is requisite on so delicate an occasion. I imagine however that BARAM cacheff could have wished him further. A witness of this kind must necessarily embarrass him; and he could not securely put him to death. His brother was too near a neighbour, and too powerful to be offended with impunity.

As to our part, we congratulated each other on having escaped such imminent danger; and though we had still a great number of difficulties to surmount, before we arrived at Cairo, they were nothing in comparison of the peril we had run at Derri. We did not forget to make some presents to the good man, and the reader may be assured that he was delighted with them.

THURSDAY, 16<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

TOWARDS NOON IBRAHIM aga died. His son sent to acquaint us of his death; and let us know, at the same time, that he succeeded to the government. We sent him our compliments immediately; and made him presents of divers things, which he had appeared to be desirous of. In return, he gave us in the evening a guard of three janissaries, and acquainted us, that as he could not be assured that no troubles would happen on occasion of his father's death, he had thought it proper to place us in safety. It was necessary for us to take this concern of his in good part, from which however we should have been glad to have dispensed him. We should have chose rather  
to

to have had no guard. Every thing was suspected by us: so that as long as these janissaries continued with us, two of our people kept a good watch all night by turns. No ill accident however befel us. I had been in the morning to make a tour on an eminence, from whence I perceived our barque, which they were bringing down from the port of the cataract. They employed in some places, camels to draw it by means of a cord; and in other places men performed that office. It was a very tedious work, and which made me fear, that our departure would be retarded some days.

FRIDAY 17<sup>th</sup>, SATURDAY 18<sup>th</sup>, SUNDAY, 19<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

DURING these three days there passed nothing of moment. As the new aga had sent us word not to stir abroad, for the same reason as had induced him to give us a guard, we did not go far from our abode. Our people amused themselves with shooting; and we laid in provisions for our approaching voyage.

MONDAY, 20<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

TOWARDS the evening our reys came to give us notice, that he was at length arrived with his barque; that it was fastened below the citadel; and that he hoped the next day, or at the farthest the day after, to bring it to the place where the embarkation was to be made.

TUESDAY, 21<sup>st</sup> of JANUARY.

THAT day the wind was too strong to attempt to bring the barque to the place where we were to embark. Moreover it was the Turks Easter day.

WEDNESDAY, 22<sup>d</sup> of JANUARY.

THE same reasons continued to hinder the barque from falling down the river. The same day the aga sent us a sheep and some white bread, made on occasion of the Easter festival. He presented it to us in the name of his sultana, which in the language of the country, signified, "You have forgot to make her a present, think of it, and repair your fault."

THURSDAY, 23<sup>d</sup> of JANUARY.

THE barque arrived at length in the morning at its destined place. I went to see it, and found it spacious enough. It drew no more than a foot and some inches water when empty; and it was with a flat bottom. All these sorts of barques are built of the sycamore wood, of which the chests of mummies are likewise made. This wood is extremely hard, and we may say that the barques are very strong. Yet this does not hinder a great number from being lost, as well on account of their bad structure, as through the ignorance of the pilots, who know not how to steer. I agreed with the reys on the manner in which things should be disposed in his barque for our greater conveniency.

TOWARDS the evening we sent some trinkets to madam the agass, who sent us word that she was very well satisfied with them. But her husband complained to the Jew, that we were too close-fisted with regard to him; and added, that it was but reasonable that we should part with something more in his favour. The Jew answered, that we had already given so much, and that so much had been taken from us, that he did not know whether there remained enough for our voyage to Cairo. The aga let him know that he was not to be put off with that answer. He sent us word, however, that the next day he would send us some beasts of carriage to convey us to the barque.

OUR Jew valet intreated us to permit him to take aboard a parcel of dates, by which he should make a profit in selling them at Cairo. We had a right to dispose of the whole barque, so that we were very willing to procure him this small advantage. We advanced him likewise a dozen piasters for making the purchase. We did not then know the consequence of the thing; if we had, we should have taken care not to grant him the permission he asked. We should



have rather made up the advantage to him in some other way.

FRIDAY, 24<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

THE camels arrived in the morning, together with the asses, that were to be laden with our baggage. But the reys made a difficulty of going off, under pretence that he had not received the ten sevillans, which had been remitted to the aga to give them to him. It was easy to judge, that the aga had a mind to keep them for his brokage. We thought it not proper to interfere in this affair. We contented ourselves with sending the Jew, to represent the complaints of the reys; the aga sent for the reys; he put into his hands the ten sevillans in presence of the Jew; and obliged him to declare he had received them from us. This procedure was according to order; but the aga was too greedy to give them up so easily. No sooner had the reys acknowledged the receipt of this money, than the aga ordered him to return it to him. He afterwards sent for a cadis, to draw up a deed, in which the poor reys was obliged to subscribe, that he had received the ten sevillans. One cannot conceive in what manner these wretches are flayed by their superiors, who draw from them all they can; so that it is not surprizing that they should be desirous of squeezing, in their turn, from all those who have any thing to give.

We did not go aboard till the afternoon; and we had not yet embarked all our baggage, when there arose a dispute between the drivers of the camels, and those that conducted the asses. At first it was nothing but words, abusive language succeeded, and at last they came in good earnest to blows. They beat each other with bludgeons, which they commonly carry. The people that ran up immediately in crouds, interested themselves in the affair; and in a thrice there were four or five hundred men engaged in the fray.

The



The combat was furious. Several were knocked down by the blows they received ; and some appeared to be half dead. For our part, at the beginning of the quarrel we retired to our barque, where we took care to keep our arms in readiness, in case the storm should approach too near us.

In the mean time the aga, being informed of this tumult, sent a dozen janissaries to appease it. Their presence struck no awe. They were obliged to play off a long time their sticks ; and it was a full half hour before they were able to separate the combatants. There was only a boy that lay stretched upon the place. He was grievously wounded in the loins by a knife. The mother of this poor wretch immediately ran up to him as soon as the janissaries were retired. She was attended by a dozen other women, all shrieking in a horrible manner, and to compleat the ceremony, they had scratched their faces. The mother particularly turned herself, every now and then, towards our barque, giving us a thousand curses, threatening and swearing she would not quit the place till she had seen our blood run, to revenge that which her son had shed.

We did not fear much the threatnings of these women ; we were only apprehensive that their cries would assemble the populace again, with whom we were not desirous of engaging in a quarrel. We gave notice of it therefore to the aga, who sent immediately two janissaries, that were ordered to drive away these women. They defended themselves at first as if they had been mad. It was necessary to have recourse to the stick. Their courage then gave way to the smart of the blows that they received. At last they took to flight, and we continued quiet. One of the janissaries, however, continued with us, according to the orders he had received, to serve us as a guard.

EVER since the death of the old aga, we had not yet seen the new one. The law required him not to go out of his house till after a certain time. He was

very willing, however, to infringe this law in our favour, or, to speak more properly, in favour of his own interest. He came on board at midnight, accompanied by one single person, who carried a long pike, the mark of his dignity. I was not yet gone to bed. I went to receive him; I introduced him to our tent; and after having taken some coffee, he immediately began to let me know the subject of his visit, by informing me, that it was very proper that we should make him some further present. We answered, that we were not ignorant that we were in his debt, for the hire of the house where he had lodged us, and that he might depend upon it that, before we departed, we would take care to make him satisfaction for it. When he saw that our intention corresponded so well with his views, he changed the discourse, and entreated us to take the trouble of carrying some letters that he was writing to the great men at Cairo, and in which he begged to be confirmed in his post, without being obliged to go in person to solicit this confirmation. After some hours conversation, he quitted us, wishing us a good voyage, and promising us to give orders for our departure the Sunday following.

SATURDAY, 25<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

THE place where our barque had been fastened, was at a quarter of a league distance from the citadel of Essuaen. We had before us a plain of about seven hundred and eighty feet; it was a ground that the sinking of the waters of the Nile had left dry. This kept us at a distance from the continent, whither we could not go without removing too far from the barque; so that we employed our time in shooting of ravens and Pharoah's hens, because our neighbourhood furnished us with no other game.

TOWARDS noon we had a sight, that a little disconcerted us. About twenty persons on horse-back appeared desirous of approaching our barque. The  
squadron

squadron was preceded by a long pike; which is a mark that there was in the troop an Arab schech. When we saw that they advanced in reality towards us, we took alarm in good earnest, and thought of putting ourselves in a posture of defence. When they were within ten paces of the barque, they dismounted, fastened their horses, fixed the pike, and advanced pretty close to us with pistols at their waist belts. We then sent an interpreter to intreat them not to advance any farther, without telling us what they wanted. Upon this summons the schech stopped and ordered the others to do so too. He himself was spokesman, and told us that we need not be suspicious of them; that he was come only to see us, because he had heard it reported, that we had been at Derri; and that he was desirous of being acquainted with us.

As we were persuaded that he had no bad intention, we waited upon him, and invited him to enter into our barque, on condition that he would come alone. He thanked us civilly for our offer. We then ordered coffee and sherbet to be served him; he took it; and after having asked us several questions concerning our voyage, he very politely took leave of us, mounted his horse, and went away in the same manner as he came.

THE reys requested that day, that we would advance him fifteen sevillans. He represented to us, that he had not received the least part of the ten former that we had advanced; that he had absolute want of money to lay in provisions, and to give something to his crew. It was our interest to assist him in the best manner we could, in order that he might hasten the more our departure. We entered therefore into his concerns, and gave him what he requested. But we did not know that it was a trap which the rascal had laid us. The Jew and he had a good understanding together. They both employed their money in purchasing dates, that they put aboard the barque,

and which exposed us afterwards to a great number of inconveniencies.

In the evening the reys, who had brought us from Cairo to Essuaen, came to see us, and made us a present of an excellent sheep, together with a basket of Easter bread. We made him a gratuity, as we ought, for his generosity. He was a janissary, and lived in tolerable good circumstances. I ought, however, to mention, that though all the *militia* of this canton take on them the name of janissaries, they are only affafs.

SUNDAY, 26<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY,

Our reys and the Jew finished that day the lading of the barque with their dates; and the reys, who had carried us to Derri and brought us back from thence, came aboard with a demand upon us. He required nothing less than a suit of cloaths, together with ten piasters. We referred him to the cadis, who determined that he had no such demands upon us. This sentence cost us a piafter, including in it the expence of the contract drawn up for the reys, who was to conduct us to Cairo.

TOWARDS the evening we sent, as a present, to the aga, a packet of rice, spices, and some other baubles, with four sevillans for the hire of his house. He appeared contented with the first article; but made a difficulty of accepting the money, because he thought the sum too small. The interpreter, however, having represented to him, that it was not his interest to displease us, since it might induce us to neglect his affairs, or even to do him disservice at Cairo, he accepted the money, and gave orders for our departure. He sent us, at the same time, the letters that he gave us the charge of; and we immediately got ready for departing in the night, as the aga had advised us, for our greater security.

MONDAY,

MONDAY, 27<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

At one o'clock in the morning we began to row. The wind, which was northerly, blew pretty strong, and kept us back; but towards noon it fell intirely; which was the reason that without stopping any where we arrived about seven in the evening at

GIESIRET ELL MANSORIA. The cacheff of Esna was encamped in this place. He made us come ashore. I waited immediately upon him, with some small presents. He received me very civilly, and ordered coffee to be served me. But he refused absolutely what I offered him as a present, and let me know by the interpreter, that, in the places from whence we were come, we had given things of greater value, and that we ought not to shew less respect for him. We disputed a good deal on both sides; but I held out resolutely; and the whole affair terminated in letting us know that he desired something more.

In order to obtain what he wanted, he offered to get us accompanied by a dozen of his soldiers. "The Arabs, says he, render the passage dangerous; and very lately they have killed an effendi that was coming from Girge." I thanked him for his good will, and excused myself from accepting his offers, under pretence that we were too much straitened to receive any one into our barque. "But however, added I, we think ourselves strong enough to resist those that should dare to attack us." I begged him only to let us depart that evening; but he would not consent to it. He promised, however, to dismiss us the next day.

THIS cacheff was a Turk by birth. He had attached himself to the fortune of a bey, who was a rebel to the government of Cairo; and he had himself killed another bey, that was sent against his master. This last having at length submitted, and having drowned himself in the Nile, he retired among some Arab princes, who gave him their protection, and made him afterwards their cacheff at Esnay.

TUESDAY, 28<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

THE cacheff sent us early in the morning a present of two very fat sheep, together with a great basket of bread. It was necessary to requite this civility by another present more considerable. He received therefore a piece of red cloth for a dress, some soap, spices, coffee, and other trifles. We gave him content this day; and he ordered the reys to depart in two hours. He did not cease in this interval to send us divers messages, to demand sometimes one thing, sometimes another; and as he begged indeed nothing but trifles, we refused him nothing.

IN a conversation, he shewed to the father, who was our interpreter, a piece of marcasite, and asked him what was the method of getting silver from it. The good father drew himself out of the scrape in the best manner he could. This cacheff being persuaded, as all the people of the country in general are, that the Franks are ignorant of nothing, commissioned the father to ask our people, whether any one amongst them was willing to continue with him, in order to make an advantage of the silver mines, which he said were very abundant in the mountains. He promised to enrich the person that should stay; but no one was tempted to accept his proposal.

WE were ready to depart, when a new message came to us, with orders to tell us, that the cacheff begged of us something, that would enable him to be more an hero amongst the women in his seraglio. We could not forbear bursting into a laugh at this request. To make a return, however, in some measure to his confidence in us, we sent him two bottles of Hungary water; and advised him to take a good dose of it at night and morning.

WE immediately departed, and we found ourselves in a little time opposite the ancient temple of

KOMOMBU. I landed to go and see it. In my way



I remarked that a great quantity of Pharaoh's hens followed the little camp of the cacheff. There were some white, with black wings, and others were intirely black. They fed upon what was thrown them; and they passed between the tents like tame birds.

THERE was for a long time a great calm; inso-much that our rowers, assisted by the current, brought us on a great way.

A little after noon we were already arrived at

Tschibal Esselsele: that is to say, the chained-mountain. Our reys, who had agreed to land us wherever we should have a mind, made a great deal of difficulty of stopping. It was in vain for him to refuse; I landed, and began immediately to draw and to measure all that I found remarkable. I had scarce begun before the Jew came to give me notice, that I must retire to the barque, because they had perceived a troop of Arabs approaching. I had been so often a dupe to such reports, and had so much difficulty to get myself put a-shore in the places where my curiosity called me, that I sent back the man, without attending to what he said, and continued on my work.

A LITTLE time after another of our people was dispatched, to tell me that the reys was untying the barque in order to go. I took no more notice of this second advice than of the former. I had begun, and I was willing to finish. I kept the man with me, by letting him know that the barque could not go far, and that we would join it again very soon. By this means I worked quietly the whole afternoon quite to the evening. I visited the neighbouring grottos; and I did not leave the place, till the darkneſs of the night, which began to come on, did not permit me any longer to see the objects.

I HAD however a good way to travel, before I should be able to join the barque; and I did not get to it without difficulty. At my arrival every one received me with laughing at the panic terror which had seized them;

them; for they informed me, that the imagined troop of Arabs consisted only of a score of camels followed by their drivers. I put on however a somewhat angry look, and had reason to be so. I remarked, to my great concern, that the former perils had made too great an impression on the minds of some of our people. The Jew, who had his dates in the barque, was more fearful than ever; and the reys, who was an arrant knave, had been guilty of so many villainies all along the Nile, that he trembled for fear whenever he heard a leaf fall. He was however the same reys that had conducted father SICARD, when he made his voyage into the Upper Egypt. This reys knew a great number of circumstances concerning this father; but I was surprised, that, having accompanied father SICARD every where, he was no better a guide. He had shewed us in the morning what villainy he was capable of committing.

BEFORE we arrived at the chained-mountain we had passed before a place, where a young boy was keeping some sheep. The reys gave him abusive language, and the child answered him in the same tone. Provoked at the answer, the reys seizes a gun loaded with three balls, which lay always in that condition without the tent; and he fires upon the flock of sheep. We thought that he had taken up this weapon only to terrify the child; but when he had fired it, we were very much offended. Luckily he killed nothing. What surprised me much was that the child, instead of running away, continued firm upon the spot, and began to throw out a thousand abusive words against our scoundrel, who, to revenge himself of him, talked of nothing less than putting to shore and seizing all the sheep. His crew were no honefter than himself. They were real cormorants. They stole victuals out of the pot that was boiling on the fire.

WE continued going down the river with oars till midnight, when we found ourselves before

BUEBBE.

WED-

WEDNESDAY, 29<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

THE calm continued the whole night, and even the whole following day; which made us advance on a great way. We saw from time to time divers crocodiles; and we fired at them, without being able to kill any.

IN the afternoon we perceived upon the summit of a mountain an edifice, which appeared to be of Saracen structure; and at a quarter of a league from thence, I remarked some ruins in a valley behind the mountain. There was no possibility of going thither. I could not have arrived there but in the night; besides that the reys opposed it; and moreover the weather was so favourable for going down the river, that every one thought it best to make the utmost advantage of it.

I THEN made a new agreement with the reys, that he should stop at Luxxor and at Carnac; and I protested to him, that if he failed to do it, he should lose all that he was to receive still for our passage. He swore to me by his beard, that he would; and to be more secure of my point, I promised to give him a piafter, when I returned from those two places.

TOWARDS midnight we arrived before

TURRAEG. We there found seven or eight barques, that were on shore, and hallowed to each other, which is the ordinary method of the country. There were in this place two *schorbatschies* of Effuaen, who were to sign the letters that the aga had written to the grandoes of Cairo. We sent the letters to them by the reys, and as soon they had signed them we put off from shore.

THURSDAY, 30<sup>th</sup> of JANUARY.

WE had continued the whole night to advance a good way, by means of the calm. It was the same  
 † in

in the morning. But towards noon there arose a very strong north wind; and our rudder broke. We were obliged to stay in the middle of the Nile, greatly perplexed between the wind and the current, which opposed each other, and occasioned so great a rolling of the vessel, that some of our people were sick. We plied, however, our oars so well, that at length we approached the land at

DUEEG. Whilst we were here, there passed by a little barque, in which were three Franks. We returned almost immediately to the oar; insomuch that we arrived, towards noon, opposite to

ESNAY. The first thing we thought of was to get our rudder repaired. We asked afterwards concerning the Franks that we had met; but no one could say any thing positive about them. The only circumstance that we could learn was, that they had been to see the ancient temple, where they wanted to break a stone, but that the people opposed it. I knew already, by my own experience, that it was not a thing to be attempted. I regretted that I had not been able to speak to those gentlemen\*. I should have informed them of my adventures, from which they might have been able to reap some advantage. But they passed so swift that we lost their barque out of sight in a moment.

\* I have been informed, that one of those gentlemen was the right reverend and learned doctor *POCOCKE*, the present bishop of *Ossory*, who has obliged the world with his travels into Egypt and the East, from which we have received so much assistance in our additional observations.

DR. *POCOCKE* however gives a different account concerning the stone they wanted: "On the nineteenth (*I presume the bishop here reckons by the old style*) we came to *Esne* on the west, a considerable town for these parts; we went ashore, and staid about an hour, and the men wanting a large stone for ballast, the people knowing we were Europeans, would not let them take it into the boat, saying, that the Franks, if they took away that stone, would by their magic art draw away their hidden treasures." *Observations on Egypt*, pag. 111.

THE wind continued still northerly, and was very strong; so that we spent the night before Efnay.

FRIDAY, 31<sup>st</sup> of JANUARY.

I WENT early in the morning, to observe again the ancient temple. I examined my *design*, where I found nothing to alter. I could have wished only to have added something to it; but I found myself in an instant surrounded by such a croud of people, that I was obliged to be content with what I had already, and to think of a retreat; for I must say, that the people of Efnay are the wickedest mob that I have ever met with. Our reys was of this place, and he did not belie his birth.

THERE must be in the neighbourhood of Efnay another ancient temple. I enquired about it, but no one could give me any account of it<sup>b</sup>. Our reys, who

---

<sup>b</sup> *The same learned author has given the following account of both these temples:* "The next day we went to an ancient temple. As I saw the figure of a women sitting, cut in several parts of the wall, I conjectured that this might be the temple of PALLAS at Lato-polis, where both that deity and the fish LATUS were worshiped. The narrow passage on each side seems to have been for the same design as in some other temples, some way or other to impose on the people; and the little cell might be to keep some sacred animal in; it is about three feet above the floor of the rooms, and near eight feet high. The capitals of the pillars in this temple are something like the Corinthian, but with a very flat relief, some of them being but little higher than if marked out with lines. There are several sorts of capitals. Within the temple are three stories of hieroglyphics of men about three feet high, and at one end the lowest figures are as big as the life; one of them I observed had the head of the IBIS. The cieling is curiously adorned with all sorts of animals, and painted in very beautiful colours; among them I observed a figure sitting on what appeared like a boat, with a circle round him, and two instruments at one end. I observed also a ram with a cross on his head, somewhat like the handle of a sword, and across his neck was something resembling wings. Among the animals I observed the beetle, and a sort of scorpion; all the hieroglyphics are very well cut; but some of them are defaced. This temple appears to have been used as a church, and I saw some Coptic inscriptions on the wall in black letters, and they had

had formerly conducted father SICARD, either knew nothing of it, or at least he was not willing to give me this satisfaction. He told me only, that this father had lost all his papers, in going to the Copti convent; but that he got them restored to him. He added, that the same father had been very ill treated in this convent.

OUR rudder being repaired, we quitted Esnay, though the north wind continued, and was still very

---

told me that there had been a convent there, so that the temple seems to have been turned to that use. On the north side of the town of Esne there is another temple. The pillars are almost all different, but something approaching the Corinthian order, and shaped like the capital mentioned before in the other temple. This whole building is very richly carved with hieroglyphics. I saw one man with the goat's head; and a man with a crocodile's head is cut over the middle door that is opposite to the entrance. There are several others in the walls with crocodiles heads likewise, and also some crocodiles; which makes me think that this was the city of Crocodiles, where that beast was worshiped, as STRABO observes, *lib. xvii. pag. 817.* though he mentions the city of Crocodiles before Aphroditopolis and Latopolis, whereas if the city of Crocodiles were put last instead of first, it would agree with the situation I give these places. The old city seems to have been to the north; at the end of the town I saw the remains of an ancient quay, of rustic stone-work, with stairs down to the river. A mile to the south of Esne is the monastery of saint HELEN, by whom they say it was founded; it has been more commonly called the convent of the martyrs, and it was a place of great devotion. It appears to have been a great burial ground, the spot where they buried the dead not being less than a mile round. Many of the tombs are magnificent, being a dome on four arches, with a little cupola on the top, something resembling the holy sepulchre, and built of brick. Some of them have a cross, others the eagle cut on them, and a short Greek inscription. On many of them, as well as about the convent, these words are cut: ΕΙς Θεός ὁ βασιλεύς. It is a very indifferent convent, and the church is mean. There are only two monks in it, who cannot marry; but their relations, both women and children, live in the convent. This is the last church in Egypt. I made them a present of some incense, knives, and scissars; and they entertained us with what they could provide. To the north of the convent there is some wood and cotton shrubs of the perennial kind, on the east side also I saw the fena." *Observations on Egypt, pag. 111.*

strong.



strong. It was eight o'clock in the evening when we departed; and at midnight we were not yet out of sight of Efnay. We then cast anchor in the middle of the Nile, at about half a league from Efnay.

SATURDAY, 1<sup>st</sup> of FEBRUARY.

AT break of day we weighed anchor, to endeavour to proceed. But the north wind, which became still more violent, obliged us very soon to put to shore. We cast anchor at

ELL ARDIE, a place situated on the western shore of the Nile, between Efnay and Afsuun. We continued there the whole day. Our people went a shooting, and killed a dozen geese of the Nile. In the evening we were willing to try if we could not advance forwards. The wind was still very strong. We found ourselves obliged to fasten our boat again near a little island, that the sinking of the Nile had formed.

SUNDAY, 2<sup>d</sup> of FEBRUARY.

THE north wind still continued, and was very strong. We attempted, however, to return to rowing, but all our efforts were in vain. We could only cross the Nile, and reach the other border of the river opposite to

ASSFUUN. We had before us a plain, which was not much cultivated. It extended in breadth the space of a quarter of a league: After which the mountains rose again. Towards the evening, the wind having entirely fallen, we unfastened the barque, and set out upon our voyage. We advanced to

SCHAGAB. Night approached, and we might very well have continued to sail down the Nile, but we chose rather to stop, in order to get in the next day a provision of wood, of which we had great scarcity: The village of Schagab is situated at a gun-shot distance from the eastern shore of the river, and at the like

like distance from the mountains. There are in the neighbourhood some palm trees, with a grove of trees of different kinds. The soil is not of a great extent, but is very well cultivated.

MONDAY, 3<sup>d</sup> of FEBRUARY.

IN the morning were brought on board three large sacks of fenna of Mecca. We had them thrown out as soon as we perceived them. The barque was already too much loaded.

A LITTLE time after we began to row we saw several crocodiles. In the afternoon we passed before the antiquities of Arment<sup>c</sup>: I was willing to go ashore there; but the reys represented to me, that if I went thither, it would be impossible for him to satisfy me with regard to Luxxor, where we were to arrive in the evening. I did not insist any longer on it, and we continued our voyage, because I knew likewise that we were not far distant from

MAGDSCHERGARONA. This passage is difficult, and impracticable if the least wind blows against you. The reason of it is, that the Nile here has no current. When we were got thither, the reys took care to remark it to me, in order to excuse better his refusal of letting me land at Arment.

THE Nile forms here a great island, after which we met with another island. At length we arrived near

LUXXOR. One cannot land there in this season, because the water is too low. We landed therefore at a quarter of a league distance from the village, beyond which are the principal antiquities. I proposed to the reys to go thither in the night; he approved my design, and offered to accompany me thither. Some of our people were willing likewise to be of the party.

WE set out at midnight, and arrived at these anti-

---

<sup>c</sup> The translator imagines there is some mistake in the original, by putting Arment for some other place.

quities,

quities, without meeting a soul living upon the way. The Arabs are so mistrustful one of another, that they retire at sun set, and do not appear again till after it is risen.

TUESDAY, 4<sup>th</sup> OF FEBRUARY.

I HAD all the time that was necessary for me to measure these fine antiquities ; and I had even finished before it was day. I was willing to attempt likewise the measuring the antiquities that are in the village ; but I had no sooner approached them, than the barking of dogs obliged me to retire. We determined, therefore, on going back to the barque.

IN the morning I returned to Luxxor. Our people amused the Arabs, who came in crouds to purchase provisions ; and they engaged them long enough for my being able to employ the best part of the morning in taking the measures that I wanted.

AT eleven o'clock we returned to the barque, and immediately we put off from shore, with a design of going to

CARNAC. As the Nile had, on that side, but very little depth of water, it was necessary for us to go more than two leagues, before we could find a place for landing at. The weather was calm, and the current pretty strong ; so that we went that way in less than two hours.

I DID not delay to go on shore, in order to see the ruins, though I was extremely fatigued with the toil I had taken in the night. Our reys, who perceived it, offered to procure me a horse, and I willingly accepted his offer. He brought me one, that appeared to be no great racer. His looks were deceitful. No sooner was I mounted, than he went like lightning, and ran a great distance, before it was possible for me to stop him. The bridle consisted of nothing but a piece of packthread ; and the saddle, which was of wood, was not well girt : Add to this, that I am not

one of the best riders in the world. Fown that I was in a very disagreeable situation. I kept myself, however, firm, by clinching my knees, which were quite flayed. At length I had the good fortune to meet with a palm tree. I made my horse run full butt against this tree. He was stunned with it; and stopped short till our people came to my assistance. I then immediately dismounted; and went on foot to the place that was the object of my curiosity.

I THERE drew in haste, all that appeared to me to deserve the trouble. I made dispatch, because we had been perceived, and I was very much afraid that they would come very soon in crouds about us. I was not deceived in my apprehensions. In going, we had met with no more than two or three persons amongst the ruins; but at our return, we found the whole road beset with clusters of Arabs, who all asked for the *backfisch*. I let them know, that I never carried any thing about me; but that they might follow me to the barque, where I would give them something. Some of them followed us, and others retired in quiet. Upon our arrival at the barque, we found there an Arab schech; not one of those that live like princes, but a schech like him that I had met with on the other side of the Nile, when I went to visit the ruins of Thebes. He asked us at first for a duty; which he pretended to be owing to him, because we were landed in his territories. We took no notice of him. He then confined himself to entreating us to make him a present of a little gun-powder, and some balls. We gave them to him, without imagining the consequence; for the rascal had no sooner got what he wanted, than he loaded his gun, cocked it, and demanded insolently that we should pay him his due. We knew that he had no such demand; so that we seized our fire-arms, and presenting them to him with courage, we threatened to lay him dead upon the spot, if he did not instantly put down his gun.

THE

THE order was too urgent, and too well supported for his refusing to obey. He uncocked his gun without the least difficulty, and begged us to be assured that he had no ill intention against us. "I only meant it, says he, against the reys." We gave him to understand, that whoever offended our reys offended us. He did not speak a word after that, seeing well that he could get nothing from us.

THE Arabs, who had followed us to the barque, began then to bestir themselves. They demanded the *backfisch*, which had been promised them. Our answer was short. We shewed them our arms, and let them know, that what we had to give was within the barque. They appeared confounded, and did not insist any longer. They said, however, that if they had known it before, they should have found the way to prevent us from reaching the barque, till we had satisfied them.

IN being run away with by the horse, I had lost the papers that contained the measures and *designs* of the antiquities of Luxxor. I did not take notice of it at the time; I perceived it at Carnac, and sent immediately the valet to seek for them, with orders to offer the *backfisch* to any one that should have found them. I was still at the ruins when he came back to tell me, that he had not been able to get any tidings of them. I was very much concerned at it; and saw no possibility of repairing this loss.

SOME one, however, had found these papers, which the schech had seized, in order to make his advantage of them. He had taken care not to shew them at first. He was persuaded, that we should think ourselves at any time very happy in being able to purchase them again; and he was willing to try beforehand other methods, to get something from us. When he saw that he could obtain nothing, he at last shewed the papers, and offered to restore them for twenty sevillans. I gave him for answer that I ad-

vised him to keep them; that I had no longer any need of them; and that I had found the paper which I was the most solicitous about. I forbid the valet to talk to him any more about it, and ordered the reys to unfasten the barque, and to put off from shore.

THEY immediately began to execute this order; but the schech, who did not find his account in it, fell, with some Arabs, upon the sailer, who was untying the cord, and hindered him from performing his office. We ran to his assistance. We applied, on the right hand and the left, such rough blows with the butt ends of our guns, that the schech and the Arabs were obliged to quit their hold. The barque got after that into the current, and we went on as if we were no longer anxious about the papers.

THIS was not what the schech wanted. He continued to follow us along the shore till the night began to come on. He then cried out to us to put to land; that he would return us our papers, and would be content with what we should give him. We put to shore indeed; but we took the precaution of landing no one but the Jew; and we kept the barque as near to shore as it was possible. The papers were restored for a piafter. I cannot express the joy I had at recovering them. We took the Jew aboard again, and advanced on by the oar, till about nine in the evening, when we were obliged to put to shore between

GAMOLA and SOES. The wind had risen so violent, that the barque could not stand against it.

#### WEDNESDAY, 5<sup>th</sup> of FEBRUARY.

AT sun rising we resumed the oar, and we arrived by eleven o'clock at

ELL HELLA. This village is opposite Negadi. We there stopped because the wind was become too strong. We were no more than a league distant from

GIFRA JOES. There are in this place some antiquities, which I should have been glad to go and see; but



but my journey the preceding day hindered me from satisfying myself.

TOWARDS noon, at the time we were all retired into the tent, excepting some that had gone on shore, a young boy, the son of the reys, and already almost as great a rascal as his father, took it into his head to play with our guard gun. He managed it in such a manner, as at last to discharge it. The ball made a great hole in the barque, set fire to our tent, and had like to have killed one of our people; but by the greatest good fortune in the world, the croud, that runs to you whenever they see a barque arrive, had retired; otherwise certainly some one must have been killed or grievously wounded.

IN the afternoon, the wind having fallen considerably, we set out upon our voyage; and in the evening we landed a little to the north of

SCHECHIE.

THURSDAY, 6<sup>th</sup> of FEBRUARY.

AS soon as it was day the reys awakened all his people, and gave them notice that they must immediately set out. The pilot was not of this opinion. They quarreled. A great dispute arose betwixt them, and the affair would have gone further, if we had not approached to put an end to the fray. They betook themselves to the oar till noon, when there arose a high wind, which obliged us to stop at

EBBENUUT. The reys asked us at this place the permission of turning off his pilot. We easily consented to it, because we knew that he was not worth much. This permission being obtained, they went before the cadis of Ebbenuut. The pilot lost his cause, and the half of his wages. He came afterwards on board to take his cloaths, and at length went away.

WE continued all the day in this place; for the wind was to the north, and too strong to be able to advance.

FRIDAY, 7<sup>th</sup> of FEBRUARY.

THE wind continued still in the same quarter, and blowed with the same violence; moreover our barque had sprung a leak in the prow, and took in a great deal of water. There needed not so much to retain us here. The reys got a carpenter to come, who towards the evening had finished remedying the mischief. The wind being then a little fallen, we found ourselves in a condition to advance on till nine o'clock in the evening, when we put to shore on the western border of the Nile, upon the territory of

DANDERA. I talked of landing to see an antiquity that is there. No one was of my sentiments. The reys, as usual, was averse to it. In vain did I solicit him, and even offer him money; there was no possibility of persuading him. He had probably been guilty of some villainous prank there, which hindered him from stopping. Our people likewise made a thousand objections. They were afraid that the barque should be detained there, to be made pay some custom-house duty. They entreated me not to go on shore. In fine, no one was in a humor to accompany me. There was not so much as the valet, who excused himself from it, under pretence that he did not know the road. We should easily have found it, if any one had been inclined to facilitate the landing.

SATURDAY, 8<sup>th</sup> of FEBRUARY.

A LITTLE after midnight they began to ply the oars. I was asleep. They had taken care not to give me notice of their departure; so that in the morning, at my awaking, I found myself so far distant from Dandera, that there were no longer any hopes of seeing an antiquity, which however, next to Thebes, holds the first place in my opinion, without excepting those on the side of the cataract. I was really mortified at  
it;

it; and I could not forbear to let my company perceive the displeasure they had given me; but every one excused himself in the best manner that he could<sup>d</sup>.

TOWARDS noon there was a great deal of wind. However, as the current was very strong, we did not put to shore till towards the evening near to

REIESIE.

---

<sup>d</sup> DR. ПОКОЕК has given an account of the ruins at Dandera.

“ IN this city they were great worshippers of ISIS and VENUS; to each of which deities they had a temple. From the many heaps of ruins that are seen, the city appears to have been large; they extend about a mile from east to west, and half a mile from north to south. The town has been much frequented since the time of its ancient splendor, for the buildings are almost filled up with ashes and rubbish; they seem to have lived much in and about the temples, and to have built there little houses of unburnt brick near them; particularly there are several on the top of the great temple, probably erected there for coolness by night during the summer season; but as this temple is but two hundred feet long, and a hundred and forty five broad, any one may judge with what reason it has been said, that the temple is so large that a city was built on it. The chief remains of buildings are very near to one another. There are two gates and four temples. The grand temple is entire, except that some apartments which seem to have been at top are destroyed, and six or seven of the rooms below are intirely filled up. There are ten flights of stairs to the top; at the sixth is a room, and near the top are rooms from which there are six steps to the top of the temple. The particular large capital of the pillars, has over it a square stone, with a compartment of reliefs on each side, in the best taste and workmanship of any I have seen in Egypt, and are exquisitely fine, insomuch that I conclude they must have been executed by one of the best Greek sculptors. At the ends of the grand room are four stories of hieroglyphics, in seven compartments, each having two or three figures of men in it, some of which are defaced. There are also four stories of hieroglyphics on the outside; and probably there were five both within and without, before the ground was raised. Colossal figures are cut on the outside of the south end, five of them together, and two, more beautiful than the others, at each corner. Round the top of this building there are several spouts, with an ornament over them of the head and shoulders of the sphynx: this, no doubt, was the temple of ISIS, as may be concluded from the capitals, which are shaped like the head of that deity. The temple of VENUS, we may suppose, has been destroyed.” *Observations on Egypt*, pag. 86.

SUNDAY, 9<sup>th</sup> of FEBRUARY.

AS soon as the day began to appear, we put off from shore. The wind very soon began to blow strong; but we did not stop however till towards noon, in the neighbourhood of

HAV. There is near this city an heap of stones, the remains of an antique edifice entirely ruined. I landed to see the city, where I remarked, that they had employed for the building of the houses pieces of columns and other stones taken out of some ancient edifices. I set out for visiting the ruins I had perceived; but it was impossible for me to arrive thither. The wind was so strong, and raised so much sand, that there was no possibility of keeping one's eyes open. I was absolutely obliged to return back again.

A CALM having returned towards the evening, we plied again the oar; and though we had afterwards a very dark night, we continued to advance so far, that about eleven o'clock at night we had already passed

BAGJURA. At a small distance below this place we struck upon a bank of sand, where we continued till the next day.

MONDAY, 10<sup>th</sup> of FEBRUARY.

OUR people laboured hard to get off the barque. They went all into the water in order to lift it up. The reys assisted them with a long perch, but it broke, and he fell into the water. We drew him out; and we began to make other efforts, which at last put the barque afloat.

As the crew had extremely fatigued themselves in this work, we made to shore to let them rest. After some time we applied again to the oar, and we arrived at

SAUAGGEL. In this place the reys took in a provision of brambles for burning. The soil that is cultivated in the neighbourhood of this village has no more than

than fifty paces in breadth. The mountains begin beyond, and we perceive there a great number of grottos and divers quarries.

In order to continue our voyage, we took our course on the eastern side of the Nile; and we had a great deal of difficulty to advance forwards. The bed of the river had changed this year, and had thrown banks of sand across the passage. We went over three of them with much labour, and we found still some others before us. The reys was obliged to go, from time to time, on shore, to be informed of the depths of water. They gave him hopes, that, after he should be a little further advanced, there would be water enough. We took courage upon that, and sometimes we made use of the oar, and sometimes had recourse to the cord, according as it was requisite. By this means we got free from the banks, and made so much dispatch, that towards the evening we had reached to

SAMHUUD. We cast anchor in the middle of the Nile, waiting for the day break.

TUESDAY, 11<sup>th</sup> of FEBRUARY.

IN the morning at six o'clock we returned to the oar, and went on at a good rate, because we had not much wind. We were already, by nine o'clock, near to

BELLIENE. We were obliged in this place to go along the eastern shore of the Nile, because the other side had scarce any water this year. When we were got a little further, the wind became strong and obliged us to put to land. We there found a barque that was unloading, because it could not pass the banks of sand that crossed the river.

In the afternoon the wind having fallen, we resumed our voyage and advanced so far that we passed beyond

BARDIS. We found ourselves then so perplexed with banks of sand, that we knew not what method to take in order to get out of them. Two large barques  
loaded

loaded with senna, had unloaded there already a week before, without being able to put off. We were afraid of finding ourselves under a necessity of doing the same. But we met with a little canoe, and promised the man that was in it to pay him well if he could find out any pass to extricate us from this labyrinth. He succeeded in it; and when he had drawn us out of the perplexity, we continued our voyage in such a manner that about nine of o'clock in the evening we arrived at

GIRGE, or TSCHIRCHE.

WEDNESDAY, 12<sup>th</sup> of FEBRUARY.

IN the morning we landed, in order to get in some provisions. One of the fathers of the hospital begged of us a passage to go to Cairo, and we granted it to him with pleasure. The bey of Tschirche was not yet returned; but the prince of Achmiin was in this city, and was to go to Bardis in order to hold a general assembly of all the Arab schechs.

We were ready to depart, and thought that nothing could delay us. But our reys and the Jew valet had occasioned us a great deal of hindrance. Instead of declaring at the custom-house a load of thirty *ardebs*, they had declared no more than four. The custom-house officers easily perceived it upon making a visit, inasmuch that they stopped the barque, which could not be set at liberty, but by paying for those to whom the merchandise belonged. We sent for our reys, who had taken care before-hand to be out of the way. He was too well known in this place to shew himself. He had the precaution, however, to engage a pilot who came on board.

ALL the afternoon passed away in repairing the fault committed by our two dealers in dates. The director of the custom-house himself came to our barque, and after some compliments he let us know, that he

was



was very sorry to require us to open some of our coffers. "A report, *added he*, is spread through the town, that you have with you abundance of chests full of arms; and I believe that, for your security and for mine, the best way is for you to open some of them." We found his request reasonable, and did not hesitate a moment to satisfy him. We gave him the choice of the chests; he caused two of them to be opened, in presence of the custom-house officers and of the other persons that had attended him. He found there only things necessary for our voyage; and he afterwards took leave of us in a very civil manner.

He had no sooner quitted the barque than we departed. We made but little way, for we run violently a-ground; and after having put the barque afloat we made to shore on the eastern border of the Nile, at the foot of those high rocks that come quite close to the water.

THURSDAY, 13<sup>th</sup> of FEBRUARY.

As soon as the moon was up, we set sail; and at seven o'clock in the morning we arrived before

MESSCHIE. A Greek merchant came to ask us passage; but as we had not sufficient room, we refused it to him. Notwithstanding this refusal, he did not forbear to put aboard his cloaths; for he had a good understanding with our reys, who had joined us again. We were enraged at this procedure; and without further ceremony we had the baggage of this Greek taken out of the barque. He did not acquiesce, but had recourse to the caïmakan, who came on board to entreat us to take this man in. We continued resolute, refusing it, however, in the most civil manner we could. When he saw that he obtained nothing by entreaties, he began to talk high; but getting nothing neither by that, he came to threats, saying that he would play us some tricks, that would make us re-  
pent

pent the having refused him. We laughed at him. We were no longer at Derri. We knew the coast; and so little an officer was not capable of intimidating us.

At eight o'clock in the evening, the prince of Achmiin arrived in a barque, accompanied by six others. He did not stop long; he departed a little time after in the same manner as he came, that is to say, with the noise of kettle-drums that he had on board. We followed him pretty close; and we arrived a little before midnight at

ACHMIIN. We there fastened the barque, in order to take up our fathers, who had gone thither by land in the morning.

I OBSERVED an island, which the Nile had formed this year, opposite to Messchie, which is on the other side of the river. The prince of Achmiin had taken possession of it; but it was disputed him by his neighbours, the inhabitants of Uladjachchia, who pretended that it belonged to them, and there was a law-suit between them.

#### FRIDAY, 14<sup>th</sup> of FEBRUARY.

THE fathers came and joined us early in the morning. The agent of the prince, and several others, who were Roman catholick Christians, accompanied them to the barque. These latter made us divers little presents, consisting of bread, dates, and spirituous liquors drawn from the same fruit, &c. We gave them, in return, some images, Jerusalem chaplets, and other trifles that were agreeable to them.

We took leave of them, and departed, with very fine weather, which continued till five o'clock in the evening. The wind then began to rise, and became very strong. This obliged us to put to ashore at

MARAGA. The Nile had carried away half of this village. As this accident had happened in the course of the year, the reys did not know that the ruins had formed  
divers

divers banks in the Nile. When we applied to the oar, after a few hours we struck upon one of these banks. Our people attempted at first to disengage the barque, but when they saw that their efforts were in vain, they went to rest.

OPPOSITE Maraga, the mountains approach very near to the river; and we see there abundance of grottos.

SATURDAY, 15<sup>th</sup> of FEBRUARY.

AT break of day, our people threw themselves into the river, and swam to the land, in order to draw off our barque by means of a cord. They succeeded in it. We then made the best of our way, and we had very soon passed

REJEYNA. I had agreed with the reys that he should stop at

GAU SCHERKIE. I was willing to see an ancient temple which is in this place. The imprudence of our sailors balked me of the hope, with which I had flattered myself. The inhabitants of divers villages, situated along the Nile, have a nick-name, that is made use of for water language. In approaching Gau Scherkie, our rowers rallied in this manner some inhabitants of the place, whom they perceived on the border of the Nile. These piqued at the insult called to others; and in a trice there appeared on the border of the river above fifty Arabs, armed with good sticks. They invited us to land amongst them, and told us plainly, in what manner they had a design to regale us. Our rowers, who found them above their match, and who knew that the Arabs of Gau Scherkie cannot bear raillery, were unwilling to land there. Neither did I press them to do it. I had no great desire to engage in their quarrel. We passed therefore beyond it, and arrived in the night at

NECHCHEELE. We attempted almost immediately to depart. But we did not know the depth of the Nile.

Nile. It had changed its course this year. We struck at first upon some stones, and a little time<sup>a</sup> after upon some others. We got off however; and to avoid the like inconveniencies, and perhaps some worse misfortune, we cast anchor at about a quarter of a league from thence, in order to wait till day-break.

SUNDAY, 16<sup>th</sup> of FEBRUARY.

WE weighed anchor as soon as the day began to appear; we continued our voyage and passed before

CATEA. We remarked that almost half of the village had been carried away by the Nile this year. We perceived in some places the tops of palm-trees, and the roofs of houses, which appeared above the water. It seems that the Arabs do not concern themselves much about the loss of their houses; but it is not so with regard to the lands, which the river takes away from them, and bestows elsewhere. They regret them much, and this causes great law-suits, and sometimes even wars amongst the Arab princes.

AT ten o'clock in the morning, we arrived at

SIOUT. There was to be in this place a bazar, or market. We went thither; but it was yet too early; and the weather likewise was too fine to lose it. We returned therefore back, and immediately put off from shore<sup>a</sup>.

<sup>a</sup> Near this place was found a very great natural curiosity, which is mentioned in the history of the academy of sciences at Paris.

“ Mr. DODART having received from Mr. LIPPI, a licentiate of the faculty of physick, a letter dated from Siout, in the Upper Egypt, the 5th of September, 1704, and which contained a singular fact, communicated it to the company.

MR. LIPPI found upon the mountains of Siout, at the entrance of a vast cave, a body that was truly stone, of an irregular figure, but intirely porous, which he had the curiosity to open. He was very much surpris'd to see it all divided into oval cells of three lines in breadth and four in length, placed in all directions with regard to one another, no ways communicating with each other, lined all on the inside with a very delicate membrane; and, what

AT

At sun set, we found ourselves betwixt two islands, and the passage there is extremely dangerous, as well on account of the current, which is there very strong, as because there are divers banks of sand. We saw there a barque that had lately been lost.

At ten o'clock in the evening, we were near to MONFALUT. As soon as the custom-house barque perceived us, she fired a musket to give us notice to put to land. If we had had no merchandizes on board, we should have been immediately dispatched; but the cursed dates stopped us till the next day.

MONDAY, 17<sup>th</sup> of FEBRUARY.

IN the morning, the custom-house duties having been paid, we put off from shore; and we soon reached to

UMEL GUSUER. The inhabitants of this place do not pass for very honest people; there is no dependence upon them. The reys was willing to land at

---

is the most marvellous, containing *each* either a worm, a maggot, or a fly perfectly resembling a bee. The worms were very hard and solid, and might be considered as *petrified*; neither the maggots, nor flies were *so*, but only dried and well preserved like ancient mummies. The flies had in many places under them little oval grains, which seemed to be eggs. There was at the bottom of abundance of cells, a thick, blackish, and very hardened juice, which appeared red when held up against the light, was very sweet, made the *saliva* yellow, and burned like rosin. In a word, it was true honey.

“MR. LIPPI conceived that it was a natural bee-hive, which had been at first formed of an earth, loose, light, and sandy, and which had been afterwards petrified by some particular accident. The animals that inhabited it had been surpris'd by the petrification, and as it were fixed in the state wherein they were found. Their mucilage, which became dry, had formed the membrane that lined the cells: at the time when the hive was yet soft, the worms and the flies went out to get their food, and the flies there made their honey.

“LOOKING about in the same place for new lights on this fact, Mr. LIPPI found in several places the beginnings of a like hive.”  
*Histoire de l'academie pour l'année 1705. pag. 36.*

GALANISCH. His design was to wait there for some barques, in order to pass in company before

STABLEANTOR. He was afraid of the inhabitants of this place, who are remarkable for their piracies. We had indeed left above twenty barques at Galanisch, which waited till day break, in order to pass this place. We passed it, however, without any one's saying a word to us; and at eleven at night we put to shore on the western border of the Nile, near to

NEZLET ELL RARAMU. We saw in this place above thirty barques, which, like those that we had left at Galanisch, waited till it was day to pass before Stable-antor.

TUESDAY, 18<sup>th</sup> of FEBRUARY.

AT break of day we put off from shore, and continued our voyage. About ten o'clock we passed before

SCHECH ABADE. It was in this place that the city of Antinopolis formerly stood. There remain some edifices of it. We perceived them in some measure from the barque, but there was no possibility of landing<sup>b</sup>.

We passed on the left the island of

ELL MOTTA GHARA. It is opposite a territory of the same name, which has all along the Nile an ex-

---

<sup>b</sup> DR. POCOCKE gives the following account of this city. "We came up with the ruined city of Antinopolis, now called Enfineh; some say, there was anciently a city here called Besa; but ANTI-NOUS, who accompanied HADRIAN into Egypt, being drowned there, that emperor built this city, and called it after the name of his favourite, to whom he instituted games and divine honours: it was made also the capital of a new province of that name, taken out of the last of the seven provinces, called Heptanomis. It is said the city was three or four miles round. I saw a large pillar with a Corinthian capital, and a square stone or plinth on the top, which was probably to set some statue on; it is said there were four of these. I had also a view of a very fine gate of the Corinthian order, of exquisite workmanship." *Observations on Egypt*, pag. 73.

cellent



cellent grove, of which the river had, however, carried away this year a great part. We saw several grottos made in the mountains, and particularly towards Sauuada. There are some of them that have great gates, by which you enter. In the evening, at eight o'clock, we stopped before the same village of

SAUUADA. It is situated on the eastern shore of the river; and very near there is a sugar-mill.

WEDNESDAY, 19<sup>th</sup> of FEBRUARY.

AS soon as it was day, we went a-cross the Nile, to go to

MENIE. Our reys there paid the custom-house for his dates. This custom-house duty is not very high. It is destined only to maintain an aga, whom the bashaw keeps in this place, in order to collect the corn necessary for the subsistence of the soldiers of Cairo. He is likewise commissioned to send the tribute to Constantinople.

WHEN we arrived at Menie, there was so thick a fog, that we could perceive nothing at thirty paces distance. We landed to see the city, which is at present defended by a good bank of stones, against the overflowings of the Nile. This bank was finished but lately.

IN resuming our voyage, we passed before the convent of

ST. MARTHA. It is situated on the summit of a mountain. We there saw thousands of cormorants, and a great quantity of Pharoah's hens. To the north, and very near it, there appeared to be a sort of ruins of a whole town, which had been hollowed in the rock. In the evening, we put to shore at

COLLOSSANO.

THURSDAY, 20<sup>th</sup> of FEBRUARY.

AT the dawn of day we quitted this place, and we made great riddance, by means of the calm. We stopped a little at

BENEMHAMMED. It was in order to get in some provisions there; and we found what we wanted. At four o'clock in the afternoon, we passed  
SCHERONA.

FRIDAY, 21<sup>st</sup> of FEBRUARY.

WE put off from shore very early in the morning; and we again made great dispatch. But in approaching

BENESOEF, we found ourselves embarrassed in the midst of a little float of barques, loaded with corn for Cairo. Some of them were aground; and the same thing would have happened to us, if we had not found the method of getting into the current, which conveyed us in a little time to

BENESOEF. It was necessary to land in this place, in order to pay twenty-five parats, a sum that is required from every barque. We stayed there but an hour: After which we continued our voyage. We met very near Benesoef another barque aground. It had been attacked the preceding night by some robbers; and as it was not in a condition to defend itself, it had cut its cord, and let itself be carried away by the current, which had thrown it upon the sand. We reached after that to

ESCHMEND EL ARAB. We cast anchor to the south of this place, and we passed the night there.

SATURDAY, 22<sup>d</sup> of FEBRUARY,

WE sat out as soon as it was day, and we arrived about noon at

SAUVIED ELL MASLUUB. The caïmakan was one of our acquaintance: We sent our compliments to  
him;

him; but we heard that he had lately quitted this place with his family, and was gone to Cairo, to put himself into the service of OSMAN bey, who was to conduct the caravan to Mecca. We immediately set sail, and passed the seven islands. We approached to land in a place, from whence we saw very near the pyramids of Sakara. We continued afterwards our voyage, till nine o'clock in the evening, when the bark struck violently upon some stones, where it continued locked in. They attempted in vain to disengage it; they were not able to succeed; but towards midnight the vessel got clear of itself. We cast anchor, at a little distance from thence, opposite to

KOFFERLOYAD.

SUNDAY, 23<sup>d</sup> of FEBRUARY.

WE took to our oars very early in the morning, and we rid a great deal of way till noon, when the wind became very strong. We run aground in sight of Cairo. Notwithstanding all our efforts, and though we had thrown the anchor out, we could not put the barque afloat till towards the evening. We then got in a little time to Old Cairo, where we fastened the vessel, precisely in the place from whence we had departed the 18th of November of the preceding year. We sent immediately to give advice of our arrival to Cairo, in order that they might come and take us up the next day.

MONDAY, 24<sup>th</sup> of FEBRUARY.

ON that day we were provided with a sufficient number of camels, to convey us to the city, together with our baggage. It was noon when we arrived there.

*Mr. NORDEN has omitted to give any account of the famous labyrinth which was in Egypt; the reason, I presume, is, that the remains of it are very uncertain and undistinguishable: for father SICARD observes, that the monstrous condition, into which time had reduced that superb edifice, hindered him from being able to verify the descriptions of it by HERODOTUS and PLINY. As it was, however, one of the most wonderful buildings in Egypt, and the description is given by creditable authors, and by one especially that saw and examined it himself, the reader will probably be pleased with seeing the following accounts of it.*

HERODOTUS says, "I shall now speak of those things which other people, and the Egyptians likewise consenting with them, report to have been transacted in this country: to which will be added also something that has fallen under my own inspection. The Egyptians having recovered their freedom after the reign of the priest of VULCAN (for they never were able to live without a king) appointed twelve kings, having first divided all Egypt into twelve parts. These kings intermarrying with each other, continued to reign, and bound themselves by compact, not to attempt to destroy one another, nor to endeavour to have one more than another, but to be perfect friends. The reason of their binding themselves in that manner was, that an oracle was uttered at the first, as soon as they had taken possession of their kingship, that he of them who had poured libations in the temple of VULCAN from a brass pot, would be king of all Egypt\*. They were desirous likewise of leaving some monuments in common; and for that reason made the labyrinth, which is a little above the lake Mœris, situated very near to what is called the city of Crocodiles. This labyrinth I have myself seen, and found superior to report. For if any one would carefully examine the castles and remarkable works of the Grecians, they would appear to be of less labour and expence than this labyrinth: although there is a very memorable temple at Ephesus and another at Samos. Now even the pyramids were greater than they were reported to be, and every one of them equivalent to many and great works of the Grecians. But the labyrinth exceeds even the pyramids.

"Of this labyrinth there are twelve saloons, or covered courts, with gates opposite to each other, six turned towards the north,

\* *Diodorus Siculus relates the account in the following manner, but insinuates that he thought it a fable.* "That the oracle declared that which of them soever should first pour libations to the deity at Memphis, out of a brass pot, would be master of all Egypt. That PSAMMETICHUS, when one of the priests had brought out of the temple twelve [HERODOTUS says eleven] golden cups, having taken off his helmet, made use of it for the libation. That the others his co-partners in the government, suspicious of what he had done, but unwilling to put him to death, sent him into banishment, and appointed him to live in the marshes near the sea. From whence he afterwards returned, and having got a powerful army, became master of the whole country." *Lib. i. 43.*

and fix towards the south in a continued line. The same outward wall furrounds them. There are apartments in the labyrinth on two floors, the one *under* ground, and the other *above* upon them, three thousand in all, each consisting of fifteen hundred. Those above ground I myself have seen and gone through, so that I speak from my own knowledge. But those under ground I have known only by report; for the rulers of the Egyptians were by no means willing to shew them, saying, that in them are the sepulchres of the kings who originally built the labyrinth, and of the sacred Crocodiles: so that of the under-ground apartments I speak only from hearsay. The upper apartments I myself saw to be greater than any other human works. For the outlets at the top, and the various windings through the saloons gave me infinite surprise as I passed from a saloon into apartments, and from apartments into bed-chambers, and into other rooms out of the bed-chambers, and from the apartments into saloons. The roof of the whole is stone, as well as the walls. The walls are full of figures engraven. Each saloon has a peristyle of white stones admirably joined together. Quite close to the angle where the labyrinth terminates is a pyramid of two hundred and forty feet, in which great animals are engraven; the way into the pyramid is under ground." *Lib. ii. c. 147, 148*

PLINY's account is as follows, "Let us now speak of the labyrinths, which may be reckoned the most prodigious work of human labour and expence; but it is not, as may be thought, a fictitious account.

"For there still continues in Egypt, in the *Heracleopolite* district, that which was made the first, as they report, above four thousand six hundred years ago, by king PETESUCCUS or TITHOES. Though HERODOTUS says that it was the joint work of several kings, and of PSAMMETICHUS that survived the others. The reason of making it is variously delivered. DEMOTELES says, that it was the palace of MOTHERUS, LYCEAS that it was the sepulchre of MORRIS; the greater number of authors say, that it was built and consecrated to the sun, which is mostly credited.

"THERE is no doubt but DÆDALUS took from hence the model of that labyrinth, which he made in Crete, but he imitated only the hundredth part of it, which contains windings and turnings and inexplicable mazes; not (as we see in Mosaic pavements and in children's diversions in the country) containing in a little piece of ground several miles of walking: but there were many folding doors placed in it to conceal your returns and make you revolve through the same errors." *Lib. xxxvi. cap. 13.*

PLINY mentions, in another place, that the labyrinth was intirely built without any timber. *Lib. v. cap. 9.* HERODOTUS, in the passage above cited, and POMPONIUS MELA, express the same thing. Indeed all the buildings at Alexandria, according to CÆSAR, were with-

out rafting and timber. See the quotation I have given from him, vol. i. pag. 2.

I cannot conceive from whence Mr. ADDISON took his account, in those beautiful papers he wrote on the pleasures of the imagination, "of this labyrinth covering a whole province, and having an hundred temples disposed among its several quarters and divisions." For I find no such description amongst the ancients.

Having mentioned Mr. ADDISON, I cannot forbear giving a very elegant remark, cited by him on the statues of the Nile. "I never saw any figure of Sleep, that was not of black marble, which has probably some relation to the night, which is the proper season for rest. I should not have made this remark, but that I remember to have read in one of the ancient authors, that the Nile is generally represented in stone of this colour, because it flows from the country of the Ethiopians: which shews us that the statuaries had sometimes an eye to the person they were to represent, in the choice they made of their marble. There are still at Rome some of these black statues of the Nile, which are cut in a kind of touchstone.

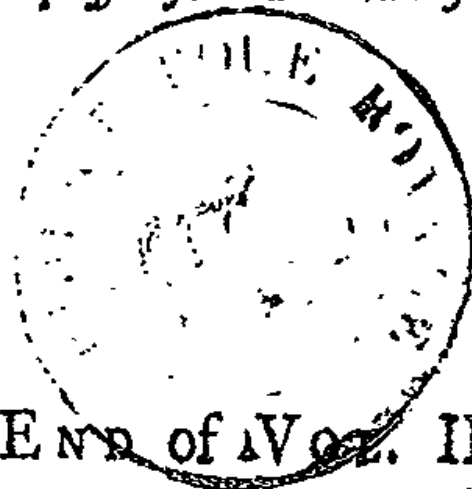
Usque coloratis annis devexus ab Indis.

VIRG. Georg. iv. de Nilo."

#### Remarks on Italy.

That kind of touchstone, as Mr. ADDISON terms it, was the Basaltes; for PLINY observes, "Nunquam hic (scilicet Basaltes) major repertus est, quam in templo Pacis ab imperatore VESPASIANO AUGUSTO dicatus: argumento Nili, xvi liberis circa ludentibus, per quos totidem cubita summi incrementi augentis se annis intelliguntur." Lib. xxxvi. cap. 7.

This statue of the Nile is still subsisting in the Vatican garden, and is an indubitable evidence of what the ancients meant by the Lapis Basaltes, which Mr. NORDEN expresses some uncertainty of in the first volume, pag. 94.



The END of VOL. II.



# T A B L E

## O F T H E

# C O N T E N T S.

- A** *BABUDA*, see *Arabs*.  
*Ababe*, vol. ii. pag. 23  
*Abadu*, ib. p. 145  
*Abbaed*, ib. p. 24  
*Abufode*, see *Mountains*.  
*Abubandel*, ib. p. 145  
*Abunumerus*, ib. p. 11  
*Abuschikaff*, ib. p. 24  
*Abusebera*, ib. p. 97  
*Abuseid*, ib. p. 23  
*Abutitsche*, ib. p. 37  
*Abutschorche*, ib. p. 24  
*Achemuncim*, formerly *Hermopolis*,  
 ib. p. 29.  
*Achmiin*, ib. p. 45. 204. The  
 prince of Achmiin, ib. p. 40,  
 45, 47, 204  
*Adam*. Adam's fig trees, v. i.  
 p. 81. Allusion to the fall of  
 Adam, v. ii. p. 76  
*Addison* (Mr) his observation on  
 the high situation of modern  
 Rome above the ancient, v. i.  
 p. 31. His mistake about the  
 labyrinth, v. ii. p. 209. His  
 observation on the statues of  
 the Nile, p. 209  
*Aga*, his power and office; v. i.  
 p. 93  
*Aga-Ibrahim*, his civility, v. ii. p.  
 98, 114, 122. his death, 175  
*Alagi*, v. ii. p. 137  
*Alexander* the great, his tomb,  
 v. i. p. 33, 34  
*Alexandria*, (the ancient) ib. p.  
 1, 2, &c.  
*Alexandria*, (the new) ib. p. 37,  
 &c.  
*Alkillung*, v. ii. p. 51  
*Amada*, v. ii. p. 144  
*Ammianus Marcellinus*, cited v. ii.  
 p. 29.  
*Ammeniac* (sal) ib. p. 21  
*Amuden*, ib. p. 27  
*Amungaer*, v. ii. p. 94  
*Angel*, see *Raphaël*.  
*Angora*, v. ii. p. 140  
*Animals* embalmed, see *Laby-*  
*rinth*.  
*Antincö*, see *Schech-Abade*.  
*Antiquities*, the Arabs have no  
 regard to them, v. ii. p. 38,  
 89. but are jealous of them,  
 and conjecture of the cause of  
 it, p. ib.  
*Apollinopolis*, p. 91  
*Arabs*, their contempt and jea-  
 lousy with respect to elegant  
 antiquities, see *Antiquities*.  
 They are superstitious, v. ii.  
 p. 1, 89. The rebellion of  
 some Arabs, p. 4  
*Arabs* called *Ababuda*, v. ii. p.  
 90. *Bedouins*, v. i. p. 17, 95.  
*Felaques*, 95. *Havarra*, v. ii.  
 p. 35, 53. and *Schoraffa*, v.  
 ii. p. 57  
*Arab*, v. ii. p. 120  
*Arega*, ib. p. 140  
*Arment*, formerly *Hermonthis*, ib.  
 p. 84.  
 P 4 *Ajmedi*

*Asmodi* banished by the angel  
*Raphaël*, ib. p. 42  
*Affafs*, v. i. p. 92  
*Affalie*, v. ii. p. 57  
*Afs-Fuun*, ib. p. 86, 191  
*Afferat*, ib. p. 48  
*Attariff*, p. 51  
*Atter-Ennabi*, v. i. p. 78. v. ii.  
 p. 11  
*Attuaen*, v. ii. p. 91  
*Author*, his arrival and abode at  
 Cairo, ib. p. 3. his sickness at  
 the same place, p. 4. at Lux-  
 xor, p. 61. at Esnay, p. 88.  
 his departure for the Upper  
 Egypt, p. 10. his return to  
 Cairo, p. 211. Danger he is  
 in at Cairo, p. 4. at Luxxor,  
 p. 71. at Esnay, p. 88. at  
 Girsche, p. 135. at Derri,  
 147, &c. The Journal of  
 his voyage to the Upper  
 Egypt, p. 9. his letter to  
 MARTIN FOLKES, Esq; v. i.  
 p. 131

## B.

**B**ASHAW of Egypt, his  
 power and office, vol. i.  
 p. 91  
*Bacchus*, Head of Bacchus, v.  
 ii. p. 81  
*Backfisch*, what it signifies, v. ii.  
 p. 71  
*Baganes*, ib. p. 50  
*Bagher-Jusef*, see *Calisch*.  
*Bagjura*, v. ii. p. 51, 200  
*Baths*, v. i. p. 22, 64  
*Bamban*, v. ii. p. 95  
*Bananas*, see *Adam's fig-trees*.  
*Banks of sand* in the middle of  
 the Nile, v. ii. p. 26, 91,  
 200, 201, 205  
 — see *Giffer*.  
*Baram-Cacheff*, see *Cacheff*.  
*Baranga*, v. ii. p. 23  
*Barajbour*, 135  
*Barajbura*, ib. p. 44

*Bardakes*, v. i. p. 81  
*Bardis*, v. ii. p. 50, 201  
*Barque*, hired at Cairo to carry  
 the author to Essuaen, ib. p.  
 9. strikes upon banks of sand,  
 p. 26, 91. Another hired at  
 Essuaen for the second cata-  
 ract, p. 137. strikes upon a  
 rock, p. 138. A third hired  
 at Essuaen for Cairo, p. 173.  
 is built of red ore wood, p.  
 171. strikes upon banks of  
 sand, p. 201, 205  
*Barge*, manner of drawing  
 down the cataract,  
 p. 138  
*Bardis*, related to the fight  
 with the elements meant by it,  
 ib. p. 11  
*Bassafin*, v. ii. p. 11  
*Beard*, swearing by the beard,  
 ib. p. 63, 149, 187  
*Bebe*, ib. p. 23  
*Bedaeg*, ib. p. 23  
*Bedouins*, see *Arabs*.  
*Bee-hive* petrified, ib. p. 206  
*Belliene*, ib. p. 50  
*Beneamraen*, ib. p. 30  
*Benegamet*, ib. p. 24  
*Benehgasein*, ib. p. 23, 27  
*Benemasaeg*, ib. p. 24  
*Benembammed*, ib. p. 25, 27, 210  
*Bennchassein*, ib. 23, 27  
*Benessef*, v. ii. p. 21, 210  
*Benge*, ib. p. 39  
*Beniberfa*, ib. p. 50  
*Bennifecs*, ib. p. 38  
*Bennimuur*, ib. p. 34  
*Bennehedder*, ib. p. 20  
*Benniali*, ib. p. 20  
*Bennier-Akaep*, ib. p. 50  
*Benuup-Ell-Haman*, ib. p. 32  
*Berbetund*, ib. p. 133  
*Berdenis*, ib. p. 38  
*Bey*s, their power and office, v.  
 i. p. 91. *Hassan-Bey*, v. ii. p.  
 22. *Omer-Bey*, p. 5. *Osman-*  
*Bey*, p. 22, 57, 58. *Bey-Soli-*  
*man*

- man and Bey-Schierres*, p. 24.  
*The Bey of Girge*, p. 45, 56, 97  
*Bejjadie*, v. ii. p. 22  
*Bejjadie-Ell-Kebira*, ib. p. 28  
*Bibar*, ib. p. 44  
*Bogas*, ib. p. 18  
*Bokkier*, ib. p. 52  
*Boulac*, ib. p. 73  
*Bourbes*, a kind of money, v. ii. p. 89  
*Bricks*, dried in the Sun. The false pyramid built of them, v. i. p. 129, 132  
*Bridges* in the neighbourhood of the pyramids, ib. p. 140. Other bridges, the works of the Saracens, ib. p. 128, 133  
*Brother* of the Aga of Essuaen, v. ii. p. 173, a companion of the author, ib. p. 99. discovers the wicked designs of Baram Cacheff, ib. p. 174  
*Brumbul*, ib. p. 19  
*Bubebaed*, ib. p. 139  
*Bueeb*, see *Ell-bueeb*.  
*Buusch*, ib. 21

C.

- CACHEFF.** *Baram-Cacheff*, his character and behaviour, v. ii. p. 140, 147. his design laid open by the brother of the aga of Essuaen, p. 174  
*Cacheff of Esnay*, ib. p. 87, 183  
*Cacheff-Ibrim*, the new cacheff of Nubia, v. ii. p. 96  
*Cacheff-Salem*, chief of the rebels, ib. p. 4  
*Cadis*, judge in law-suits, ib. p. 183  
*Cæsar*, his account of Alexandria, v. i. p. 1. his palace, ib. p. 6. sheds tears at the death of Pompey, p. 32  
*Caffetab*, v. i. p. 93. v. ii. p. 96  
*Cairo, Grand Cairo*, v. i. p. 61 to 71. *Old Cairo*, p. 71  
*Calisch*, canal dug for conveying the water of the Nile, after its overflowing, v. i. p. 62, 73, 89. v. ii. p. 28, 40, 51  
*Calisch of Cleopatra*, v. i. p. 18, 27  
*Cambyfes*, carries away the gold circle of OSYMANDIAS, v. i. p. 133. v. ii. p. 66. In the time of *Cambyfes* they no longer understood hieroglyphics, v. i. p. 136  
*Camel*, rock so called, v. ii. p. 23  
*Camps*, (flying camps of) Bedouins, v. i. p. 17  
*Caravans*, v. ii. p. 3, 29, 33  
*Carnac*, formerly *Thebes*, its antiquities, ib. p. 61.  
*Carp*; Fishing of carp in the middle of the first cataract, v. ii. p. 115  
*Carullo-Meresel*, v. i. p. 53  
*Cassarna*, v. ii. p. 53  
*Catacombs*, ib. p. 17  
*Cataract*, v. ii. p. 114, 115  
*Catea*, ib. p. 34, 206  
*Catharine*, (saint) her church and bank at Alexandria, v. i. p. 12  
*Circle* of gold of OSYMANDIAS, v. i. p. 133. v. ii. p. 66  
*Chain*. The chained-mountain, ib. p. 92, 185  
*Chambers* in the first pyramid, v. i. p. 118. upon the mountain Tschibat-Ell-Kofferi, [v. ii. p. 34  
*Chancellor*, (French) at Alexandria, v. i. p. 43  
*Cheops* (king) his wickedness and pyramid, ib. p. 102  
*Cicero*, his account of the *Catadupa*, v. ii. p. 117  
*Cisterns* at Alexandria, v. i. p. 19.  
*Clarke*,

- Clarke*, (Dr. Samuel) animadversion on his plan of Alexandria in CÆSAR's commentaries, *ib.* p. 33. Observation on his conjecture for fixing the age of HOMER, v. ii. p. 62
- Clayton* (Bishop of Clogher) remark on a passage in his answer to Lord Bolingbroke, v. i. p. 144
- Clemens* of Alexandria, his explanation of the hieroglyphical hawk, &c. v. ii. p. 128
- Coffee-pots*, v. i. p. 82
- Collofano*, v. ii. p. 25, 209
- Column* of POMPEY, see *Pompey*.
- Colosses* with Greek and Latin inscriptions, v. ii. p. 75
- Colosses*, p. 69
- Combat*, between bey Soliman, and bey Schierres, see *Bey*.
- between some Barbarins, v. ii. p. 178.
- Confines* of Egypt and Nubia, *ib.* p. 131
- Conjecture* of the author on the preservation of the antiquities of Egypt, v. ii. p. 172. on the ancient Memphis, v. i. p. 75. on the pyramids of Sakarra, v. i. p. 130. conjecture of Mr. GREAVES on the sepulchre of OSYMANDIAS, v. i. p. 133. Conjecture of Mr. SCHEUCHZER, on the shells upon the pyramids, v. i. p. 113
- Conquest* of Egypt by the caliphs of Africa, anno 970; and by Selim the first, anno 1517, v. i. p. 90
- Consul* (French) at Alexandria, *ib.* p. 43, &c.
- Copti* at Alexandria, *ib.* p. 42. at Negadi, v. ii. p. 58. patriarch of the Copti, v. i. p. 43. a Copti priest companion of the author in his voyage, v. ii. p. 9, 35. Sees of Copti bishops, p. 47, 49
- Copti* convents, v. ii. p. 12, 20, 24, 25, 28, &c. 45. Privileges of the Copti in the territory of the prince of ACHMIIN, v. ii. p. 47
- Convent*, (*Pulley* convent) *ib.* p. 32
- Ceramans*, *ib.* p. 37
- Cormorants*, *ib.* p. 209
- A Courtezan* at the market of Meschie, v. ii. p. 47
- Crocodile*, a pacific animal and not dreaded, v. ii. p. 165. some fifty feet in length, p. 61
- Crocodilopolis*, see *Demegraed*.
- Convent* of figs, v. i. p. 79
- Curtius* (Quintus) his account of the building of Alexandria, *ib.* p. 1.
- Custom-house* of Alexandria, *ib.* p. 39
- Cyprus* tree of Old Cairo, v. i. p. 81

## D

- D**AGFOUR, v. ii. p. 14
- Damamin*, *ib.* p. 61
- Dandera*, formerly *Tentyra*, *ib.* p. 54. its antiquities, *ib.* p. 198
- Dar*, *ib.* 54
- Deboude*, its antiquities, *ib.* p. 130
- Deckke*, *ib.* p. 137
- Dcheshne*, *ib.* p. 53
- Deir*, *ib.* p. 25
- Deir-Abuichbanna*, *ib.* p. 29. *Abusai-Feen*, *ib.* p. 12. *Ell-Abiat*, *ib.* p. 44. *Ell-Adavia*, *ib.* p. 12. *Ell-Hadie*, *ib.* p. 12. *Ell-Melac*, *ib.* p. 48.
- Etiin*, v. i. p. 72. v. ii. p. 11.
- Meymund*, v. ii. p. 20. *Omali* *ib.* p. 86
- Delta*,

- Delta*, or Lower Egypt, v. i. p. 53  
*Deluge*, marks of the universal deluge, v. ii. p. 31. whether it overwhelmed the pyramids, v. i. p. 113  
*Demegraed*, the ancient *Crocodiopolis*, v. ii. p. 85  
*Demfig*, ib. p. 60  
*Demhiid*, ib. p. 131  
*Dendour*, Scherck *Dendour* and *Garbe Dendour*, ib. p. 134.  
*Deriminna*, ib. p. 11  
*Derrau*, ib. p. 96  
*Derri* or *Dir*, ib. p. 147  
*Deruth*, or *Derut Ell-Scheriff*, v. i. p. 53. v. ii. p. 29  
*Denesle*, ib. p. 37  
*Diaha*, head of *Diana*, ib. p. 81  
*Diodorus Siculus*, cited v. i. p. 133, 136, 140. censured, p. 146. his opinion that Egypt was formerly *all sea*, p. 54. confutes *HERODOTUS* on the cause of the inundation of the Nile, p. 84. his account of *Memphis*, p. 76. his absurd notion concerning the manner of building the pyramids, p. 104. declares expressly that the pyramids were designed for sepulchres, p. 104. his account of the canal cut from the Nile to the Red-sea, v. ii. p. 56. his account of *Thebes*, p. 63. of the sepulchre of *OSYMANDIAS*, p. 64. takes no notice of the vocal statue of *MEMNON*, p. 79. description of the course of the Nile, and of the cataract, p. 115. treats as a fable the oracle delivered to the twelve kings, p. 209  
*Diospolis* (the lesser) see *Gau Scherkie*.  
*Dimmel*, v. ii. p. 131  
*Dinedera*, ib. p. 52  
*Dir*, see *Derri*.  
*Dirminund* see *Deir-Meimund*.  
*Dirp*, v. ii. p. 52  
*Dischne*, see *Deheschne*.  
*Divan*, v. ii. p. 146  
*Doctors* of the law, their office, v. i. p. 93  
*Drogman*, (French) at *Alexandria*, ib. p. 43<sup>1</sup>  
*Dromedaries* or camels, v. ii. p. 107  
*Drought*, the extreme drought of the lands of Egypt, v. i. p. 87  
*Dulab*, ib. p. 25  
*Duceg*, ib. p. 90  
*Dueer-Ait*, ib. p. 38  
*Dung*, (pigeons) for manuring land, ib. p. 20  
 — of cattle, for sal ammoniac, ib.

## E.

- E**ASTER of the Turks, v. ii. p. 176  
*Ebbenuut*, ib. p. 57, 197  
*Ebne Ghaziim*, ib. p. 27  
*Edabah*, see *Giesfret Edabah*.  
*Edfu*, formerly *Apollinopolis*, v. ii. p. 91  
*Egypt*, overflowed by the Nile, v. i. p. 83, &c. its government, p. 90, &c.  
*Elephantine*, p. 100.  
*Elfugaye*, v. ii. p. 23  
*Ell-Adeime*, ib. p. 90  
*Ell-Akabbe*, ib. p. 97  
*Ell-Akalita*, ib. p. 61  
*Ell-Akluraes*, ib. p. 52  
*Ell-Ardie*, ib. p. 86, 191  
*Ell-Auvanie*, ib. p. 91  
*Ell-Ballaes*, ib. p. 57  
*Ell-Baruut*, ib. p. 57  
*Ell-Bedari*, ib. p. 38  
*Ell-Bebera*, ib. p. 92  
*Ell-Bellabifsch*, v. ii. p. 50  
 Ell.

- Ell-Bersbell*, ib. p. 29  
*Ell-Bessalie*, ib. p. 91  
*Ell-Bueeb* or *Seraik*, ib. p. 92  
*Ell-Burtschen*, ib. p. 26  
*Ell-Ekrat*, ib. p. 33  
*Ell-Gaesser*, ib. p. 54  
*Ell-Ganaan*, ib. p. 91  
*Ell-Gaptara* or *Gaptara*, ib. 97  
*Ell-Gharaffi*, ib. p. 12  
*Ell-Ghoraen*, ib. p. 48  
*Ell-Gliid*, ib. p. 94  
*Ell-Gouafa*, ib. p. 51  
*Ell-Guraen*, ib. p. 137  
*Ell-Gufa*, ib. p. 30  
*Ell-Gufuer*, or *Um-Ell-Gufuer*, ib. p. 30  
*Ell-Hammaen*, ib. p. 92  
*Ell-Haigua*, ib. p. 48  
*Ell-Hauvie*, ib.  
*Ell-Heiff*, the *Philæ* of the ancients, its ruins, ib. p. 116, &c.  
*Ell-Heiks*, ib. p. 91  
*Ell-Hella*, ib. p. 57  
*Ell-Kabunia*, ib. p. 96  
*Ell-Kaep*, ib. p. 91  
*Ell-Kajudsche*, ib. p. 92  
*Ell-Kalabsche*, ib. p. 132  
*Ell-Kallaba*, ib. p. 11  
*Ell-Kerne*, ib. p. 61  
*Ell-Kilg*, ib. p. 91  
*Ell-Kiman*, ib. p. 86  
*Ell-Kgufuer*, ib. p. 30  
*Ell-Maabda*, ib. p. 32  
*Ell-Maafrata*, ib. p. 35.  
*Ell-Mahamadie*, ib. p. 32  
*Ell-Magasch*, ib. p. 50  
*Ell-Motmar*, ib. p. 35.  
*Ell-Mottaghara* or *Metaghera*, ib. p. 27  
*Ell-Nechcheele*, ib. p. 35, 205  
*Ell-Retsegaet*, ib. p. 84  
*Ell-Sag*, formerly island *Elephantine*, ib. p. 100  
*Ell-Sauvie*, ib. p. 44  
*Ell-Schech Amer*, or *Schech Hammer*, ib. p. 96  
*Ell-Subadschia*, ib. p. 40  
*Ell-Tsche'ame*, ib. p. 84  
*Ell-Tschibbeleen*, ib. p. 86  
*Ell-Toff*, or *Teffel*, v. ii. p. 97  
*Ell-Wokf*, ib. p. 53  
*Ell-Umbiir*, ib. p. 51  
*Encampment* of the bey of Girge, ib. p. 45  
*Encrease* of the Nile, see *Nile*.  
*Errors* of some ancients on the fourth pyramid, v. i. p. 146  
—— of a French consul on the column of POMPEY, ib. p. 16  
—— of father *Lucas*, ib.  
—— of another author, ib. p. 33  
*Eschmend Ell-Arrab*, v. ii. p. 20.  
*Esnay*, formerly *Latopolis*, ib. p. 87, 189  
*Essuaen*, formerly *Syene*, ib. p. 97. Aga of *Essuaen*, see *Aga*.  
*Ettuesfa*, ib.  
*Eutseeg*, ib. p. 16, 19  
*Eunuchs*, the trade of the inhabitants of *Denesle* consists in making eunuchs, ib. p. 38  
*Ewer*, v. i. p. 82

## F.

- F**ANAL, see *Pbarillon*.  
*Faris* p. 94  
*Farfiut*, v. ii. p. 52  
*Fatira*, ib. p. 94  
*Fau*, ib. p. 52  
*Felaques*, see *Arabs*.  
*Fendouchi*, a sort of money, v. i. p. 66  
*Feschn*, v. ii. p. 23  
*Festival* of the Turks in cutting the calisch at Cairo, v. i. p. 62  
—— of circumcision, v. ii. p. 5  
—— of Easter, ib. p. 176  
—— of Ramadam, ib. p. 108  
*Figs*, of the sycamore tree, v. i. p. 79  
*Fig-trees*, Adam's, ibid.  
*Filtering* the Nile water, see *Pesfel*.  
*Floats*,



- Floats*, made of earthen pitchers, v. i. p. 80, and of straw, supported by gourd-bottles, v. ii. p. 61
- Fog*, which came on in the Upper Egypt, v. ii. p. 209
- Folkes*, letter of the author to MARTIN FOLKES, Esq; v. i. p. 131
- Mr. Folkes's* explanation of a passage in PLINY, ib. p. 151
- Forest* of date trees, ib. p. 17
- of palm trees, v. ii. p. 27
- Fosses* at Alexandria, v. i. p. 24
- Franks*, the Franks considered in Egypt as ill-designing people, very rich, and forcerers, v. ii. p. 58, 59. see *Travellers*.
- French* at Alexandria, v. i. p. 43, &c.
- G.
- G**ABT-*Ell-Abiid*, v. ii. p. 139
- Galanisch*, ib. p. 30
- Gallagis*, ib. p. 96
- Galefmund*, ib. p. 48
- Gamase Ellagcira*, ib. p. 15
- Gamase El Kebira*, ib.
- Gamola*, ib. p. 60, 196
- Gannaek*, ib. p. 97
- Gaptara*, ib. 97
- Garanduul*, v. ii. p. 28
- Garbe Abobuer*, ii. p. 134
- *Dendaur*, ib. p. 134
- *Girsche*, ib. p. 135
- *Merie*, ib. p. 134
- *Merruvau*, ib. p. 134
- Garbelthees*, ib. p. 123
- Gascheile*, ib. p. 90
- Gasserufjaed*, ib. p. 52
- Gau Ell Gerbie*, ib. p. 39
- Gau-Scherkir*, anciently the lesser Diospolis, ib. 38, 205
- Giants*, whether giants built the pyramids? v. i. p. 110
- Gecs*, v. ii. p. 24
- Genzerli*, a species of money, v. i. p. 66
- Gerera*, v. ii. p. 86
- Gisch Stobne*, ib. p. 137
- Gharaffe*, ib. p. 48
- Ghattara*, ib. p. 57
- Ghosaem*, ib. p. 61
- Gibbaeg*, ib. p. 85
- Giendie*, ib. p. 24
- Giene*, ib. p. 55
- Gierajoes*, ib. p. 60, 196
- Gisfret*, see *Island*.
- Gisfret-Abdelkadir*, v. ii. p. 50
- *Barrakaed*, ib. p. 19
- *Bcherif*, ib. p. 97
- *Edahab*, ib. p. 11
- *Ella Zalc*, ib. p. 16
- *Ell Gurmand*, ib. p. 19
- *Ell Heiff*, see *Ell Heiff*, ib. p. 116
- *Eutfeeg*, ib. p. 19
- *Mabues*, ib. p. 131
- *Ell Mansoria*, ib. p. 94, 183
- *Metera*, formerly *Tabenna*, ib. p. 60
- *Nejagheye*, ib. p. 51
- *Schendowib*, ib. p. 40
- *Tersaye*, ib. p. 14
- *Toma*, ib. p. 38
- *Vuladbaggid*, ib. p. 32
- Gilsan*, ib. p. 40
- Giomez*, See *Sycamore*:
- Girbe*, v. ii. p. 97
- Girsche*, ib. p. 135
- Girgares*, ib. p. 28
- Girge* or *Tschirsche*, ib. p. 49
- The bey of *Girge*, see *Bey*.
- Gisser*, banks to hinder the water of the Nile from running off after its inundation, v. i. p. 89
- Gize*, formerly Memphis, ib. p. 75, 111
- Gnats* called *Dareira*, ib. p. 81
- Government*, established in Egypt by SELIM I. ib. p. 90, &c.
- Governors* of the fortresses, ib. p. 94

*Granite,*

- Granite.* The obelisks are commonly made of it, p. 150.  
Rocks of granite along the Nile, v. ii. p. 135
- Granary,* JOSEPH's granary, v. i. p. 72
- Greaves,* his opinion concerning the pyramids, that they were designed for sepulchres; and observation on the account that HERODOTUS has given of the building of the first pyramid, v. i. p. 105. his conjecture concerning the well in the first pyramid, p. 118. his observations on the second pyramid, p. 119. his account of the conversation he had with Dr. HARVEY about breathing the same air in the pyramid, p. 124. his *Pyramidographia*, remarks on it by Mr. NORDEN, p. 131
- Grinding,* manner of grinding corn, v. ii. p. 46
- Grotto* of holy hermits, ib. p. 28, 31. of the chained mountain, p. 93; &c. of the mountain *Tjchebat Ell Kofferi* named *Sababinath*, p. 33. from what grottoes the stones have been taken with which the pyramids were built, v. i. p. 115, 141. other grottoes in the neighbourhood of the pyramids, marked with hieroglyphics, p. 122
- Grotto*, sepulchral, of the ancient *Alexandria*, p. 21. *Grotto*, called *Stableantor*, v. ii. p. 29. The *Grotto*, where the holy virgin reposed herself when she retired into Egypt, v. i. p. 71
- Guad Ell Arrab*, v. ii. p. 140
- Gubbebaad*, ib. p. 17
- Gurta*, ib. p. 137, 162
- H.
- H**ABU, or *Medinet Habu*, v. ii. p. 61, 95
- Hallabia*, ib. p. 24
- Hallabie*, ib. p. 23
- Hambdie*, ib. p. 85
- Haradschie*, ib. p. 57
- Hassaja*, ib. p. 145
- Havara*, see *Arabs*.
- Hau*, v. ii. p. 52, 200
- Hellal*, ib. p. 91
- Helle*, ib. p. 86
- Helovan*, ib. p. 14
- Hermits*, v. ii. p. 28, 31
- Hermontbis*, see *Arment*.
- Hermopolis*, see *Achemuneim*.
- Herodotus*, his opinion concerning the *Delta*, v. i. p. 53. his account of *Memphis*, ib. p. 75. his contempt of the several *hypotheses* concerning the annual inundation of the Nile, p. 84. no addition to the number of cubits he mentions for the rise of the Nile, p. 88. his account of the pyramids and lake *Mæris*, p. 102, &c. 140, &c. his account of the canal cut to the Red sea, v. ii. p. 55. gives no account of the ancient Thebes. ib. p. 64. nor of the vocal statue of MEMNON, p. 79. did not travel so far as the cataract, p. 117. his description of the famous labyrinth. p. 209
- Hindau*, v. ii. p. 131
- Hieroglyphics*, on the forehead of locusts, v. i. p. 81. on fragments of marble, p. 15, 81. on some sepulchral grottoes, p. 122. on the obelisks, p. 152. but none on the pyramids, p. 109. Mr. NORDEN's conclusion from thence, confuted,

- futed, *ib.* on ruins, v. ii. p. 64, 87, 95, 103, 110, 129, 133, 144  
*Hieroglyphics* painted, v. i. p. 153, v. ii. p. 73, 75  
*Hieroglyphics*, the knowledge of them lost before the time of CAMBYSES, v. i. p. 134  
*Hokuer*, v. ii. p. 137  
*Homer*, his description of the distance of the island Pharos, v. i. p. 2  
 —of PROTEUS's cave, p. 22  
 —of ancient Thebes, v. ii. p. 62  
*Hospital* of the Fathers *de propagandâ*, v. ii. p. 44, 49, 52  
*Huoddi*, v. ii. p. 15  
*Houses*, country-houses of the aga of Essuaen, v. ii. p. 168, 169. of the Schorbatschie in Nubia, *ib.* p. 140, 141. water-house at Old Cairo, v. i. p. 7  
*Huali*, see master of the police.  
*Huasta*, *ib.* p. 19  
*Huwaed*, v. ii. p. 131  
*Hydraulic* (machine) see *Machines*:  
 I.  
**J** *Anissaries*, corps of militia, v. i. p. 92. think themselves more privileged than the rest of the subjects, v. ii. p. 68. they commonly accompany those that go to see the pyramids, v. i. p. 128. one of them accompanied the author into Upper Egypt, and did him great services, v. ii. p. 52, 71. difference between the Janissaries and Assasss, v. i. p. 92. an adventure of a Janissary at *Alexandria*, *ib.* p. 44  
*Jars* of earth, *ib.* p. 82  
*Jasenie*, v. ii. p. 52  
*Ibrahim* Aga, see *Aga*.  
*Ibrim* CACHEFF, see *Cacheff*.  
*Idols*, found near the pyramids, v. i. p. 122  
*Inshallach*, what the word signifies, v. ii. p. 59  
*Inscription* on the pyramids, falsely advanced by HERODOTUS and DIODORUS SICULUS, v. i. p. 146. in Arabic of the Mokkias, *ib.* p. 74. — on the two colosses at Luxxor, v. ii. p. 74  
*Inundation* of the Nile, see *Nile*.  
*Joseph*. JOSEPH's granary, v. i. p. 72. JOSEPH's well, p. 65.  
*Isiac* figures, vol. ii. p. 68, 72  
*Islands*, formed by the Nile, v. ii. p. 204  
*Islands*, called *Ell-Sag*, v. ii. p. 100. *Melia*, *ib.* p. 94.  
*Mottagharri*, *ib.* p. 27. Island of *Pharos*, v. i. p. 1, 2. of *Rodda*, *ib.* p. 73. *Scherona*, v. ii. p. 24. *Sohorra*, p. 26. see *Giesfret*.  
*Israelites*, their brick-works in Egypt, v. i. p. 133  
*Jews* at *Alexandria*, *ib.* p. 39  
*Juvenal* cited, v. ii. p. 78  
 K.  
**K** ARDOUS, v. ii. p. 38  
*Kellabie*, *ib.* p. 90  
*Kenauvie*, *ib.* p. 55  
*Kerawafchie*, *ib.* p. 146, 160  
*Kiaja* or *Kieche*, Turkish colonels, v. i. p. 93  
*Kiene*, see *Giene*.  
*Kirkar*, v. ii. p. 28  
*Knuphis*, the serpent *Knuphis*, *ib.* p. 101  
*Koffierloyad*, *ib.* p. 15, 211  
*Koft*, *ib.* p. 57  
*Kombusch*, *ib.* p. 23  
*Kongeride*, *ib.* p. 20  
*Komombu*

*Komombu*, v. ii. p. 95. its anti-  
quities, p. 184

*Koroscoff*, ib. p. 140

*Kos*, ib. p. 57

*Kubaen*, ib. p. 137

*Kudjubed*, ib. p. 145

*Kufr Benem Hammed*, ib. p. 25

*Kufr Solu*, ib. p. 24

*Kumbeer*, ib. p. 91

*Kurnabilal*, ib. p. 61

## L.

**L** *ABYRINTH*, the famous  
one near the lake Mœris,  
v. ii. p. 209

— at Sakarra, where they  
buried birds and animals em-  
balmed, ib. p. 13

*Lady*, the remarkable courage of  
a lady, ib. p. 5

*Lagfas*, ib. p. 15

*Lamps* and lanterns, v. i. p. 83

*Land*, the manner of ploughing  
the land, v. i. p. 84. v. ii. p.  
36

*Latopolis*, see *Esnay*.

*Letter* of the author to MARTIN  
FOLKES, Esq; v. i. p. 131

*Letters* of recommendation from  
the heads of the government,  
v. ii. p. 9, 22, 58, 98. from  
the aga of Essuan, p. 100,  
141. from CACHEFF IBRIM,  
v. ii. p. 122

*Lingua Franca*, v. i. p. 55

*Locusts*, having hieroglyphics on  
the forehead, v. i. p. 81

*Lucan*, cited v. i. p. 3, 31. v. ii.  
b. 116

*Lucas*, father LUCAS cited v. i.  
p. 16. v. ii. p. 54

*Lucian*, cited v. i. *Passages from*  
*ancient authors*, p. xxxviii.

*Lukoreen*, or Luxxor, the ancient  
*Thebes*, v. ii. p. 61

## M.

**M** *ACHINES* (hydraulic)  
for watering the land, v.  
i. p. 84. for crossing the Nile,  
v. i. p. 81

*Magaga*, v. ii. p. 24

*Mayana*, ib. p. 24.

*Magazine* of powder at *Alexan-*  
*dria*, v. i. p. 5.

*Magdschar*, v. ii. p. 54, 61

*Magdscheradome*, ib. p. 86.

*Magdschergarona*, ib. p. 85

*Magfara*, ib. p. 25

*Magfara*, v. ii. p. 29

*Mahamiid*, ib. p. 86

*Maharakka*, ib. p. 51

*Mabbub*, a species of money,  
v. i. p. 66

*Mahfara*, v. ii. p. 12

*Maidins*, a species of money, v.  
i. p. 66

*Maillet*, (Monf.) censured for  
his account of the column of  
POMPEY, v. i. p. 16. his ac-  
count of the conquest of E-  
gypt, p. 90. of the splendor  
of the beys, p. 91. of the  
number of janissaries and as-  
safs, p. 93 his conjecture con-  
cerning the *well* of the pyra-  
mids, p. 118. of the Sphinx,  
p. 121

*Malcki*, v. ii. p. 140

*Mangabar*, ib. p. 33

*Manjelmusa*, ib. p. 12

*Mankaritsche*, ib. p. 21

*Mansoria*, 94

*Maraga*, v. ii. p. 40, 204

*Marble*, piece of marble resem-  
bling porphyry, v. i. p. 143.  
another piece loaded with  
hieroglyphics, ib. p. 16. 31

*Mark*, church of St. MARK at  
*Alexandria*, ib. p. 11

*Marcasite*. The Cacheff of *Esnay*  
wants to learn the method of  
getting

- getting silver from it, v. ii. p. 184
- Martha*, convent of St. MARTHA, v. ii. p. 209
- Masser*, v. i. p. 61
- Master*, grand master of the police of the Turks, his power, ib. p. 94
- Mattal*, v. ii. p. 24
- Medinet Habu*, see *Habu*.
- Meduun*, v. ii. p. 16
- Meimund*, ib. p. 20
- Melia*, see *Island*.
- Mellaghié*, v. ii. p. 23
- Mellawi*, ib. p. 29
- Memnon*, the palace of MEMNON, ib. p. 75. the statue of MEMNON, p. 79
- Memphis*, whether it was built out of the ruins of Thebes? v. i. p. 134. whether it was founded after the erection of the pyramids? ib. In the place, where stands at present the village of Gize, p. 75. and whether it had in its inclosure the pyramids of *Sakarra*? p. 130
- Menabuad*, v. ii. p. 12
- Menie*, ib. p. 27, 209
- Meneschia*, ib. p. 60
- Menjelkarag*, ib. p. 15
- Meraschdeh*, ib. p. 53
- Merchandises* at Cairo, v. i. p. 68
- Mercuriales tumuli*, v. i. p. 137
- Merkeb*, a sort of barques, v. i. p. 81. v. ii. p. 121
- Merreschis*, v. ii. p. 38
- Meschiel-Dabes*, ib. p. 28
- Meschte*, ib. p. 39
- Mesguna*, ib. p. 14
- Messauvie*, v. ii. p. 90
- Meschie*, v. i. p. 140. v. ii. p. 45, 203
- Metaghera*, see *Ell-Mottaghara*.
- Mettani*, see *Valley*.
- Vol. II.
- Michael*, St. MICHAEL, v. ii. p. 23
- Mikkias*, see *Mokkias*.
- Militia*, corps of *Militia* introduced by SELIM I. v. i. p. 92
- Mills*, made use of for watering the land, ib. p. 86
- Misara*, v. ii. p. 30
- Missanda*, ib. p. 15
- Missionaries*, Missionary Fathers, companions of the author in his voyage, ib. p. 9
- Moharraka*, ib. p. 137
- Mokkias*, where they made observations with regard to the increase of the Nile, v. i. p. 74. its Arabic inscription, ib. the Mokkias of Antinoë, v. ii. p. 28
- Mole*, the mole of the ports of *Alexandria*, v. i. p. 4. Its two zigzages, ib.
- Mommies*, or Mummies, the mummy country, v. i. p. 122. commerce of mummies, v. ii. p. 13
- Monfalunt*, v. ii. p. 31, 207
- Monies*, current at Cairo, v. i. p. 67
- Morrada*, port of the first cataract, v. ii. p. 121
- Mountains of Abuffode*, ib. p. 31. of holy *Hermits*, or of *Benehassain*, p. 23. of the chain, or *Tschebal-Effelsele*, p. 92. of *Komombu*, p. 95. of *Neslet-Abonuur*, p. 23. of *Scherck Uladjachchia*, p. 49. of *Tschebat-Ell-Kofferi*, p. 34. of *Tschibel Monna*, p. 52
- Mount-Sina*, whether they transported from Mount Sina the stones, which were employed in the building of the pyramids? v. i. p. 143
- Musti*, his power and policy, ib. p. 95
- Q
- Mugna*,

*Mugna*, v. ii. p. 12  
*Museum*, the museum of the an-  
 cient *Alexandria*, v. i. p. 33  
*Mustapha*, brother of *OSMAN*  
*BEY*, v. ii. p. 20

## N.

**N** *AGADI*, v. ii. p. 57  
*Nagel-Abdeddein*, ib. p.  
 92  
*Naghal-Hagjemuse*, ib. p. 139  
*Nechcheele*, see *Ell-Nechcheel*.  
*Nerarnisch*, v. ii. p. 50  
*Neslet-Abonuur*, see *mountains*.  
 — *Ameris*, v. ii. p. 84  
 — *Ascheriff* ib. p. 50  
 — *Ell-Hemma*, ib. p. 38  
 — *Ell Raramu*, ib. p. 29, 208  
 — *Tobasts*, ib. p. 24  
*Netschafschellawa*, ib. p. 32  
*Netzche-Eh-Abiid*, ib. p. 52  
*Nile*, its increase and decrease  
 are observed on the *Mokkias*,  
 v. i. p. 73. time of its increase,  
 p. 87. its inundation the cause  
 of the fertility of the country,  
 p. 86. this river carries no  
 shell-fish in its whole course,  
 p. 113. its most dangerous  
 passage, v. ii. p. 135. it  
 forms every year new islands  
 in its course, p. 204. singular  
 manner of crossing the Nile,  
 p. 145, 164. sources of the  
 Nile and length of its course,  
 p. 115  
*Nubia*, beginning and end of  
*Nubia*, v. ii. p. 131  
*Cacheff* of *Nubia*, see *Cacheff*  
*Ibrim*.

## O.

**O** *BELISKS* of *Cleopatra*,  
 v. i. p. 6. other obelisks

at *Carnac* and *Lukoreen*, v. i.  
 p. 153. v. ii. p. 63. at *Essuacn*,  
 v. i. p. 153. on the island  
*Ell-Heiff*, ib. at *Matareen*, p.  
 154

*Observations* on the obelisks and  
 their description, p. 152

*Omarne*, see *Benebamraen*.

*Ommelut*, v. ii. p. 96

*Omar-Bey*, see *Bey*.

*Oschar*, v. ii. p. 121

*Osman-Bey*, see *Bey*.

*Osymandyas*, the circle of gold on  
 his tomb, v. i. p. 133, v. ii.  
 p. 64

*Ovens*, for hatching chicken, v.  
 i. p. 80

## P.

**P** *ACHOME*, St. Pachome,  
 v. ii. p. 60.

*Paintings* of the Trinity, apostles,  
 &c. v. ii. p. 144

*Palace* of *CÆSAR*, v. i. p. 6. of  
*CLEOPATRA*, p. 10, 28. of  
*MEMNON*, v. ii. p. 80

*Palm-Trees*, forest of palm trees,  
 see *Forest*.

*Passages* difficult and dangerous  
 on the Nile, v. ii. p. 30, &c.  
 135, 145, 207.

*Passages* of the first pyramid, v. i.  
 p. 116, &c.

*Patriarch* (Coptic) his presump-  
 tion, v. ii. p. 42

*Patridges*, a sort of patridges on  
 the border of the Nile, v. ii.  
 p. 18

*Pausanias*, cited v. i. *Passages*  
 from ancient authors, xxv. v.  
 ii. p. 43

*Pharaoh's* hen, v. ii. p. 184

*Pharos*, see *Island*.

*Pharillon* the great, v. i. p. 3.  
 the little, p. 4

*Phila*



- Philæ* of the ancients, p. 123  
*Philostratus* cited, v. i. *Passages from ancient authors*, p. xxxv.  
*Piaſter*, imaginary piaſter at Cairo, v. i. p. 66  
Pigeon-houſes, v. ii. p. 21  
*Pike* of Conſtantinople, according to Mr. NORDEN, v. i. p. 68. according to Dr. Pococke, p. 85. according to Dr. SHAW, p. 85  
*Pike*, a mark of dignity, v. ii. p. 180  
*Pirates* on the Nile, ib. p. 30, 207  
*Pleading*, manner of pleading in Nubia, ib. p. 141  
*Pliny*, his account of Pharos, v. i. p. 2. fixes the place of the ancient Memphis, and deſcribes ſome remarkable trees there, p. 78. deſcribes the Egyptian Fig, p. 79. his account of the height of the firſt and ſecond pyramids, p. 119. his deſcription of the baſaltes, p. 147. v. ii. p. 214. aſſigns a particular uſe of the obeliſk in the *Campus Martius*, v. i. p. 150. his account of *Tentyritæ*, v. ii. p. 54. his diſbelief of ſome wonders reported at Thebes, p. 66. his account of the labyrinth, p. 213. of the vocal ſtatue of MEMNON, p. xxxvii. of the collection of *paſſages from ancient authors*. his account of the ſituation of Syene, v. ii. p. 97  
*Plough*, the deſign of a plough for cultivating the land, v. i. p. 84. drawn by ſix oxen, v. ii. p. 85  
*Plutarch*, his account of the deſtruction of the library at Alexandria, v. i. p. 4. of the hieroglyphical Hawk, v. ii. p. 128  
*Pococke*, (Biſhop of Oſſory) his account of the ciſterns at Alexandria, v. i. p. 12. of the dimensions of the column of POMPEY, p. 14. of the catacombs, p. 17. of the canal of CANOPUS, v. i. p. 17. of Roſetto, p. 35. of Grand Cairo, p. 62. of the value of the *Medine* and *Parat*, p. 66. of the rotalo of Alexandria, p. 67. of the ſituation of Memphis, p. 76. of the cauſe of the inundation of the Nile, p. 84. of the different meaſures called *Pikes*, p. 87. of the pyramids, p. 106. of the Sphinx, p. 120. of the catacomb of birds, v. ii. p. 13. of the iſland Elephantine, p. 69. of the cataract, p. 117. of the iſland *Philæ*, p. 124. paſſes by Mr. NORDEN in ſailing up the Nile, and his account of the ſtone Mr. NORDEN mentions, p. 188. of the temples near Efnay, p. 189. of the ruins of Dandera, p. 199. of Antinopolis, p. 208  
*Policy* of the Turks, v. i. p. 99. of the Muſties and doctors of the law, ib. p. 95  
*Pompey*, column of POMPEY, v. i. p. 5, 13, 28  
*Pomponius Mela*, agrees with HERODOTUS in regard to the ſize of the ſtones of the firſt pyramid, v. i. p. 103, 141. his account of the hundred gates at Thebes, v. ii. p. 64  
Ponds for keeping the water of the Nile, v. ii. p. 56  
*Pope* (Mr.) his miſtake in tranſlating a paſſage in the *Odysſey*, v. i. p. 22

*Port of Africa and Asia*, ib. p. 2.  
of the first cataract, see *Mor-rada*.

*Portes*, military Turkish classes, ib. p. 92

*Portico*, an admirable one of ancient Thebes, v. ii. p. 75

*Proclus* his opinion of the astronomical use of the pyramids, ib. p. 140

*Pulley*, *Pulley convent*, v. ii. p. 32

*Presents*, made to the Aga of Esfuaen, v. ii. p. 100, 104. to his son, p. 106, 182. to his brother, p. 173. to *BARAM Cacheff*, p. 149, 151, 152, 153, 158, 160, 162 to the *Cacheff of Esnay*, p. 96, 184. by the *Schorbatschie* of Nubia, p. 141

*Priest* (Coptic) companion of the author in his voyage, see *Copti*.

*Prejudices* of the Egyptians with regard to the Franks that travel in their country, v. ii. p. 3, 58, 89, 102, 138, 148, 151, 184

*Price* of provisions, ib. p. 46, 104, 134, 163, of powder and shot, p. 22, of wood, p. 104

*Propaganda*, Fathers of the Propaganda, see *Hospital*.

*Pyramids*, ranked in the number of the seven wonders of the world, and their description, v. i. p. 101. of *CESTIUS* at Rome, ib.

*Pyramidographia*, see *Graves*.

## Q.

**Q**UAY, an antique quay, near *Scherck Abohuer*, v. ii. p. 133.

## R.

**R**AIN in Egypt, v. i. p. 83, 140. v. ii. p. 20

*Rakkaba*, v. ii. p. 96

*Rammadan*, see *Festival*.

*Raphaël*, v. ii. p. 42

*Reaping*, manner of reaping, ib. p. 36

*Redefie*, ib. p. 92

*Rejefie*, ib. p. 52, 199

*Rejeyna*, ib. p. 39, 205

*Rejoicings* at Cairo, on cutting the grand Calisch, v. i. p. 65

*Reservoirs*, see *Cisterns*.

*Rice*, manner of threshing rice, v. i. p. 80

*Rigga*, v. ii. p. 16

*Rodda*, ib. p. 28

*Rock*, called the camel, see *Camel*.

*Romadie*, v. ii. p. 92

*Rosetto*, v. i. p. 35, 53

*Roug*, what it signifies, v. ii. p. 156

*Rules* for travellers in Egypt, v. i. p. 53, &c. v. ii. p. 4, 141

## S.

**S**ABAGURA, v. ii. p. 137

*Sababinath*, see *Grottos*.

*Sabua*, v. ii. p. 139

*Sachet*, ib. p. 35

*Sacida*, ib. p. 53

*Sabdaeb*, ib. p. 131

*Sagh Ell Bagjura*, ib. p. 51

*Saide*, ib. p. 91

*Saint*, Arab saint, called *Schech Harridi*, his history and his tomb, v. ii. p. 40. the tomb of another saint, p. 134. several tombs of Mahometan saints, p. 96. a comical benediction of a Mahometan saint, p. 105. two naked saints at *Rosetto*, v. i. p. 36. at *Meschis*,

- Mefchie, v. ii. p. 47. four hundred saints, holding a congress, p. 52  
*Saick*, a sort of Turkish vessel, v. i. p. 52  
*Sakarra*, its pyramids, labyrinth, and commerce of mummies, v. ii. p. 13  
*Sakiedimusa*, ib. p. 28  
*Sakkietmekki*, ib. p. 11  
*Salamalek*, the common salutation of the Mahometans, ib. p. 97, 113  
*Salchie*, ib. p. 16  
*Salem Cacheff*, see *Cacheff*.  
*Sallaem* and *Sallaem Ell Odder*, v. ii. p. 32  
*Samaluud*, ib. p. 25  
*Sambuud*, ib. p. 50  
*Sandwich*, my lord SANDWICH cited, v. i. p. 146  
*Sarcophagus* in the first pyramid, see *Urn*.  
*Sardsch-Ell Farras*, v. ii. p. 130  
*Sauuda*, ib. p. 27, 209  
*Sau Adne*, ib. p. 50  
*Sauaggel*, ib. p. 51  
*Sauvied-Ell Masluub*, ib. p. 19, 210  
 — *Ell Tschiedame*, ib. p. 24  
*Schechfiath*, ib. p. 24  
*Schach Tamisch*, ib. p. 32  
*Schagab*, ib. p. 86, 191  
*Scharaque*, ib. p. 48  
*Schaurie*, ib. p. 52  
*Schech*, an Arab schech pays respect to the recommendation of OSMAN Bey, ib. p. 57. another wanted to hinder the author from making his observations at Lukkoreen, p. 71. another pays him a visit at Essuaen, p. 181. another at Carnac, p. 191. another finds the papers of the author, p. 194  
*Schech-Abade*, anciently Antinoë, v. ii. p. 28, 208—*Atmaen*, p. 12—*Berretck*, p. 50—*Flaeck*, p. 44. *Ghadder*, v. i. p. 53. —*Hamer*, see *Ell Schech Amer*.  
*Schech Harridi*, see *Saint*.  
*Schech-Hie*, v. ii. p. 57, 197. —*Scinetdien*, p. 39 —*Tschiberrim*, p. 92—*Mebadir*, p. 51  
*Schemede-Reschied*, v. ii. p. 137  
*Schemt Ell Uah*, ib. p. 130  
*Schenduie*, ib. p. 21  
*Scherarbie*, ib. p. 24  
*Scherauna*, ib. p. 90  
*Scherck-Abobuer*, ib. p. 133. —*Dendour*, ib. p. 134, 163. —*Girsche*, see *Girsche*. —*Merie*, p. 134. *Merruveau*, p. 134. —*Seliin*, p. 38. *Uladjachchia*, see *Mountains*.  
*Schereina*, v. ii. p. 25  
*Scherona*, ib. p. 24, 210. see *Islands*.  
*Scheuchzer* cited, v. i. p. 113  
*Schiaturma*, v. ii. p. 140  
*Schiim*, ib. p. 14  
*Schiub*, v. ii. p. 34  
*Schoback*, ib. p. 15  
*Schoraffa*, see *Arabs*.  
*Schorbatschies*, their power and office, v. i. p. 94. the Schorbatschie of Nubia, v. ii. p. 140, assembles the powers of Nubia and Derri, p. 147. puts a stop to the agreement that had been made with BARAM Cacheff, p. 149, 151. on receiving some presents makes no more opposition, p. 153  
*Schugeria*, v. ii. p. 31  
*Scirce*, ib. p. 23  
*Sciron*, at present called *Deiir*, ib. p. 25  
*Segale*, ib. p. 28  
*Sebenbuer*, ib. p. 60  
*Selemie*, ib. p. 52  
*Selim* the first makes the conquest of Egypt, v. i. p. 90. establishes there a new form of government, p. 90, &c.  
 Q 3 Seluab,

- Seluab*, v. ii. p. 92  
*Senabo*, ib. p. 30  
*Senaepfi*, ib. p. 53  
*Seneca*, his description of the library at *Alexandria*, v. i. p. 4. of the cataracts, v. ii. p. 117. of *Philæ*, p. 123  
*Senemie*, v. ii. p. 85  
*Senschiacs*, field of battle of the Senschiacs, ib. p. 24. a Senschiac, cheated by some pirates, p. 30  
*Seraik*, see *Ell Bueeb*.  
*Serapium*, v. i. p. 33, 34  
*Sernig*, v. ii. p. 90  
*Serpent*, the serpent Knuphis, 101. the serpent Schech-Haridi, see *Schech-Haridi*.  
*Serrerie*, v. ii. p. 25  
*Shaw* (Doctor) his account of the column of POMPEY, v. i. p. 15. of Grand Cairo, p. 64. of the weather at *Alexandria* for two months, p. 83. of the Nile, p. 87. of the use and intent of the pyramids, p. 105. of the great diversity of shellfish in the Red Sea, p. 113  
*Shells* lying on the plain of the pyramids, v. i. p. 113  
*Sibbaye*, v. ii. p. 91  
*Sicard* (father SICARD) mentioned, v. i. p. 137. v. ii. p. 126, 186, 190, 209  
*Silliness* of the Copti, v. ii. p. 40, &c. of a Barbarin. p. 138. of a valet of the Aga of Effuaen, p. 171  
*Singari*, v. ii. p. 140  
*Sioux*, commonly called *Black-heads*, Turkish officers, v. i. p. 93  
*Siu-Siugua*, v. ii. p. 147  
*Siunt*, ib. p. 33, 206  
*Soes*, ib. p. 60, 196  
*Soft*, ib. p. 16  
*Sohorra*, ib. p. 26  
*Soll*, ib. p. 19  
*Son* of Aga IBRAHIM, v. ii. p. 175  
*Sou Ama*, ib. p. 39  
*Sphinx*, the famous Sphinx that is before the second pyramid, v. i. p. 121, 127, 143  
*Stableantor*, see *Grotto*.  
*Strabo*, his description of the museum, v. i. p. 34. of the sepulchre at *Alexandria*, and the Serapium, p. 35. thinks the pyramids were sepulchres of kings, p. 105. his mensuration of the greatest pyramid, p. 106. says that there was a stone in the middle of the pyramids, which could be taken out, ib. and p. 111. speaks of the *tumuli mercuriales*, p. 137. of the well of the first pyramid, p. 145. borrows his account of the pyramids from DIODORUS SICULUS, p. 146. his account of the vocal statue of MEMNON, v. ii. p. 79. of the cataract, p. 118. his description of the Egyptian temples illustrated by Mr. NORDEN's designs, p. 126. does not mention any temple dedicated to the hawk, p. 128. of the situation he assigns to the city of Crocodiles, p. 189  
*Suburbs*, of ancient *Alexandria*, v. i. p. 21  
*Suetonius* cited, v. i. p. 34  
*Subaedsch*, v. ii. p. 40  
*Sycamore tree*, v. i. p. 79. v. ii. 104, 177  
*Sylfa*, v. ii. p. 38  
*Syene*, the ancient, at present *Effuaen*, v. i. p. 143. its ruins v. ii. p. 102

## T.

- T** *AB Ana*, v. ii. p. 23  
*Taberbuur*, ib. p. 40  
*Tacitus*, his account of the vocal statue of MEMNON, v. ii. p. 78  
*Tebbiin*, v. ii. 14  
*Tagbel*, ib. p. 27  
*Tagta*, ib. p. 39  
*Tame*, ib. 38  
*Tanza*, ib. p. 23  
*Teffa*, ib. p. 132  
*Temple*, (Sir WILLIAM) his elegant comparison of the figure of a pyramid to forms of government, v. i. p. 114  
*Tent*, v. ii. p. 23  
*Tentyra*, the ancient, see *Dendera*.  
*Terfaye*, see *Giesfret*.  
*Thebes*, the ancient, was probably in the place where stand at present Luxxor and Carnac, v. ii. p. 63. its ruins, p. 63, &c.  
*Tismend*, v. ii. p. 22  
*Tiuraet*, ib. p. 57  
*Tobit*, the book of TOBIT cited, ib. p. 42  
*Toma*, ib. p. 38  
*Tomas*, ib. p. 147  
*Tomb* of SCHECH HARIDI, ib. p. 40. several tombs of Mahometan saints; p. 96. tomb of ALEXANDER the Great, v. i. p. 33. of some great lord at *Alexandria*, p. 24. tombs between Essuaen and Morrada, v. ii. p. 110  
*Tot*, formerly *Typhium*, v. ii. p. 85  
*Traditions* of the Mahometan Priests, ib. p. 40, &c. tradition with regard to the island of Rodda, v. i. p. 74.  
— with regard to a grotto at old Cairo, p. 71. — with regard to the giants being the builders of the pyramids, p. 110. — with regard to the Chain-mountain, v. ii. p. 92. traditions concerning the Franks that would come and conquer Egypt, v. ii. p. 149  
*Travellers* in Egypt, the manner in which they ought to comport themselves, v. i. p. 54, &c.  
*Tschabel* or *Tschibal-Effeltele*, p. 92  
*Tschebbal Ell Teir* or *Tschibbel Ell Deir*, see *Deir*.  
*Tschebal Ell Kofferi*, see *Mountain*.  
*Tschibel-Mona*, see *Mountain*.  
*Tschirchê*, see *Girge*.  
*Turraeg*, v. ii. p. 91  
*Turrage*, ib. p. 12  
*Typhium*, see *Tot*.

## V.

- V** *ALLEY*, the valley of *Mettani*, v. ii. p. 86  
*Vansleb* (father) mentions the principal diseases occasioned by drinking the Nile water, v. i. p. 2. — the great trade of the French at *Alexandria*, p. 49. — violent rains near Old Cairo, p. 83. describes the pyramids, and mentions that he saw in several of them hieroglyphical inscriptions, p. 108. his observations on the several grottos or caves throughout Egypt, v. ii. p. 69.  
*Vergues*, a sort of Turkish vessels, v. i. p. 52  
*Vessel* for filtering the Nile water, ib. p. 82

*Vigil* cited, ib. p. 22  
*Vulaabaggid*, see *Giesfret*.

W.

U.

**U**BSCHVIR, v. ii. p.  
 130, 165  
*Udecab*, ib. p. 16  
*Umbarakaeb*, ib. p. 131  
*Um Ell Gufuer*, see *Ell Gufuer*.  
*Umbendi*, v. ii. p. 137  
*Urn* or sarcophagus in the first  
 pyramid, p. 111, 119. sounds  
 like a bell, and gives the mu-  
 sical note E-la-mi, v. ii. p.  
 79

**W**Atcing, manner of wa-  
 tering the land, see *Ca-  
 lifch*.

*Well*, JOSEPH'S well, v. i. p.  
 65. well in the first pyramid,  
 p. 118, 145. another pyramid,  
 p. 121

*Women*, (Egyptian) wear blue  
 shifts, v. ii. p. 47

Z.

**Z**IGZAGES of the mole  
 of the port at *Alexan-  
 dria*, v. i. p. 4

F I N I S.

## E R R A T

**E**XTRACT from the *Nouvelles litteraires*, pag. xxx. instead  
 of *we penetrated, however, as far &c.* read, Having pene-  
 trated as far as a vessel was capable of being navigated upon the  
 Nile, that is almost to the second cataract, &c.

Page xxxv. line 7. instead of p. 12. read p. xxii.

Vol. i. pag. 16. lin. 9. instead of *removed*, read, not removed.

— pag. 147. instead of *basaltis* read *basaltes*.

Vol. ii. p. 90. lin. 8. instead of *tymbals* read kettle drums.



Messrs. DAVIS and REYMERS, Bookfellers,

Against GRAY'S-INN-GATE, HOLBORN;

*Beg leave to inform the CURIOUS, that they have just  
published a most elegant edition, of*

Captain NORDEN'S TRAVELS

in EGYPT and NUBIA,

IN TWO VOLUMES, FOLIO.

With Improvements on the ORIGINAL,

By DR. TEMPLEMAN.

This *folio* edition is pompously printed on a fine WRITING ROYAL PAPER, and a *new type*, illustrated with ONE HUNDRED AND SIXTY FOUR large FOLIO copper plates, being the *originals*, engraved by the celebrated MARC TUSCHER, of *Nuremberg*, from above TWO HUNDRED DESIGNS, taken by the author himself upon the spot; besides HEAD and TAIL PIECES, and other engraved ornaments.

---

THE following extracts may serve to give the reader some idea of the superior merit of an edition, adorned with these original copper plates, and how much they contribute to the illustration of Mr. Norden's Travels.

“ That which extremely enhanced the value of Mr. NORDEN's papers, was an ample collection of *designs* and sketches, made on the spot, to which are joined the necessary explanations and remarks. The author had *every where* noted the DIMENSIONS, *drawn VIEWS*, and taken PLANS. We have called him an exact *designer*. Besides that, his knowledge in *architecture*, enabled him to represent justly those magnificent monuments of Egypt; and lastly, the study he  
has

had made of the *mathematics*, furnished him with the means of *drawing* with success, and upon observations of the utmost exactness, the GREAT CHART of the Nile which he has given. It takes up *twenty nine plates*, and we dare assert, that it surpasses all of the kind that have hitherto appeared."

"His designs gave him the opportunity of placing before the eyes of the king, the most remarkable objects, and as they made him recollect the most minute circumstances, the descriptions that he added to them, transported one almost upon the spot," *Preface to the Fr. Edition.*

"The beautiful simplicity of these designs, and the exactness with which they were drawn on the spot, are, I believe, superior to any thing of the kind that has hitherto been published.

"The curious may here find the school of the *Grecian architecture*, and the learned will see a kind of comment on the descriptions, that the ancients have given of the Egyptian edifices.

"In the several charts of the Nile, the reader is delighted with landships of the country on each side, *here* sees level lawns, and *there* frightful precipices; is one while charmed with groves of palm trees, at another time struck with admiration of the numerous cities that border on the river, with crescents towering to the sky. Ruins, monuments, magnificent buildings, cataracts, deserts, haunts of wild beasts, or men as savage as they, every thing that can attract the eye, or affect the imagination, is exposed to the view. In short, the reader seems to accompany the author in his voyage, and to share all his pleasures without undergoing the fatigue and dangers." *Preface to the Engl. Edition.*

"One of the great excellencies in Mr. NORDEN's designs is, that they throw light upon the descriptions which the ancients have left us of the Egyptian temples. By comparing the account that STRABO has given of these temples, with the views which Mr. NORDEN has drawn in several of his plates, the reader will be convinced of the usefulness of this work, in illustrating the classical authors." See folio edit. plates 108, 118, 136, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, and many others.

---

---

BOOKS Printed for L. DAVIS and  
C. REYMERS in Holborn.

I. **A**N ESTIMATE of the MANNERS and PRINCIPLES of the  
Times.

*Quamvis Pontica Pinus,  
Sylvæ Filia nobilis,  
Factæ et Genus et Nomen inutile:*

II. ESSAYS on the CHARACTERISTICS of the Earl of Shaftesbury.

I. On RIDICULE, considered as a Test of Truth.

II. On the Motives to VIRTUE, and the Necessity of Religious Principles.

III. On Revealed Religion and Christianity.

The fourth Edition. Both by the same Author.

III. Sermons on several Occasions by the Most Reverend, *Josiah Hort*, D. D. late Lord Archbishop of *Tuam*. Price 5s.

IV. Sermons on several Subjects by the Right Reverend *Francis Atterbury*, D. D. late Lord Bishop of *Rochester*, 4 vol. Price 16s.

V. Sermons on practical Subjects by the Right Reverend *Charles Hickman*, late Lord Bishop of *Derry*, 2 vol. Price 9s.

VI. The late Reverend Dr. *Bundy's* Sermons and Lectures on the Church Catechism, 3 vol. Price 15s.

VII. The Reverend Dr. *Basil Kennet's* Sermons, Price 4s.

VIII. The Reverend Mr. *Charles Wheatley's* Sermons, 3 vol. Price 12s.

IX. The Reverend Dr. *Trebeck's* Sermons, Price 4s.

X. The

BOOKS Printed for L. DAVIS and C. REYMERS.

- X. The History of the Island of *Minorca* by *John Armstrong*, Esquire, Engineer in Ordinary to his Majesty, the Second Edition, with large Additions by the Author, illustrated with Copper Plates. Price 5s.
- XI. A Treatise on the Safety and Maintenance of States by the Means of Fortresses, by Mr. *Maigret*, Engineer in Chief, and Knight of the Royal and Military Order of *St. Lewis*. Price 5s.
- XII. Memoirs Historical and Military, by the late Marquis de *Feuquieres*, 2 vol. Price 10s.
- XIII. Memoirs for the History of Madame de *Maintenon*, and of the last Age, translated from the *French*, by the Author of the Female Quixote, 5 vol. 12°. 15s.
- XIV. Letters of Madame de *Maintenon*, and other eminent Personages of the Court of Lewis the XIV, 12°. Price 3s.
- XV. The Life of Hugo Grotius, containing the History of the several Negotiations in which he was employed, and a critical Account of all his Works. Price 5s.
- XVI. Philosophical Observations on the Analogy between the Propagation of Animals, and that of Vegetables, in which are answered some Objections against the Indivisibility of the Soul, which have been inadvertently drawn from the late curious and useful Experiments on the Polypus and other Animals. With an Explanation how each Piece of a divided Polypus becomes another perfect Animal of the same Species. By *James Parsons*, M. D. F. R. S.
- XVII. *Spectacle de la Nature* or Nature Displayed, being Discourses on such Particulars of Natural History, as were thought most proper to excite the Curiosity, and form the Minds of Youth, translated from the French of *Abbé Pluche*, by *Samuel Humphreys*, Esquire, 7vol. 12°. Price 1l. 1s.
- XVIII. The Works of the late Dean *Swift*, 13 vol. 12<sup>mo</sup>. Price 1l. 19s.
- XIX. Select Cases and Consultations in Physick. In which the ill Consequences arising from an injudicious Administration of the Bark; of sweet Waters; and Aloetic Purges, are pointed out; the absurd Practice of certain eminent Physicians clearly evinced

evinced by Facts; and the right Method of Cure in all the great Chronical Diseases, established upon a rational Foundation. By the late eminent *John Woodward*, M. D. Professor of Physick at *Gresham College*, Fellow of the College of Physicians, and of the Royal Society; now first published from the Original Manuscript, by *Dr. Peter Templeman*. Pr. 5s.

XX. A free and candid Examination of the Principles advanced, in the Right Reverend the Lord Bishop of *London's* very elegant Sermons, lately published; and in his very ingenious Discourses on Prophecy. Wherein the commonly received System, concerning the Natures of the *Jewish* and *Christian* Dispensations, is particularly considered: With occasional Observations on some late Explanations of the Doctrines therein contained. By the Author of the *Critical Enquiry into the Opinions and Practice of the Ancient Philosophers*.

XXI. A general System of Surgery, in Three Parts, containing the Doctrine and Management

1. Of Wounds, Fractures, Luxations, Tumors, and Ulcers, of all kinds.
2. Of the several Operations performed on all Parts of the Body.
3. Of the several Bandages applied in all Operations and Disorders.

The whole illustrated with Forty Copper Plates, exhibiting all the Operations, Instruments, Bandages, and Improvements, according to the Modern and most approved Practice. To which is prefixed, an Introduction, concerning the Nature, Origin, Progress, and Improvements of Surgery; with such other Preliminaries as are necessary to be known by the younger Surgeons. Being a Work of Thirty Years Experience. By *Dr. Laurence Heister*, Professor of Physic and Surgery in the University of *Helmstadt*, Fellow of the Royal Society, *London*, and of the Royal Academy at *Paris*, &c. The Sixth Edition, considerably Enlarged and Improved. Price 1*l.* 1*s.*

XXII. The Philosophical Transactions, (from the Year 1743, to the Year 1750,) Abridged and Disposed under General Heads. The Latin Papers being translated into English, by *John Martyn*, F. R. S. Professor of Botany in the University of *Cambridge*. The Tenth Volume, in Four Parts, containing,  
Part 1.

- Part 1. The Mathematical Papers.
- Part 2. The Physiological Papers.
- Part 3. The Anatomical and Medical Papers.
- Part 4. The Historical and Miscellaneous Papers.

XXIII. An Enquiry into the Patriarchal and Druidical Religion, Temples, &c. Being the Substance of some Letters to Sir *Hildebrand Jacob*. Wherein the primæval Institution and Universality of the Christian Scheme is manifested; the Principles of the Patriarchs and Druids are laid open, and shewn to correspond entirely with each other and both with the Doctrines of Christianity; the earliest Antiquities of the British Islands explained; and the sacred Structures of the Druids, particularly those of *Abury*, *Stonehenge*, &c. minutely described. With an Introduction in Vindication of the several Hieroglyphical Figures described and exhibited in the Course of this Treatise. By *William Cooke*, M. A. Rector of *Oldbury* and *Didmarton* in *Gloucestershire*, Vicar of *Enford* in *Wiltshire*, and Chaplain to the Right Hon. the Earl of Suffolk, 4to. Pr. 3s.

XXIV. *Æliani de Natura Animalium Libri xvii. cum Animadversionibus Conradi Gesneri, & Danielis Wilhelmi Trilleri: curante Abrahamo Gronovio, qui & suas Adnotationes adjecit*, 2 vol. 4to. 17. 1s.

XXV. *Epicteti quæ supersunt Dissertationes ab Arriano collectæ; necnon Enchiridion & Fragmenta Græcè & Latine in duos tomos distributa; cum integris Jacobi Schegkii & Hieronymi Wolfii selectisque aliorum Doctorum Annotationibus recensuit, Notis & Indice illustravit Joannes Uptonus Præbend. Roffensis*, 2 vol. 4to. 16s.

XXVI. The Temple of the Muses, or the Principal Histories of fabulous Antiquity, represented in Sixty Sculptures, designed and engraved by *Bernard Picart*, *Le Romain*, and other celebrated Masters, with Explications and Remarks, which discover the true Meaning of the Fables, and their Foundations in History. Folio, Price 2l. 2s.

